

13 M 6

AN
ELEMENTARY INTRODUCTION

TO THE

LATIN GRAMMAR,

K

WITH PRACTICAL EXERCISES,

AFTER A NEW AND EASY METHOD,

ADAPTED TO THE CAPACITIES OF YOUNG BEGINNERS.

LONGUM ITER EST PER PRECEPTA, BREVE ET EFFICAX
PER EXEMPLA. SENEC. EPIST. 6.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR THE AUTHOR:

AND SOLD BY T. BOOSEY, BROAD-STREET; VERNOR AND
HOOD, BIRCHIN-LANE, CORNHILL; C. D. FIGUENET,
ALDGATE; AND M. DULAU, WARDOUR-STREET, SOHO.

1795.

4



[Entered at Stationers Hall.]

P R E F A C E.

THE design of this introduction to the Latin Grammar, is, by uniting practice with theory, to remove some of those perplexities which young learners but too frequently meet with in the study of that tongue.

The difficulty of success in such a work would, no doubt, have prevented the author from even attempting that which he now offers to an impartial and enlightened public, if the habit of teaching for so many years had not enabled him to discover the means of overcoming that difficulty, by a certain order and arrangement of principles, which equally contribute to their being understood and remembered.

The study of the Latin tongue generally commences at an age, when young people have scarcely any capacity, and very little inclination, to attend to the most useful precepts, unless they be explained to them in the clearest and plainest manner. In order, therefore, to make young learners sensible of the use of the first

a 2

lessons

10

lessons, and clear away all the obstacles which seem insuperable to their young minds, yet incapable of reflecting that diligence and application will overcome the greatest difficulties, the author has placed, under each part of speech, the syntactical rules, which immediately concern it, with practical exercises, in which he has as accurately as he could, pointed out the different parts of speech, marked the gender and case of every noun, its number being known by the English termination and its declension by the Latin inflexion of the genitive. The radical tenses of the verbs are put at full length, and even the verbs themselves conjugated, till the learner is supposed to have made himself fully acquainted with their peculiar inflexions. The young scholar may now begin to make some short Latin sentences; this early practice will at once excite his ambition and flatter his pride, he will be ready to congratulate himself on the speedy acquirement of so much knowledge in a language of which he had not the smallest notion a few weeks before; and it will also have this farther advantage to stimulate his future diligence by stronger exertions. He should now be made thoroughly acquainted with the abbreviations, after which, he has only to recollect the inflexions of the nouns, pronouns, participles, verbs, &c, and apply them according to the rules; this will be but a play, or, at the most, a very light labour. His task, therefore, will insensibly

fenfibly be more pleasant to him, and his improvement more rapid.

As the author, in this introduction, has pursued a method entirely different from any other of the kind, it would be proper to give some account of his reasons for pursuing the plan here proposed, but they appear so obvious in the performance itself, that he thinks it quite unnecessary to swell, with a long preface, a book, which, though much contrary to his intention, is already extended beyond the size he at first designed it. He has however collected what he thought best in other grammars; he has added several rules which were wanted, simplified some which were rather perplexed and confused, and passed over what he found useless.

This method is not without its inconveniences, but its advantages are very great, and instances, if necessary, might be furnished, wherein it has exceeded the author's expectation. He by no means presumes, nor does he flatter himself that his introduction is perfect, he can only take upon himself to say, that he has particularly endeavoured to admit nothing useless, and to explain the rules in so intelligible a manner that a boy even of a dull capacity may understand them. To this he begs leave to add, that through the whole of his work, he has not been guided by any selfish motives either of gain or fame.

fame. His only aim has been, and is still, to render the business of education more agreeable, to free the scholar from that toil and drudgery, which he must otherwise encounter, if he be obliged, at every word, to consult his dictionary to find out the gender and declension of a noun, the conjugation of a verb, &c. In short he has experienced that the new form, which he has given to this work, will be found useful not only to young learners, but even to grown people, who might wish to revive their Latin. If, after a fair and candid investigation by its proper judges, it should be found really useful and answer the expectation of masters, in forwarding their pupils in the study of a language so justly looked upon as a key to literature, the author's most sanguine wishes are fulfilled, and he will think himself more than indemnified for his labours.

The Syntax, in an easy Latin, is added to the end of the book; this, after the young learners have gone through their declensions and conjugations, may be used as an introduction to the translating Latin into English, and still impressing at the same time the syntactical rules on their minds.

Happy, if he should have succeeded in softening the teacher's labours and the scholar's toils; but this he now entirely submits to the impartial judgment

judgment of men whose unprejudiced candour, added to a real scholastical knowledge and erudition, has enabled them to appreciate and distinguish what is really useful from what has only the specious appearance. To their opinion alone he shall pay the greatest deference, and whatever may be the fate of his Introduction, he shall bow to their decision with the silence and respect of a man "that has endeavoured well."

AN EXPLANATION OF THE ABBREVIATIONS
USED IN THIS WORK.

<i>acc.</i>	accusative.
<i>ad.</i>	adverb.
<i>adj.</i>	adjective.
<i>c.</i>	conjunction.
<i>com.</i>	common, or of both genders.
<i>dat.</i>	dative.
<i>do.</i>	doubtful.
<i>f.</i>	noun feminine.
<i>fut. inf.</i>	future, infinitive mood.
<i>fut. pot.</i>	future, potential mood.
<i>gen.</i>	genitive.
<i>inf.</i>	infinitive mood.
<i>m.</i>	noun masculine.
<i>n.</i>	noun neuter.
<i>n. ind.</i>	noun indeclinable.
<i>nom.</i>	nominative.
<i>p. p.</i>	participle passive.
<i>pot.</i>	potential mood.
<i>pr.</i>	preposition.
<i>pro.</i>	pronoun.
<i>sub.</i>	subjunctive mood.
<i>v.</i>	verb.
<i>v. 1.</i>	verb of the first conjugation.
<i>v. 2.</i>	verb of the second conjugation.
<i>v. 3.</i>	verb of the third conjugation.
<i>v. 4.</i>	verb of the fourth conjugation.
<i>v. irr.</i>	verb irregular.
<i>voc.</i>	vocative.

A N

ELEMENTARY INTRODUCTION,

&c.

THERE are twenty-five letters in Latin, viz. *a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.*

Six of these are *vowels*; *a, e, i, o, u, y*: so called because they represent the different sounds of the human voice, and can be distinctly sounded without the assistance of any other letter.

The other nineteen are called *consonants*, because they cannot be perfectly sounded without being associated with some vowel either before or after them.

A *diphthong* consists of two vowels forming one syllable: there are eight, viz. *æ, ai, au, ei, eu, æ, oi, ui.*

A *syllable*, whether composed of one or more letters, requires in the pronunciation a single impulse of the voice.

A *word* may consist of one syllable, or of many compacted into one meaning; for a word is the smallest part of speech which is in itself significant.

B

OF

OF WORDS.

THERE are in Latin eight kinds of words, viz. *noun, pronoun, verb, participle, adverb, preposition, conjunction, and interjection*. They are called *parts of speech*, because every word, whether spoken or written, must be either a noun, or a pronoun, or a verb, &c.

These *words*, or *parts of speech*, are divided into *declinable* and *indeclinable*.

Four of them are *declinable*, that is to say, the radical part of the word remaining the same; the other parts, but especially the termination, will admit of several variations: they are, the *noun, pronoun, verb, and participle*.

The *four* others, as they never vary their terminations, are called *indeclinable*.

GENERAL EXPLANATION OF THE EIGHT PARTS
OF SPEECH.

A *noun* is that part of speech which is used to *name*, or *qualify* every thing that is the object of discourse; as *puer*, a boy; *bonus*, good.

A *pronoun* is a part of speech which commonly supplies the place of a noun, to avoid its too frequent repetition: as *ego amo puerum, dum ille est bonus*, I love a boy, when he is good; *ego*, I, *ille*, he, are pronouns; the first standing for the name of the person who speaks, the second, to avoid the repetition of *puer*, a boy.

A *verb*

A *verb* expresses the state of the subject, as *hic puer est diligens*, that boy is diligent; or an action done by the subject, as *magistri docent pueros*, the masters teach the boys; or an action received or suffered by the subject, as *pigri pueri puniuntur*, lazy boys are punished.

A *participle* is derived from a verb, and partakes of the nature both of the verb and the adjective noun, as having *gender*, *number*, and *case*; as *amans*, loving; *amatus*, loved.

An *adverb* is sometimes joined to the noun, but more frequently to the verb, whence it derives its name. The use of the adverb is to determine the signification or circumstance of the noun or verb to which it is joined; as *parùm sapientiæ*, little wisdom; *unde venis*, whence come you?

A *preposition* is a part of speech set before another word, which is its complement, and which it governs; as *ante me*, before me.

A *conjunction* is a part of speech which serves to connect the several members of a sentence, and shews their dependance on one another; as *autem*, but; *et*, and; &c.

An *interjection* expresses a sudden passion or emotion of the mind, as *heu*, alas! *euge*, brave!

OF NOUNS.

NOUNS are divided into *substantives* and *adjectives*,

A *noun substantive* expresses a thing subsisting by itself, and which can make a complete sense independent of any other word ; as *magister*, the master ; *discipulus*, the scholar.

A substantive is either *proper* or *common*.

A *proper noun* is applicable to one person or thing only ; as *Petrus*, Peter ; *Londinum*, London.

A *common noun* is applicable to all beings or things of the same kind ; as *homo*, a man ; *urbs*, a town.

A *noun adjective* is used to express the quality of the substantive to which it belongs, and is so called because its meaning cannot be ascertained without being joined to a substantive, expressed or understood, with which it must agree in gender, number, and case ; as *bonus*, good ; *magnus*, great ; &c.

In nouns *four* things must be considered, viz. *genders*, *numbers*, *cases*, and *declensions*.

N. B. Some have admitted of *articles* in Latin, but they are mere pronouns, and are thus declined.

Singular.

	masc.	fem.	neut.
<i>nom.</i>	hic,	hæc,	hoc
<i>gen.</i>	hujus		
<i>dat.</i>	huic		
<i>acc.</i>	hunc,	hanc,	hoc
<i>voc.</i>	wanting		
<i>abl.</i>	hoc,	hâc,	hoc

Plural.

Plural.

	masc.	fem.	neut
<i>nom.</i>	hi,	hæ,	hæc
<i>gen.</i>	horum,	harum,	horum
<i>dat.</i>	his		
<i>acc.</i>	hos,	has,	hæc
<i>voc.</i>	wanting		
<i>abl.</i>	his		

GENDERS OF NOUNS.

By gender, is meant the distinction of sex.

There are three genders, the *masculine*, the *feminine*, and the *neuter*.

A noun is *masculine*, that is, belongs to the male kind, when it is declined with the article *hic*, as *hic filius*, a son.

A noun is *feminine*, that is, belongs to the female kind, when it is declined with the article *hæc*, as *hæc filia*, a daughter.

A noun is *neuter* when it is declined with the article *hoc*, as *hoc regnum*, the kingdom.

A noun signifying a male and female, and being both masculine and feminine, is called *common*, as *hic & hæc parens*, father or mother.

A noun is called *doubtful*, when it is either masculine or feminine, as *hic* or *hæc dies*, the day.

A noun expressing both sexes indifferently, is called *epicene*; as *hic passer*, a sparrow; *hæc aquila*, an eagle; *hoc mancipium*, a slave, both male and female.

NUMBERS OF NOUNS.

There are two *numbers*; the *singular* and the *plural*.

The singular speaks of one thing only; the plural of more than one.

CASES OF NOUNS.

Nouns have *six* cases in each number, viz. the *nominative*, the *genitive*, the *dative*, the *accusative*, the *vocative*, and the *ablative*.

The *nominative* comes before the verb, and always answers to this question; *name me who or what?* as *Magister diligit bonos discipulos*, a master loves good scholars. Name me who loves good scholars? a master, which is the answer, is the *nominative*.

The *genitive* is generally preceded by another noun, and known by the sign *of* or this termination *'s*: it answers to the question *whose?* or *whereof?* as *penna fratris mei*, the pen of my brother or my brother's pen. Whose pen? of my brother, or my brother's, being the answer, is the *genitive*.

The *dative* shews to whom or what the object spoken of is given or attributed; it answers to this question, *tell me or shew me to whom or to what?* as *da hunc librum sorori meæ*, give that book to my sister. Tell me to whom that book is to be given? to my sister, being the answer, is the *dative*. This case is generally known by *to* or *for*, either expressed or understood.

The *accusative* follows the verb or the preposition
by

by which it is governed; it always answers the question, *Accuse me whom or what?* as *pater meus dedit hanc grammaticam fratri tuo*, my father gave this grammar to your brother. Accuse me what my father gave? This grammar, being the answer, is the *accusative*.

The *vocative* is used for calling or naming the person to whom we wish to address our speech; as *Georgi, veni ad me*, George, come to me.

The *ablative* is used after nouns, verbs, or prepositions expressing division, partition, or separation, and generally governed by one of the following prepositions, *from, in, with, by*.

N.B. It is unnecessary to observe that masters may enlarge upon and exemplify the above cases in many different ways.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

By declensions, we understand the different changes or variations that nouns receive in their terminations, both in their cases and numbers.

There are *five* declensions, distinguished by the ending of the genitive case singular or plural.

The *first* declension has its genitive case singular ending in *æ*, and the plural in *arum*.

The *second* has its genitive case singular ending in *i*, and the plural in *orum*.

The *third* has its genitive case singular ending in *is*, and the plural in *um*, and sometimes in *ium*.

The

The *fourth* has its genitive case singular ending in *is*, and the plural in *uum*.

The *fifth* has its genitive case singular ending in *ei*, and the plural in *erum*.

FIRST DECLENSION.

Singular.

<i>nom.</i>	<i>hæc</i>	<i>mens-a,</i>	a or the table
<i>gen.</i>	<i>hujus</i>	<i>mens-æ,</i>	of a table
<i>dat.</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>mens-æ,</i>	to a table
<i>acc.</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>mens-am,</i>	a table
<i>voc.</i>	<i>ô</i>	<i>mens-a,</i>	o table
<i>abl.</i>	<i>hâc</i>	<i>mens-â,</i>	from a table.

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	<i>hæ</i>	<i>mens-æ,</i>	tables
<i>gen.</i>	<i>harum</i>	<i>mens-arum,</i>	of tables
<i>dat.</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>mens-is,</i>	to tables
<i>acc.</i>	<i>has</i>	<i>mens-as,</i>	tables
<i>voc.</i>	<i>ô</i>	<i>mens-æ,</i>	o tables
<i>abl.</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>mens-is,</i>	from tables.

N. B. *Anima*, the soul; *afina*, a she afs; *dea*, a goddess; *domina*, a lady; *equa*, a mare; *famula*, a maid or woman-servant; *filia*, a daughter; *socia*, a female companion; with a few others, make their dative and ablative plural in *abus*, to distinguish them from *animus*, *afinus*, *deus*, *dominus*, *equus*, &c. which belong to the second declension.

GENERAL RULES FOR SUBSTANTIVES.

I. When two nouns substantive of different signification come together in the same sentence, the latter is put in the *genitive case*.

II. Two nouns signifying or pertaining to the same thing, are put in the same case by apposition.

THE PRAXIS.

A poet *acc.* To the pens *dat.* of the scribes *gen.* The
 poet-*a*, æ m. penn-*a*, æ f. scrib-*a*, æ m.
 statues *acc.* of the prophets *gen.* Anna's *gen.*
 statu-*a*, æ f. prophet-*a*, æ m. Ann-*a*, æ f.
 purse *acc.* From the ladies *abl.* to the maid-fer-
 crumen-*a*, æ f. domin-*a*, æ f. famu-
 vants *dat.* The tails *acc.* of the comets *gen.* The
 l-*a*, æ f. caud-*a*, æ f. comet-*a*, æ m.
 froth *acc.* of the water *gen.* To the eagles' *gen.*
 spum-*a*, æ f. aqu-*a*, æ f. aquil-*a*, æ com.
 wings *dat.* The minerals *acc.* of the earth *gen.* To
 al-*a*, æ f. miner-*a*, æ f. terr-*a*, æ f.
 the mares *dat.* of the husbandmen *gen.* Susan's *gen.*
 equ-*a*, æ f. agricol-*a*, æ com. Susan-*a*, æ f.
 tables *acc.* The inhabitants *acc.* of the forests *gen.* The
 incol-*a*, æ com. filv-*a*, æ f.
 bookseller's *gen.* door *acc.* From the guests *abl.* The
 bibliopol-*a*, æ m. port-*a*, æ f. conviv-*a*, æ com.
 strangers *acc.* To the blackbird's *gen.* cages *dat.* To
 adven-*a*, æ com. merul *a*, æ f. cave-*a*, æ f.
 the goddesses *dat.* The goddesses' *gen.* altars *acc.*
 de-*a*, æ f. ar-*a*, æ f.
 From the tables *abl.* of the scullions *gen.*
 lix-*a*, æ m.

SECOND DECLENSION.

Singular.

<i>nom.</i>	hic	domin-us,	the lord
<i>gen.</i>	hujus	domin-i,	of the lord
<i>dat.</i>	huic	domin-o,	to the lord
<i>acc.</i>	hunc	domin-um,	the lord
<i>voc.</i>	ô	domin-e,	o lord
<i>abl.</i>	hoc	domin-o,	from the lord.

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	hi	domin-i,	the lords
<i>gen.</i>	horum	domin-orum,	of the lords
<i>dat.</i>	his	domin-is,	to the lords
<i>acc.</i>	hos	domin-os,	the lords
<i>voc.</i>	ô	domin-i,	o lords
<i>abl.</i>	his	domin-is,	from the lords.

N. B. *Filius*, a son; *genius*, a genius; and the proper names of *men* ending in *ius*, as *Antonius*, Anthony; *Georgius*, George; *Virgilius*, Virgil; make their vocative in *i*, as *o fili*; *o Georgi*, &c.

Deus, God; *agnus*, a lamb; and *chorus*, a choir; have their vocative like the nominative.

Nouns ending in *r*, whose genitive singular ends in *i* and the plural in *orum*, are declined as follows; and it must be observed that their nominative and vocative are alike.

Singular.

<i>nom.</i>	hic	puer,	the boy
<i>gen.</i>	hujus	puer-i,	of the boy
<i>dat.</i>	huic	puer-o,	to the boy
<i>acc.</i>	hunc	puer-um,	the boy
<i>voc.</i>	ô	puer,	o boy
<i>abl.</i>	hoc	puer-o,	from the boy.

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	hi	puer-i,	the boys
<i>gen.</i>	horum	puer-orum,	of the boys
<i>dat.</i>	his	puer-is,	to the boys
<i>acc.</i>	hos	puer-os,	the boys
<i>voc.</i>	ô	puer-i,	o boys
<i>abl.</i>	his	puer-is,	from the boys.

N. B. Most of the nouns ending in *er*, as *liber*, a book; *magister*, a master, &c. lose the *e* before *r* through the declension, as *liber*, *libri*, *libro*, and *magister*, *magistrorum*, *magistris*, &c.

Nouns ending in *um*, whose genitive case singular ends in *i* and the plural in *orum*, are of the neuter gender, and thus declined.

Singular.

<i>nom.</i>	hoc	templ-um,	the temple
<i>gen.</i>	hujus	templ-i,	of the temple
<i>dat.</i>	huic	templ-o,	to the temple
<i>acc.</i>	hoc	templ-um,	the temple
<i>voc.</i>	ô	templ-um,	o temple
<i>abl.</i>	hoc	templ-o,	from the temple.

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	hæc	templ-a,	the temples
<i>gen.</i>	horum	templ-orum,	of the temples
<i>dat.</i>	his	templ-is,	to the temples
<i>acc.</i>	hæc	templ-a,	the temples
<i>voc.</i>	ô	templ-a,	o temples
<i>abl.</i>	his	templ-is,	from the temples.

N. B. All nouns of the neuter gender, without any exception, have three cases alike, viz. the *nominative*, the *accusative*, and the *vocative*. In the plural, these three cases always end in *a*.

Cælum, makes in its plural *cæli*, gen. *cælorum*, and is then declined like *dominus*, and of the *masculine gender*. On the contrary, *locus*, a place, makes its plural *loca*, *locorum*, of the neuter gender.

PRAXIS ON THE ABOVE DECLENSION.

The caps *acc.* of the boys *gen.* The masters and
 pile-*us*, *i m.* magist-*er*, *ri m.* et c.
 scholars *acc.* The wolves *nom.* in the fields *abl.* To
 discipul-*us*, *i, m.* lup-*us*, *i m.* camp-*us*, *i m.*
 the titles *dat.* of the books *gen.* The scholars' *gen.*
 titul-*us*, *i m.* lib-*er*, *ri m.*
 desks *acc.* The wind and smoke *acc.* I see
 ferini-*um*, *i n.* vent-*us*, *i m.* fum-*us*, *i m.* video, *v.*
 the ravens *acc.* under the apple-trees *abl.* The
 corv-*us*, *i m.* sub *pr.* mal-*us*, *i f.*
 leaves *acc.* of the pear-tree *gen.* O lamb *voc.* of God *gen.*
 foli-*um*, *i n.* pyr-*us*, *i f.* agn-*us*, *i m.* de-*us*, *i m.*
 To the men's *gen.* fingers *dat.* From the books *abl.* of
 vir-*i*, *m.* digit-*us*, *i m.*
 the masters *gen.* Edward's *gen.* shoes *acc.* O son *voc.*
 Edvard-*us*, *i m.* calce-*us*, *i m.* fili-*us*, *i m.*
 (I have brought) paper, books, and a knife *acc.*
 attuli, *v.* papyr-*us*, *i m.* cult-*er*, *ri m.*
 To William's *gen.* bag *dat.* Follow the
 Gulielm-*us*, *i m.* facc-*us*, *i m.* sequere, *v.*
 examples *acc.* of the grand-fathers *gen.* The sticks
 exempl-*um*, *i n.* av-*us*, *i m.* bacul-*um*, *i n.*
 and

and fwords *acc.* To the horses and asses *dat.* The
gladi-us, i n. *equ-us, i m.* *asin-us, i m.*
vices acc. of the age *gen.*
viti-um, i n. *fæcul-um, i n.*

THIRD DECLENSION.

Nouns, whose genitive case singular ends in *i* and the plural in *um*, are thus declined.

Singular.

<i>nom.</i>	hic	pat-er,	a father
<i>gen.</i>	hujus	pat-ris,	of a father
<i>dat.</i>	huic	pat-ri,	to a father
<i>acc.</i>	hunc	pat-rem,	a father
<i>voc.</i>	ô	pat-er,	o father
<i>abl.</i>	hoc	pat-re,	from the father.

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	hi	pat-res,	fathers
<i>gen.</i>	horum	pat-rum,	of the fathers
<i>dat.</i>	his	pat-ribus,	to the fathers
<i>acc.</i>	hos	pat-res,	fathers
<i>voc.</i>	ô	pat-res,	o fathers
<i>abl.</i>	his	pat-ribus,	from the fathers.

Nouns, whose genitive singular ends in *i* and the plural in *ium*, are thus declined.

Singular.

<i>nom.</i>	hæc	av-is,	a bird
<i>gen.</i>	hujus	av-is,	of a bird
<i>dat.</i>	huic	av-i,	to a bird
<i>acc.</i>	hanc	av-em,	a bird
<i>voc.</i>	ô	av-is,	o bird
<i>abl.</i>	hâc	av-e,	from a bird.

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	<i>hæ</i>	<i>av-es,</i>	birds
<i>gen.</i>	<i>harum</i>	<i>av-ium,</i>	of birds
<i>dat.</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>av-ibus,</i>	to birds
<i>acc.</i>	<i>has</i>	<i>av-es,</i>	birds
<i>voc.</i>	<i>ô</i>	<i>av-es.</i>	o birds
<i>abl.</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>av-ibus,</i>	from birds.

Nouns neuter of this declension.

Singular.

<i>nom.</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>corp-us,</i>	the body
<i>gen.</i>	<i>hujus</i>	<i>corp-oris,</i>	of the body
<i>dat.</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>corp-ori,</i>	to the body
<i>acc.</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>corp-us,</i>	the body
<i>voc.</i>	<i>ô</i>	<i>corp-us,</i>	o body
<i>abl.</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>corp-ore,</i>	from the body.

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	<i>hæc</i>	<i>corp-ora,</i>	the bodies
<i>gen.</i>	<i>horum</i>	<i>corp-orum,</i>	of the bodies
<i>dat.</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>corp-oribus,</i>	to the bodies
<i>acc.</i>	<i>hæc</i>	<i>corp-ora,</i>	the bodies
<i>voc.</i>	<i>ô</i>	<i>corp-ora,</i>	o bodies
<i>abl.</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>corp-oribus,</i>	from the bodies.

Singular.

<i>nom.</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>cubil-e</i>	the bed
<i>gen.</i>	<i>hujus</i>	<i>cubil-is,</i>	of the bed
<i>dat.</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>cubil-i,</i>	to the bed
<i>acc.</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>cubil-e,</i>	the bed
<i>voc.</i>	<i>ô</i>	<i>cubil-e,</i>	o bed
<i>abl.</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>cubil-i,</i>	from the bed.

Plural.

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	<i>hæc</i>	<i>cubil-ia,</i>	the beds
<i>gen.</i>	<i>horum</i>	<i>cubil-ium,</i>	of the beds
<i>dat.</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>cubil-ibus,</i>	to the beds
<i>acc.</i>	<i>hæc</i>	<i>cubil-ia,</i>	the beds
<i>voc.</i>	<i>ô</i>	<i>cubil-ia,</i>	o beds
<i>abl.</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>cubil-ibus,</i>	from the beds.

Observe that nouns of this declension make their nominative and accusative alike in both numbers.

N. B. 1. Nouns neuter, whose nominative ends in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, make their ablative singular in *i*.

2. Monosyllables, that is, those that have but one syllable in the nominative, as *mons*, a mountain; *fons*, a fountain; *nox*, the night; &c. have, for the most part, their genitive plural ending in *ium*.

3. In the same manner, those nouns ending in *es* and *is*, having *no more syllables* in the *genitive* than in the *nominative*, as *collis*, a hill; *mensis*, a month; &c. form their genitive plural in *ium*.

4. The following make their accusative singular in *im*: *amufs-is*, a carpenter's tool; *bas-is*, the base of a pillar; *bur-is*, the plough tail; *cannab-is*, hemp; *gumm-is*, gum; *pelv-is*, a vessel or pot; *rau-is*, hoarseness; *sit-is*, thirst; *tufs-is*, cough; *vis*, force. To which may be added, 1. nouns ending in *afis*, *efis*, or *ifis*, derived from the Greek, as *hærefis*, heresy, &c. 2. The names of towns ending in *polis*, as *Neapolis*, Naples, &c. And lastly, the names of rivers ending in *is*, as *Thamesis*, the river Thames.

5. *Bos*, gen. *bovis*, an ox, makes in its plural, nom. voc. and acc. *boves*; gen. *bovm*; dat. and abl. *bobus*.

PRAXIS ON THIS DECLENSION.

I speak to the mother *dat.* of the young maid *gen.*
 loquor, v. mat-er, ris f. virg-o, inis f.
 The fathers *nom.* read the speeches *acc.* of the foldiers *gen.*
 legunt v. ferm-a, onis m. mil-es, itis m.
 To the wounds and pains *dat.* of the men *gen.* The
 vuln-us, eris n. dol-or, oris m. hom-o, inis m.
 swine *nom.* eat the nuts *acc.* in the woods *abl.*
 fu-s, is com. edunt v. nu-x, cis f. in pr. nem-us, oris n.
 From the roots *abl.* of the trees *gen.* The heads *acc.*
 rad-ix, icis f. arb-or, oris f. cap-ut, itis n.
 of the giants *gen.* To the laws *dat.* of nations *gen.*
 gig-as, antis m. le-x, gis f. nati-o, onis f.
 The rowers' *gen.* thirst *acc.* Lend an ear *acc.*
 rem-ex, igis m. præbe v. aur-is, is f.
 to the voice *dat.* of virtue *gen.* From the lions' *gen.*
 vo-x, cis f. virt-us, utis f. le-o, onis m.
 skins *abl.* The knights *nom.* left the
 pell-is, is f. equ-es, itis com. reliquerunt v.
 prince's *gen.* spurs *acc.* in the ditch *abl.* The de-
 princ-eps, ipis m. calc-ar, aris n. scrob-s, is do.
 parture *nom.* of the swallows *gen.* announces winter *acc.*
 abiti-o, onis f. hirund-o, inis f. annunciat v. hyem-s, is f.
 The judges *nom.* detained the men and witnesses *acc.* in
 jud-ex, icis com. detinerunt test-is, is com.
 the prisons *abl.* John's *gen.* cough *acc.* To the sheep
 carc-er, eris m. Joann-es, is m. ov-is, is com.
 and oxen *dat.* The ducks *nom.* ate the
 bo-s, ris com. an-as, atis com. ederunt, v.
 snails *acc.* and the cranes *nom.* drank the milk *acc.*
 lima-x, cis com. gru-s, is com. biberunt, v. lac, tis n.
 with the honey *abl.* To the keepers *dat.* of
 cum, pr. mel-lis, n. cust-os, odis com.
 of

the animals *gen.* The hares *nom.* bit the
 animal, *is n.* lep-us, *oris m.* momorderunt, *v.*
 leaves *acc.* of the oaks *gen.*
 fron-s, *dis f.* rob-ur, *oris n.*

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nouns, whose genitive case singular ends in *us*,
 and the plural in *uum*, are thus declined.

Singular.

<i>nom.</i>	hæc	man-us,	the hand
<i>gen.</i>	hujus	man-us,	of the hand
<i>dat.</i>	huic	man-ui,	to the hand
<i>acc.</i>	hanc	man-um,	the hand
<i>voc.</i>	ô	man-us,	o hand
<i>abl.</i>	hâc	man-u,	from the hand.

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	hæ	man-us,	the hands
<i>gen.</i>	harum	man-uum,	of the hands
<i>dat.</i>	his	man-ibus,	to the hands
<i>acc.</i>	has	man-us,	the hands
<i>voc.</i>	ô	man-us,	o hands
<i>abl.</i>	his	man-ibus,	from the hands.

Observe. 1. That nouns of the neuter gender be-
 longing to this declension are indeclinable in the
 singular, but they are declined in the plural; as

Singular.

<i>nom.</i>	hoc	cornu,	the horn
<i>gen.</i>	hujus	cornu,	of the horn
<i>dat.</i>	huic	cornu,	to the horn
<i>acc.</i>	hoc	cornu,	the horn
<i>voc.</i>	ô	cornu,	o horn
<i>abl.</i>	hoc	cornu,	from the horn.

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	hæc	corn-ua,	the horns
<i>gen.</i>	horum	corn-uum,	of the horns
<i>dat.</i>	his	corn-ibus,	to the horns
<i>acc.</i>	hæc	corn-ua,	the horns
<i>voc.</i>	ô	corn-ua,	o horns
<i>abl.</i>	his	corn-ibus,	from the horns.

2. *Jesus*, the name of our Saviour, makes in the *accusative* case *Jesum*, and in all the other cases *Jesu*.

3. The following nouns make *ubus* in the *dative* and *ablative* plural, viz. *acus*, a needle; *arcus*, a bow; *artus*, the limbs; *lacus*, a lake; *tribus*, a kindred, a tribe; *portus*, an harbour; *quercus*, an oak; *specus*, a den; *partus*, a birth; and *veru*, a spit.

PRAXIS ON THE ABOVE DECLENSION.

I hear	the noise	<i>acc.</i> of the coaches	<i>gen.</i> Send
audio, v.	strepit-us,	ûs m.	curr-us, ûs m.
bows	<i>acc.</i> to the army	<i>dat.</i> To the limbs	and the
arc-us,	ûs m.	exercit-us,	ûs m.
countenance	<i>dat.</i> Of the bosom	and the knee	<i>gen.</i>
vult-us,	ûs m.	fin-us,	ûs m.
			genu, n.

From

From the spits <i>abl.</i>	To the steps <i>dat.</i>	of the houses <i>gen.</i>
veru, n.	grad-us, ūs m.	dom-us, ūs f.
From the lakes <i>abl.</i>	To the harbours <i>dat.</i>	To the old
lac-us, ūs m.	port-us, ūs m.	
women's <i>gen.</i>	needles <i>dat.</i>	To the arrival <i>dat.</i>
an-us, ūs f.	ac-us, ūs f.	advent-us, ūs m.
mother-in-law <i>gen.</i>	To the thunder <i>dat.</i>	Write
focr-us, ūs f.	tonitru, n.	scribe, v.
verses <i>acc.</i>	under	the piazza <i>abl.</i>
vers-us, ūs m.	sub pr.	portic-us, ūs f.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nouns, whose genitive singular ends in *ei* and the plural in *erum*, are thus declined.

Singular.

<i>nom.</i>	hæc	faci-es,	the face
<i>gen.</i>	hujus	faci-ei,	of the face
<i>dat.</i>	huic	faci-ei,	to the face
<i>acc.</i>	hanc	faci-em,	the face
<i>voc.</i>	ô	faci-es,	o face
<i>abl.</i>	hâc	faci-e,	from the face.

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	hæ	faci-es,	the faces
<i>gen.</i>	harum	faci-erum,	of the faces
<i>dat.</i>	his	faci-ebus,	to the faces
<i>acc.</i>	has	faci-es,	the faces
<i>voc.</i>	ô	faci-es,	o faces
<i>abl.</i>	his	faci-ebus,	from the faces.

N. B. All nouns of this declension are of the *femine* gender, except *meridies*, midday; *sesquidies*, a day and a half, which are masculine. *Dies*, the day, is common.

PRAXIS ON THIS DECLENSION.

To the edges *dat.* From the shape *abl.* To the ice *dat.*
aci-es, ei f. *speci-es, ei f.* *glaci-es, ei f.*

Of the things *gen.*
r-es, ei f.

N.B. 1. That in all declensions the *nominative* and *vocative*, the *dative* and *ablative*, are alike in the plural; and that all the cases, both in the singular and plural, are formed from the *genitive* case singular, except the *nominative* and *vocative* in the singular.

2. That if a noun be compounded of two *nominatives*, each noun is declined throughout all its cases, as *nom. respublica*, a commonwealth, *gen. reipublicæ*, *dat. reipublicæ*, *acc. rempublicam*, &c. *Nom. jusjurandum*, an oath; *gen. jurisjurandi*, *dat. jurijurando*, *acc. jusjurandum*, &c. But if the noun be compounded of a *nominative* and another case, the one which is in the *nominative* only is to be declined; as *pater familias* a housekeeper, *patris familias*, &c.

RECAPITULATORY PRAXIS ON THE FIVE DECLENSIONS.

Servant *voc.* give me *dat.* a knife and fork *acc.*
ferv-us, i m. da v. mihi pr. *cult-er, ri m.* *furc-a, æ f.*

The members *acc.* of the body *gen.* To the
membr-um, i n. *corp-us, oris n.*

beginning *dat.* of the world *gen.* We admire the sun,
principi-um, i n. *mund-us, i m.* *admiramur v. sol, is m.*

the moon and the stars *acc.* Give the book *acc.* to
lun-a, æ f. *stell-a, æ f.* *lib-er, ri m.*

the sons *dat.* and the apples *acc.* to the daughters *dat.*
fili-us, i m. *mal-um, i n.* *fili-a, æ f.*

God

God *nom.* created heaven and earth *acc.* in
de-us, *i m.* creavit *v.* cœl-um, *i n.* terr-a, *æ f.* in *pr.*

fix days *abl.* Learning *nom.* increases
fex *ad.* di-es, *ei com.* doctrin-a, *æ f.* auget, *v.*

the strength *acc.* of the soul *gen.* I see the goldfinch
v-is, *is f.* anim-a, *æ f.* video *v.* carduel-is, *is f.*

and the larks *acc.* of the boys *gen.* The shepherds *nom.*
alaud-a, *æ f.* pu-er, *eri m.* pasc-or, *oris m.*

have found the nests and the eggs *acc.* of the
invenerunt *v.* nid us, *i m.* ov-um, *i n.*

birds *gen.* Dogs *nom.* lend an ear *acc.* to
av-is, *is do.* can-is, *is com.* præbent *v.* aur-is, *is f.*

the voices *dat.* of the masters *gen.* George *voc.* carry
vo-x, *cis f.* magist-er, *ri m.* Georgi-us, *i m.* fer *v.*

the hay *acc.* to the horses *dat.* and the oats *acc.* to
fæn-um, *i n.* equ-us, *i m.* aven-a, *æ f.*

the mares *dat.* Seamen *nom.* brave the waves *acc.*
equ-a, *æ f.* naut-a, *æ m.* laceffunt *v.* und-a, *æ f.*

of the sea *gen.* and foldiers *nom.* (brave) the dangers *acc.*
mar-e, *is n.* mil-es, *itis m.* pericul-um, *i n.*

of war *gen.* and the stratagems *acc.* of the enemies *gen.*
bell-um, *i n.* infidi-æ, *arum f.* host-is, *is com.*

The heat *nom.* (has brought on) thirst *acc.* O Virgil *voc.*
cal-or, *oris m.* adduxit, *v.* sit-is, *is f.* Virgili-us, *i m.*

The lambs *nom.* with the mothers *abl.* are in
agn-us, *i m.* cum *pr.* mat-er, *ris f.* sunt *v.* in *pr.*

the fields *abl.* The rams the cows and the calves *nom.*
camp-us, *i m.* ari-es, *etis m.* vacc-a, *æ f.* vitul-us, *i m.*

feed in the meadows *abl.* Constantine *nom.*
pascuntur *v.* prat-um, *i, n.* Constantin-us, *i m.*

built Constantinople *acc.* and Alexander *nom.*
condidit, *v.* Constantinopol-is, *is f.* Alexand-er, *ri m.*

overturned Persepolis *acc.* The mind *nom.*
evertit, *v.* Persepol-is, *is f.* anim-us, *i m.*

often is agitated by love, hatred,
fæpè *adv.* agitatur *v.* am-or, *oris m.* odi-um, *i n.*

joy,

joy, pleasure, dread, hope,
 gaudi-um, *i n.* volupt-as, *atis f.* met-us, *us m.* sp-es, *ei f.*
 and envy *abl.* The earth *nom.* has hills,
 invidi-a, *æ f.* terr-a, *æ f.* habet, *v.* mon-s, *tis m.*

woods, fields, beasts and men *acc.*
 fylv-a, *æ f.* camp-us, *i m.* animal, *is n.* hom-o, *inis m.*
 Bring a water-pot *acc.* with water *abl.*
 asser, *v.* aqual-is, *is m.* cum, *p.* aqu-a, *æ f.*

Dogs and whelps *nom.* are keepers *nom.*
 can-is, *is m.* catell-us, *i m.* funt, *v.* custo-s, *dis com.*
 of houses *gen.* The heaven *nom.* has fire and
 dom-us or *i f.* cœl-um, *i n.* ign-is, *is m.*

stars *acc.* The clouds *nom.* hang in the air *abl.*
 stell-a, *æ f.* nub-is, *is f.* pendent, *v.* aer, *is m.*
 and birds *nom.* fly under the clouds *abl.*
 av-is, *is do.* volant, *v.* sub, *pr.*

Fishes *nom.* swim in the water *abl.* The sailors *nom.*
 pisc-is, *is do.* natant, *v.* aqu-a, *æ f.* naut-a, *æ m.*
 smeared the barrels *acc.* with gum *abl.* I (have seen)
 liverunt, *v.* doli-um, *i n.* gumm-is, *is f.* vidi, *v.*

the Thames and the Tyber, two rivers *acc.*
 Tames-is, *is m.* Tyber-is, *is m.* duo, *adj.* flum-en, *inis n.*
 The masters' *gen.* friends *nom.* have found the
 precept-or, *oris m.* amic-us, *i m.* invenerunt, *v.*

books upon the desks *acc.* Geometricians *nom.*
 lib-er, *ri m.* super, *pr.* plute-us, *i m.* geometr-a, *æ m.*
 measure the heights *acc.* of towers *gen.* and
 metiuntur, *v.* altitud-o, *inis f.* turr-is, *is f.*

the distances *acc.* of places *gen.* The law *nom.* of
 distanti-a, *æ f.* loc-us, *i m.* le-x, *gis f.*

God *gen.* is the rule *nom.* of life *gen.* I saw
 est, *v.* regul-a, *æ f.* vit-a, *æ f.* vidi, *v.*

the king and queen *acc.* of France *gen.*
 re-x, *gis m.* regin-a, *æ f.* Galli-a, *æ f.*

OF ADJECTIVES.

AN *adjective*, as has been said before, is a word added to a noun substantive to express or shew its *quality* or *quantity*.

Every noun, to which the word *thing* may be added, is an adjective; as *pretty, good, bad; one, two, three, &c.* are adjectives, because we can say a *pretty* thing, a *good* thing, a *bad* thing, &c.

It often happens that English nouns substantive become adjective in Latin, especially when one of them expresses the *character, cause, matter, nature, &c.* as *aqua fluvialis*, river water; *habitus hiemalis*, a winter coat; *plumbeus color*, lead colour, &c.

Adjectives are declined, and have the three genders; they are either of the *first* and *second* declension, or of the *third* only.

Adjectives having three terminations are most generally of the first and second declension; as *bonus, bona, bonum*, good; *niger, nigra, nigrum*, black; &c.

The termination in *us* or *er*, is for the *masculine*, and declined as *dominus* or *puer*; that in *a* is for the *feminine*, and declined as *mensa*; and that in *um* for the *neuter*, and declined as *templum*.

Declension of adjectives ending in *us, a, um*.*Singular.*

	mas.	fem.	neut.	
<i>nom.</i>	bon- <i>us</i>	bon- <i>a</i>	bon- <i>um</i>	good
<i>gen.</i>	bon- <i>i</i>	bon- <i>æ</i>	bon- <i>i</i>	
<i>dat.</i>	bon- <i>o</i>	bon- <i>æ</i>	bon- <i>o</i>	
<i>acc.</i>	bon- <i>um</i>	bon- <i>am</i>	bon- <i>um</i>	
<i>voc.</i>	bon- <i>e</i>	bon- <i>a</i>	bon- <i>um</i>	
<i>abl.</i>	bon- <i>o</i>	bon- <i>â</i>	bon- <i>o</i>	

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	bon- <i>i</i>	bon- <i>æ</i>	bon- <i>a</i>	good
<i>gen.</i>	bon- <i>orum</i>	bon- <i>arum</i>	bon- <i>orum</i>	
<i>dat.</i>	bon- <i>is</i>	bon- <i>is</i>	bon- <i>is</i>	
<i>acc.</i>	bon- <i>os</i>	bon- <i>as</i>	bon- <i>a</i>	
<i>voc.</i>	bon- <i>i</i>	bon- <i>æ</i>	bon- <i>a</i>	
<i>abl.</i>	bon- <i>is</i>	bon- <i>is</i>	bon- <i>is</i>	

Decline as above

magn-*us, a, um*, great; parv-*us, a, um*, little;
doct-*us, a, um*, learned; cert-*us, a, um*, certain.

Declension of adjectives ending in *er, a, um*.*Singular.*

	mas.	fem.	neut.	
<i>nom.</i>	pig- <i>er</i>	pig- <i>ra</i>	pig- <i>rum</i>	lazy
<i>gen.</i>	pig- <i>ri</i>	pig- <i>ræ</i>	pig- <i>ri</i>	
<i>dat.</i>	pig- <i>ro</i>	pig- <i>ræ</i>	pig- <i>ro</i>	
<i>acc.</i>	pig- <i>rum</i>	pig- <i>ram</i>	pig- <i>rum</i>	
<i>voc.</i>	pig- <i>er</i>	pig- <i>ra</i>	pig- <i>rum</i>	
<i>abl.</i>	pig- <i>ro</i>	pig- <i>râ</i>	pig- <i>ro</i>	

Plural.

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	<i>pig-ri</i>	<i>pig-ræ</i>	<i>pig-ra</i>	lazy
<i>gen.</i>	<i>pig-rorum</i>	<i>pig-rarum</i>	<i>pig-rorum</i>	
<i>dat.</i>	<i>pig-ris</i>	<i>pig-ris</i>	<i>pig-ris</i>	
<i>acc.</i>	<i>pig-ros</i>	<i>pig-ras</i>	<i>pig-ra</i>	
<i>voc.</i>	<i>pig-ri</i>	<i>pig-ræ</i>	<i>pig-ra</i>	
<i>abl.</i>	<i>pig-ris</i>	<i>pig-ris</i>	<i>pig-ris</i>	

Decline as above

nig-er, ra, rum, black; *pulch-er, ra, rum*, handsome;
dext-er, era, erum, right; *sinist-er, ra, rum*, left;
tend-er, era, erum, tender. *mis-er, era, erum*, miserable.

Some adjectives of the third declension have two terminations; the first for the masculine and feminine, the second for the neuter.

Adjective of two terminations.

Singular.

	<i>mas. and fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>	
<i>nom.</i>	<i>fort-is</i>	<i>fort-e</i>	strong
<i>gen.</i>	<i>fort-is</i>	<i>fort-is</i>	
<i>dat.</i>	<i>fort-i</i>	<i>fort-i</i>	
<i>acc.</i>	<i>fort-em</i>	<i>fort-e</i>	
<i>voc.</i>	<i>fort-is</i>	<i>fort-e</i>	
<i>abl.</i>	<i>fort-i</i>	<i>fort-i</i>	

Plural.

	<i>mas. and fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>	
<i>nom.</i>	<i>fort-es</i>	<i>fort-ia</i>	strong
<i>gen.</i>	<i>fort-um</i>	<i>fort-ium</i>	
<i>dat.</i>	<i>fort-ibus</i>	<i>fort-ibus</i>	
<i>acc.</i>	<i>fort-es</i>	<i>fort-ia</i>	
<i>voc.</i>	<i>fort-is</i>	<i>fort-ia</i>	
<i>abl.</i>	<i>fort-ibus</i>	<i>fort-ibus</i>	

Decline as above—trist-*is*, *e*, sad ; mitis, meek ; facil-*is*, *e*, easy ; utilis, useful.

N. B. That adjectives of the third declension, having the nominative neuter in *e*, make *i* in the ablative singular, in order to distinguish it from the neuter termination.

Some adjectives have but one termination, in the singular, for the three genders, as

Singular.

	mas. fem. and neut.	
<i>nom.</i>	feli- <i>x</i>	happy
<i>gen.</i>	feli- <i>cis</i>	
<i>dat.</i>	feli- <i>ci</i>	
<i>acc.</i>	feli- <i>cem</i> , feli- <i>cem</i> , feli- <i>x</i>	
<i>voc.</i>	feli- <i>x</i>	
<i>abl.</i>	feli- <i>ci</i>	

Plural.

	mas. and fem.	neut.	
<i>nom.</i>	feli- <i>ces</i>	feli- <i>cia</i>	happy
<i>gen.</i>	feli- <i>cium</i>		
<i>dat.</i>	feli- <i>cibus</i>		
<i>acc.</i>	feli- <i>ces</i>	feli- <i>cia</i>	
<i>voc.</i>	feli- <i>ces</i>	feli- <i>cia</i>	
<i>abl.</i>	feli- <i>cibus</i>		

Thus are declined

auda-*x*, *cis*, bold ;

velo-*x*, *cis*, swift.

Another

Another of one termination :

Singular.

	mas.	fem.	neut.	
<i>nom.</i>	prud-ens		prud-ens,	prudent
<i>gen.</i>	prud-entis			
<i>dat.</i>	prud-enti			
<i>acc.</i>	prud-entem		prud-ens	
<i>voc.</i>	prud-ens			
<i>abl.</i>	prud-ente or enti			

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	prud-entes		prud-entia,	prudent
<i>gen.</i>	prud-entium			
<i>dat.</i>	prud-entibus			
<i>acc.</i>	prud-entes		prud-entia,	
<i>voc.</i>	prud-entes		prud-entia,	
<i>abl.</i>	prud-entibus			

Thus are declined

fapi-ens, *entis*, wife ; ing-ens, *entis*, big or great ;
and all the participles present of the verbs ending in
ans or *ens*.

The eleven following adjectives of the third declension have three terminations, viz. ac-*er*, sharp ; alac-*er*, active, gay ; campest-*er*, belonging to fields, rural ; cel-*er*, swift ; celeb-*er*, famous, renowned ; equest-*er*, belonging to a horseman ; palust-*er*, growing in marshy places, gloomy ; pedest-*er*, belonging to a foot soldier, on foot ; salub-*er*, wholesome ; sylvest-*er*, woody, wild ; voluc-*er*, winged, swift ; and are thus declined :

Singular.

	mas.	fem.	neut.	
<i>nom.</i>	ac- <i>er</i>	ac- <i>ris</i>	ac- <i>re</i> ,	sharp
<i>gen.</i>	ac- <i>ris</i>			
<i>dat.</i>	ac- <i>ri</i>			
<i>acc.</i>	ac- <i>rem</i>		ac- <i>re</i>	
<i>voc.</i>	ac- <i>er</i>	ac- <i>ris</i>	ac- <i>re</i>	
<i>abl.</i>	ac- <i>ri</i>			

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	ac- <i>res</i>		ac- <i>ria</i> ,	sharp
<i>gen.</i>	ac- <i>rium</i>			
<i>dat.</i>	ac- <i>ribus</i>			
<i>acc.</i>	ac- <i>res</i>		ac- <i>ria</i>	
<i>voc.</i>	ac- <i>res</i>		ac- <i>ria</i>	
<i>abl.</i>	ac- <i>ribus</i>			

OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

THERE are two kinds of numeral adjectives, viz. the *cardinal numbers*, which simply express the number of objects; and the *ordinal*, which shews the order or rank of every object.

The cardinal numbers are

unus,	one	1	I.
duo,	two	2	II.
tres,	three	3	III.
quatuor,	four	4	IV.
quinque,	five	5	V.
sex,	six	6	VI.
septem,	seven	7	VII.
			octo,

octo,	eight	8	VIII.
novem,	nine	9	IX.
decem,	ten	10	X.
undecim,	eleven	11	XI.
duodecim,	twelve	12	XII.
tredecim,	thirteen	13	XIII.
quatuordecim,	fourteen	14	XIV.
quindecim,	fifteen	15	XV.
sexdecim, or } sedecim	sixteen	16	XVI.
septemdecim,	seventeen	17	XVII.
octodecim,	eighteen	18	XVIII.
novemdecim,	nineteen	19	XIX.
viginti,	twenty	20	XX.
triginta,	thirty	30	XXX.
quadraginta,	forty	40	XL.
quingenta,	fifty	50	L.
sexaginta,	sixty	60	LX.
septuaginta,	seventy	70	LXX.
octoginta,	eighty	80	LXXX.
nonaginta,	ninety	90	XC.
centum,	hundred	100	C.
ducenti,	two hundred	200	CC.
trecenti,	three hundred	300	CCC.
quadringenti,	four hundred	400	CCCC.
quingenti,	five hundred	500	D.
sexcenti,	six hundred	600	DC.
septingenti,	seven hundred	700	DCC.
octingenti,	eight hundred	800	DCCC.
nongenti, or } noningenti,	nine hundred	900	DCCCC.

mille,

mille,	thousand	1000	M.
duo millia, or bis mille,	two thousand	2000	MM.

The ordinal numbers are

primus,	the 1st	decimus octavus, or	} 18th
secundus,	2d	duodevigefimus,	
tertius,	3d	decimus nonus, or	} 19th
quartus,	4th	undevigefimus,	
quintus,	5th	vigefimus,	20th
sextus,	6th	vigefimus primus,	21st
septimus,	7th	trigefimus,	30th
octavus,	8th	quadragesimus,	40th
nonus,	9th	quingagesimus,	50th
decimus,	10th	sexagesimus,	60th
undecimus,	11th	septuagesimus,	70th
duodecimus,	12th	octogefimus,	80th
decimus tertius,	13th	nonagesimus,	90th
decimus quartus,	14th	centefimus,	100th
decimus quintus,	15th	ducentefimus,	200th
decimus sextus,	16th	millesimus,	1000th
decimus septimus,	17th	bis millesimus,	2000th
		decies millesimus,	10000th

The above ordinal numbers are declined like *bonus*.

Observe, that among the cardinal numbers, the three first only are declined, viz. *unus, duo, tres*; the other nouns of number, as far as *centum*, a hundred, are undeclinable. And when the number reckoned is below a *hundred*, if there be two words to express it, the smallest number is placed the first, as is commonly done in English; as, *unus & viginti*,
twenty

twenty one or one and twenty; *duo* & *viginti*, *tres* & *viginti*, &c.

DECLENSION OF THE ABOVE THREE NUMBERS.

Singular.

	mas.	fem.	neut.
<i>nom.</i>	un-us	un-a	un-um
<i>gen.</i>	un-ius	un-ius	un-ius
<i>dat.</i>	un-i	un-i	un-i
<i>acc.</i>	un-um	un-am	un-um
<i>voc.</i>	wanting		
<i>abl.</i>	un-o	un-â	un-o.

Thus are declined

ull-us, a, um, any, (without a negation;) *gen.* ull-ius, *dat.* ull-i.

null-us, a, um, none, not any; *gen.* null-ius, *dat.* null-i.

fol-us, a, um, alone; *gen.* fol-ius, *dat.* fol-i.

tot-us, a, um, all, whole; *gen.* tot-ius, *dat.* tot-i.

ali-us, a, um, other; *gen.* ali-us, *dat.* ali-i.

alte-r, a, um, other, another; *gen.* alter-ius, *dat.* alter-i.

ute-r, ra, rum, which of the two; *gen.* utr-ius, *dat.* utr-i.

neut-er, ra, rum, neither; *gen.* neut-rius, *dat.* neut-ri.

ut-erque, raque, rumque, both; *gen.* ut-riusque, *dat.* ut-rique.

alterut-er, ra, rum, the one or the other; *gen.* alterut-rius, *dat.* alterut-ri.

Plural.

Plural.

	mas.	fem.	neut.	
<i>nom.</i>	du-o	du-æ	du-o,	two
<i>gen.</i>	du-orum	du-arum	du-orum	
<i>dat.</i>	du-obus	du-abus	du-obus	
<i>acc.</i>	du-os or du-o	du-as	du-o	
<i>voc.</i>	wanting			
<i>abl.</i>	du-obus	du-abus	du-obus	

Thus is declined *ambo*, both.

Plural.

	mas.	fem.	neut.
<i>nom.</i>	tres	tres	tria
<i>gen.</i>	trium		
<i>dat.</i>	tribus		
<i>acc.</i>	tres	tres	tria
<i>voc.</i>	wanting		
<i>abl.</i>	tribus		

CONCORD OF THE ADJECTIVE WITH ITS SUBSTANTIVE.

Every adjective or participle must be put in the same gender, number, and case as the substantive to which it is joined; as, *pater bonus*, a good father; *mater bona*, a good mother; *exemplum bonum*, a good example; &c. *Labor brevis*, a short fatigue; *hora brevis*, a short hour; *tempus breve*, a short time.

N.B. 1. When a noun adjective or participle has a reference to two or more substantives of different genders, expressing *animate objects*; that adjective or participle must be put in the plural number, and agree with the most worthy gender; observing that
the

the *masculine* is more worthy than the *feminine*, and the *feminine* more worthy than the *neuter*; as *pater & mater sunt boni*, the father and mother are good.

2. An adjective or participle having a reference to one or more nouns substantive expressing *inanimate objects*, must be put in the *neuter gender*; as *virtus & vitium sunt contraria*.

3. And if the adjective or participle have no reference to any noun or nouns substantive expressed before, or if the word *man* or *men* be understood in English, that adjective or participle must be put in the *masculine gender* and the *singular* or *plural number*; as *pauper sæpè opprimitur a divite*, the poor is often oppressed by the rich; that is, the *poor man*, &c. *Boni sunt rari*, the good are scarce; that is, the *good men*. But if the word *thing* or *things* be understood or expressed in English, the adjective and participle must be put in the *singular* or *plural number* and the *neuter gender*; as, *turpe est esse pigrum*, it is shameful or a shameful thing to be lazy; *multa dicuntur quæ non sunt vera*, many things are said which are not true.

PRAXIS ON THE ADJECTIVES AND SUBSTANTIVES OF THE DIFFERENT DECLENSIONS.

A good	father <i>nom.</i>	Of the promised
bon-us, a, um adj.	pat-er, ris m.	promiss-us, a, um adj.
reward <i>gen.</i>	To the pious	man <i>dat.</i>
merc-es, edis f.	pi-us, a, um adj.	hom-o, inis m.
found	justice <i>acc.</i>	O amiable
integ-er, ra, rum adj.	justiti-a, æ f.	amand-us, a, um adj.
	F	virtue

virtue *voc.* To cruel and barbarous
 virt-*us, utis f.* cruel-*is, e adj.* barbar-*us, a, um adj.*
 customs *dat.* From the woeful events *abl.*
 consuetud-*o, inis f.* miser, *a, um adj.* event-*us, ūs m.*
 of shameful vices *gen.* Cataline's *gen.*
 turp-*is, e adj.* viti-*um, i n.* Catalin-*a, æ m.*
 colour *nom.* was pale, his eyes *nom.*
 col-*or, oris m.* erat, *v.* exangu-*is, e adj.* ocul-*us, i m.*
 fierce, his walk *nom.* sometimes
 fæd-*us, a, um adj.* inces-*us, ūs m.* modo, *adv.*
 quick and sometimes flow,
 cit-*us, a, um adj.* tard-*us, a, um adj.*
 Flourishing kingdoms, *nom.* are destroyed
 flor-*ens, entis adj.* regn-*um, i n.* perduntur
 by civil wars *abl.*
 ab pr. intestin-*us, a, um adj.* bell-*um, i n.*
 The light and bright planets *acc.*
 lucid-*us, a, um adj.* splend-*ens, entis adj.* planet-*a, æ f.*
 O wholesome counsels *voc.* of a weary
 san-*us, a, um adj.* consili-*um, i n.* pertæs-*us, a, um adj.*
 and modest traveller *gen.* To the vain
 modest-*us, a, um adj.* viat-*or, oris m.* van *us, a, um adj.*
 hopes *dat.* of deceitful appearances *gen.*
 sp-*es, ei f.* falla-*x, cis adj.* speci-*es, ei f.*
 The glory *nom.* of riches and beauty *gen.* is
 glori-*a, æ f.* diviti-*æ, arum f.* form-*a, æ f.* est, *v.*
 perishable and transient, virtue *nom.* is
 flux-*us, a, um adj.* fragil-*is, e adj.*
 noble and eternal. The capital
 clar-*us, a, um adj.* ætern-*us, a, um adj.* cap-*ut, itis n.*
 city *nom.* of the empire of the Turks *gen.* is Con-
 urb-*s, is f.* imperi-*um, i n.* Turc-*a, æ m.* est, *v.* Con-
 stantinople *nom.* formerly the abode of Con-
 stantinopol-*is, is f.* olim, *adv.* fed-*es, is f.* Con-
 stantine the first Christian
 stantin *us, i m.* prim-*us, a, um adj.* Christian-*us, a, um adj.*
 emperor,

emperor. His vast mind *nom.*
 imperat-or, oris m. vast-us, a, um adj. anim-us, i m.
 always (wished for) immoderate,
 semper, adv. cupiebat, v. immoderat-us, a, um adj.
 incredible, and too lofty
 incredibil-is, e adj. nimis, adv. alt-us, a, um adj.
 things. A short death and
 r-es, ei f. brev-is, e adj. mor-s, tis f.
 a long life *acc.* From deep and
 long-us, a, um adj. vit-a, æ f. profund-us, a, um adj.
 fishy lakes *abl.* The apostrophe *nom.* is
 piscos-us, a, um adj. lac-us, us m. apostroph-us, i m.
 the sign *nom.* of a vowel omitted *gen.*
 sign-um, i n. vocal-is, is f. omitt-us, a, um adj.
 The precious time *acc.* To a fearful
 precios-us, a, um adj. temp-us, oris n. timid-us, a, um adj.
 hare pursued *dat.* by nimble
 lep-us, oris m. infecut-us, a, um adj. ab, pr. agil-is, e adj.
 dogs *abl.* Diligent masters *nom.* punish
 can-is, is m. dilig-ens, entis adj. puniunt, v.
 careless boys *acc.* I have read all
 remis-us, a, um adj. legi omn-is, e adj.
 the great military actions *acc.* in
 præclar-us, a, um adj. militar-is, e adj. acti-o, onis f. in, pr.
 the Roman history *abl.* To such
 Roman-us, a, um adj. histori-a, æ f. tal-is, e adj.
 men *dat.* labour *nom.* was not
 vir, i m. lab-or, oris m. erat, v. non, adv.
 unusual, no place *nom.*
 insolit-us, a, um adj. null-us, a, um, adj. loc-us, i m.
 rough or difficult. Nero
 asper, a, um adj. aut, c. ardu-us, a, um adj. Ner-o, onis m.
 and Domitian *nom.* were cruel and covetous
 Domitian-us, i m. erant, v. avar-us, a, um adj.
 princes *nom.* Good and brave generals *nom.*
 princ-eps, ips m. fort-is, e adj. imperat-or, oris m.
 F 2 chuse

chuse plain and open
 eligunt, v. plan-us, a, um adj. apert-us, a um adj.
 fields acc. From the astonishing and true
 camp-us, i m. stupend-us, a, um adj. ver-us, a, um adj.
 description abl. of the immense works
 descripti-o, onis f. imman-is, e adj. op-us, eris n.
 attributed gen. to the ancient
 assignat-us, a, um adj. antiqu-us, a, um adj.
 Ægyptian kings dat. To the third
 Ægypti-us, a, um. adj. re-x, gis m. terti-us, a, um adj.
 day dat. of the week gen. Give the silver
 di-es, ei f. septiman-a, æ f. da, v. argente-us, a, um adj.
 key acc. of the garden gen. to thy
 clav-is, is f. hort-us, i m. tu-us, a, um adj.
 brother dat. and the gold cup acc.
 frat-er, ris m. aure-us, a, um adj. scyph-us, i m.
 to the inspector dat. of the works gen. O good boys voc.
 inspect-or, oris m. op-us, eris n.
 shun crafty and ungrateful
 vitate, v. astut-us, a, um adj. ingrat-us, a, um adj.
 knaves acc. who betray faithful
 nebul-o, onis m. qui, p. produnt, v. fid-us, a, um adj.
 friends acc.
 amic-us, i m.

GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

AN adjective in the neuter gender, without a noun substantive expressed or understood, requires the following noun in the *genitive* case; as, *paululum pecuniæ*, a little money; *minus vini*, less wine; *plus aquæ*, more water; &c. These adjectives may be taken as adverbs of quantity, which generally govern the *genitive* case.

Adjectives

Adjectives signifying *knowledge*, as *peritus*, *expertus*; *desire* or *wish*, as *cupidus*; *memory*, as *memor*; *fear*, as *timidus*; *care*, as *parcus*; and other affections of the mind, with their opposite, as *ignorance*, *neglect*, *forgetfulness*, &c. govern the *genitive*, though any other English preposition, besides *of*, should precede them.

Adjectives ending in *ax*, as *edax*, *ferax*, *sagax*, *verax*; and those ending in *ans* and *ens*, as *observans*, *experiens*, &c. govern likewise a *genitive*.

PRAXIS ON THE ABOVE RULES.

The boys *nom.* have lost much
 perdiderunt, v. mult-*us*, *a*, *um* adj.
 time by idleness *abl.* All
 temp-*us*, *oris* pigriti-*a*, *æ* f. omn-*is*, *e* adj.
 Europe *nom.* is now desirous
 Europ-*a*, *æ* f. est, v. nunc, adv. cupid-*us*, *a*, *um* adj.
 of peace. So much meat and drink.
 pa-*x*, *cis* f. tant-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. cib-*us*, *i* m. poti-*o*, *onis* f.
 Men endowed *nom.* with virtue are
 hom-*o*, *inis* m. comp-*os*, *otis* adj. virt-*us*, *utis* f. sunt, v.
 always happy. Masters *nom.* love
 semper, adv. beat-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. magist-*er*, *ri* m. amant, v.
 boys *acc.* grateful and mindful
 grat-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. memor, *is* adj.
 of a kindness, desirous of praise, and anxious
 benefici-*um*, *i* n. lau-*s*, *dis* f. anx-*us*, *a*, *um* adj.
 of glory. Our country *nom.* is
 glori-*a*, *æ* f. nost-*er*, *ra*, *rum* adj. regi-*o*, *onis* f.
 fruitful in corn. My bro-
 fera-*x*, *cis* adj. frument-*um*, *i* n. me-*us*, *a*, *um* adj.
 thers *nom.* are ignorant of philosophy and
 ignar-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. philosophi-*a*, *æ* f.
 careless

careless of friends and foes, but
 negligens, *tis* adj. amic *us*, *i* m. inimic-*us*, *i* m. fed, *c*.
 expert in war, sparing
 expert-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. bell-*um*, *i* n. parc-*us*, *a*, *um* adj.
 of wine, covetous of praise, liberal
 vin-*um*, *i* n. avid-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. liberal-*is*, *e* adj.
 of money and unaccustomed to bad
 pecuni-*a*, *æ* f. insol-*ens*, *entis* adj. mal-*us*, *a*, *um* adj.
 practices. We are desirous *nom.* of honour, and
 ar-*s*, *tis* f. hon-*or*, *oris* m.
 studious of learning and good manners.
 studios-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. liter-*æ*, *arum* f. mo-*s*, *ris* m.
 There is much evil in discord *abl.*
 est, *v*. mal-*um*, *i* n. in, *pr.* discordi-*a*, *æ* f.
 but much good in friendship *abl.* Your
 fed, *c*. amicitia-*a*, *æ* f. tu-*us*, *a*, *um* adj.
 father *nom.* is a man of profound thought,
 vir, *i* m. alt-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. men-*s*, *tis* f.
 firm in his resolution, despising
 tena-*x*, *cis* adj. proposit-*um*, *i* n. sperna-*x*, *cis* adj.
 death, avoiding ambition, and
 mor-*s*, *tis* f. fuga-*x*. *cis* adj. ambiti-*o*, *onis* f.
 acquainted with all things, but he is
 prud-*ens*, *entis* adj. omn-*is*, *e* adj.
 fond of pleasure and a lover
 cupi-*ens*, *entis* adj. volupt-*as*, *atis* f. aman-*s*, *tis* adj.
 of wine. He *nom.* was desirous of
 vin-*um*, *i* n. ille, *pro.* erat, *v*. appet-*ens*, *entis* adj.
 (other men's), profuse of his own,
 alien-*um*, *i* n. profus-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. su-*us*, *a*, *um* adj.
 patient of hunger and cold,
 pati-*ens*, *entis* adj. inedi-*a*, *æ* f. alg-*or*, *oris* m.
 bold in disposition, and fierce in
 aud-*ax*, *acis* adj. ingeni-*um*, *i* n. fer-*ox*, *ocis* adj.
 mind.
 anim-*us*, *i* m.

Adjectives signifying *advantage, likeness, pleasure, fitness, trust, conveniency, submission*, or *relation* to any thing, and their opposite, require the *dative*: as *somnus est dulcis viatori*, sleep is agreeable to a traveller; *labor est molestus ignavo*, labour is troublesome to a lazy person.

Except those adjectives which signify a *motion* or *shew a propensity* or *tendency* to any thing, which are more elegantly joined to an *accusative* with the preposition *ad*, especially when the English preposition *for* is either expressed or understood: as *hic puer est propensus ad vitium*, this boy is inclined to vice; *equus meus est idoneus ad multas res*, my horse is good for many things.

PRAXIS ON THE ABOVE.

Fortune <i>nom.</i> is kind	to my
fortun-a, æ f. benign-us, a, um adj.	me-us, a, um adj.
brother and your sister.	
frat-er-ris m. tu-us, a, um adj.	for-or, oris f.
The study <i>nom.</i> of good letters <i>gen.</i> is useful	
studi-um, i n. liter-æ, arum f.	util-is, e adj.
to men. Men <i>nom.</i> are prone	
hom-o, inis m. propens-us, a, um adj.	
to pleasure and boys <i>nom.</i> to idleness and play.	
volupt-as, atis f. oti-um, i n. lus-us, ūs m.	
My brother's <i>gen.</i> clothes <i>nom.</i> are light and	
vest-is, is f. lev-is, e adj.	
convenient for running. Your sister <i>nom.</i>	
commod-us, a, um adj. curs-us, ūs m.	
is like my father. Anger <i>nom.</i> is	
simil-is, e adj. iracundi-a, æ f.	
unfriendly to advice. Our	
inimic-us, a, um adj. consili-um, i n. nost-er, a, um adj.	
	good

good king *nom.* is flow to punishment,
 pig-*er, ra, rum* adj. pæn-*a, æ* f.
 but swift *nom.* to reward. Thy
 fed, c. vel-*ox, ocis* adj. præmi-*um, i* n. tu-*us, a, um* adj.
 friend *nom.* is intent upon servile
 amic-*us, i* m. est, v. intent-*us, a, um* adj. servil-*is, e* adj.
 offices and a slave *nom.* to his belly.
 offici-*um, i* n. dedit-*us, a, um* adj. vent-*er, ris* m.
 Poverty *nom.* is inclined to wickedness, and
 egest-*as, atis* f. procliv-*is, e* adj. scel-*us, eris* n.
 averse to good manners. Liberality *nom.*
 avers-*us, a, um* adj. m-*os, oris* m. liberalit-*as, atis* f.
 is agreeable to the nature of man *gen.*
 consentane-*us, a, um* adj. natur-*a, æ* f.
 Virtue *nom.* is superior to all the
 virt-*us, utis* f. superi-*or, oris* adj. omn-*is, e* adj.
 chances of life. Death *nom.* is common
 cas-*us, ūs* m. vit-*a, æ* f. mor-*s, tis* f. commun-*is, e* adj.
 to every age. Your horses *nom.* are
 æt-*as, atis* f. tu-*us, a, um* adj.
 strong and proper for war.
 fort-*is, e* adj. opportun-*us, a, um.* bell-*um, i* n.
 Fortune *nom.* is a blind goddess *nom.* kind to
 cæc-*us, a, um* adj. de-*a, æ* f.
 the righteous and wicked. Books *nom.*
 prob-*us, a, um* adj. improb-*us, a, um* adj.
 are useless to scholars who *nom.* are not
 inutil-*is, e* adj. discipul-*us, i* m. qui non, adv.
 inclined to study. He was
 propens-*us, a, um* adj. erat, v.
 dear to his friends, hateful to his
 car-*us, a, um* adj. invis-*us, a, um* adj.
 enemies, and more friendly to the Greeks
 inimic-*us, i* m. amici-*or, us* adj. Græc-*us, i* m.
 than to the Romans.
 quam, adv. Roman-*us, i* m.

Adjectives of dimension, such as *big, broad, deep, long, high, &c.* govern the *accusative* or *ablative*: as *mur*us centum pedes altus, a wall one hundred feet high; *arca erat trecentis cubitis longa*, the ark was three hundred cubits long.

PRAXIS ON THE ABOVE.

My room *nom.* is ten feet
me-us, a, um adj. cubicul-um, *i n.* pe-s, *dis m.*
 long and six broad. The walls *nom.*
long-us, a, um adj. lat-us, *a, um adj.* mur-us, *i m.*
 of the city of Babylon *gen.* were two hundred feet
 urb-s, *is f.* Babyl-on, *onis f.* erant, *v.*
 high and fifty feet thick. Thy
 alt-us, *a, um adj.* cras-us, *a, um adj.*
 book *nom.* is two inches thick and six long.
 poll-ex, *icis m.*
 The master's *gen.* walk *nom.* is three hundred feet
 ambulaer-um, *i n.*
 long and twelve broad. A ditch *nom.* six cubits
 foss-a, *a f.* eubit-us, *i m.*
 deep and twelve broad.
 alt-us, *a, um adj.*

Adjectives signifying *plenty* or *want*, such as *full, empty, rich, poor, &c.* whether followed by the English prepositions *in, of, from, on, or with*, govern either the *genitive* or *ablative*, though the latter is to be preferred in prose: as *dives pecoris*, rich in cattle; *dives agris*, rich in fields; *inops nummis*, poor in money; *plenus timore*, full of fear; *vacuus molestia*, free from trouble.

The following adjectives, *dignus*, *indignus*, *lætus*, *contentus*, *præditus*, *extorris*, *profugus*, *fretus*, govern an *ablative*, as *natura est contenta parvo*, nature is satisfied with little; *dignus honore*, worthy of honour.

Adjectives signifying the *instrument*, *form*, *cause* or *manner* of a thing, and those of *price*, require the *ablative*, as *pallidus irâ*, pale with anger.

PRAXIS ON THE ABOVE.

My brother *nom.* is endued with patience
prædit-us, a, um adj. *patienti-a, æ f.*
 and my sister *nom.* is full of vanity.
plen-us, a, am adj. *vanit-as, atis f.*
 He is full of luxury and
est, v. *luxuri-a, æ f.*
 idleness, free from cares,
desidi-a, æ f. *vacu-us, a, um adj.* *cur-a, æ f.*
 rich in lands, and wanting
opulent-us, a, um adj. *ag-er, ri m.* *eg-ens, entis adj.*
 nothing. Our
null-us, a, um adj. *r-es, ei f.* *nost-er, ra, rum adj.*
 fields *nom.* are fertile in fruits,
ag-er, ri m. *funt, v.* *fertil-is, e adj.* *frug-es, um f. pl.*
 abounding in water, but void
abund-ans, antis adj. *aqu-a, æ f.* *fed, c.* *inan-is, e adj.*
 of husbandmen. Rich *nom.* with booty,
arat-or, oris m. *locupl-es, etis adj.* *præd-a, æ f.*
 rejoicing *nom.* at his success, he was
læt-us, a, um adj. *succes-us, us m.* *erat, v.*
 inferior to nobody. That book
inferi-or, us adj. *nem-o, inis m.* *hic, adj.* *lib-er, ri m.*
 is dear at a penny. They are
est, v. *car-us, a, um adj.* *als-is, is m.* *funt, v.*
 loaded

loaded *nom.* with money, but deprived *nom.*
 must-*us, a, um* adj. pecuni-*a, æ* f. exper-*s, tis* adj.
 of honour and reputation. All
 hon-*or, oris* m. fam-*a, æ* f. omn-*is, e* adj.
 things *nom.* are bought for gold.
 sunt, v. venal-*is, e* adj. aur-*um, i* n.
 Flying *nom.* from his country, yet
 profug-*us, a, um* adj. patri-*a, æ* f. tamen, adv.
 relying *nom.* on the king's *gen.* friendship, he
 fret-*us, a, um* adj. re-*x, gis* m. amicitia-*a, æ* f.
 was invested with the chief
 fuit, v. prædit-*us, a, um* adj. summ-*us, a, um* adj.
 command. Aman *nom.* weary with labour
 imperi-*um, i* n. fess-*us, a, um* adj. lab-*or, oris* m.
 and destitute of friends, but relying
 in-*ops, opis* adj. amic-*us, i* m. fed, c. fret-*us, a, um* adj.
 on God is satisfied with little
 content-*us, a, um* adj. parv-*us, a, um* adj.
 and worthy of praises Your sister *nom.* is
 dign-*us, a, um* adj. lau-*s, dis* f.
 endued with mild virtues,
 ornat-*us, a, um* adj. len-*is, e* adj. virt-*us, utis* f.
 moderation, temperance, and justice *abl.*
 moderati-*o, onis* f. temperanti-*a, æ* f. iustiti-*a, æ* f.
 (They who) are never content
 qui, p. sunt, v. nunquam, adv. content-*us, a, um* adj.
 with the lot assigned by provi-
 for-*s, tis* f. assignat-*us, a, um* adj. a, pr. provi-
 dence are christians *nom.* in pretence
 denti-*a, æ* f. christian-*us, a, um* adj. pretext-*us, ūs* m.
 and hypocrites *nom.* in heart. To men banished *dat.*
 simulat-*or, oris* m. cor, *dis* n. extor-*ris, ris* com.
 from society.
 societ-*as, atis* f.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

WE distinguish in *adjectives* and *adverbs* three degrees of comparison or signification, viz. the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*.

The *positive* denotes the *quality* of a thing simply and absolutely; as *doctus*, learned, *doctè*, learnedly.

The *comparative* increases or lessens the quality; as *doctior*, more learned, *doctius*, more learnedly.

The *superlative* increases or diminishes the quality to the highest degree; as *doctissimus*, most learned, *doctissimè*, most learnedly.

The *comparative* is formed from the first case of the adjective ending in *i* by adding *or* for the masculine and feminine, and *us* for the neuter; as from *doctus*, gen. *docti* is formed *doctior*, *doctius*, more learned. From *fortis*, gen. *fortis*, dat. *forti*, is likewise formed *fortior*, *fortius*, stronger or more strong.

The *superlative* is formed in the like manner by adding to the first case ending in *i*, *ssimus*, *ssima*, *ssimum*; as from *docti*, is formed *doctissimus*, most learned; from *forti*, *fortissimus*, the strongest or most strong.

The comparative is thus declined:

Singular.

	mas. and fem.	neut.
<i>nom.</i>	fortior	fortius
<i>gen.</i>	fortioris	
<i>dat.</i>	fortiori	
<i>acc.</i>	fortiorem	fortius
<i>voc.</i>	fortior	fortius
<i>abl.</i>	fortiore or fortiori	

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	fortiores	fortiora
<i>gen.</i>	fortiorum	
<i>dat.</i>	fortioribus	
<i>acc.</i>	fortiores	fortiora
<i>voc.</i>	fortiores	fortiora
<i>abl.</i>	fortioribus	

N. B. The *superlative* is declined like *bonus, bona, bonum*.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. Adjectives ending in *er* form their *superlative* from the *nominative* masculine, by adding *rimus* to it; as *pulcher*, handsome; *pulcherrimus*, the handsomest or most handsome. *Niger*, black; *nigerrimus*, the blackest or most black.

2. Some adjectives ending in *lis*, as *agilis*, nimble; *facilis*, easy; *gracilis*, slender; *humilis*, low; *similis*, like, &c. form their *superlative* by changing *is* into *limus*; as *agillimus*, the nimblest or most nimble; *facillimus*, the easiest or most easy, &c.

3. Adjectives ending in *dicus, ficus, volus*, as *maledicus, munificus, benevolus*, form their comparative by changing the last syllable *us* into *entior*; and their *superlative*, in *entissimus*; as *maledicus*, comp. *maledicentior*, sup. *maledicentissimus*
benevolus, *benevolentior*, *benevolentissimus*.

4. Adjectives ending in *ius, eus, uus*, have neither comparatives nor *superlatives*. The comparison is made by placing the adverb *magis* before the adjective,

tive, for the comparative; and *maximè* for the superlative: as *pius*, pious, *magis pius*, more pious, *maximè pius*, the most pious, &c.

The following are very irregular and defective in their comparisons.

positive.	comparative.	superlative.
bonus	melior	optimus
good	better	best
exterus	exterior	extremus
outward	more outward	most outward
inferus	inferior	infirmus
low	lower	the lowest
juvenis	junior	wanting
young	younger	
magnus	major	maximus
great	greater	the greatest
malus	pejor	peffimus
bad	worse	the worst
multus	plus	plurimus
many	more	the most
parvus	minor	minimus
little	less	the least
superus	superior	supremus
high	higher	the highest
senex	senior	wanting
old	older	&c.

Every

Every comparison must have its *term*; that term of comparison is made in English by *than*, which, in Latin, is either expressed or understood. The following rules must necessarily be attended to.

1. After the comparative expressed by a single Latin word, the noun, which is the term of the comparison, may be put in the ablative case, and suppress the word *quam*, which is the Latin for *than*; as *soror tua est doctior fratre meo*, thy sister is more learned *than* my brother; *virtus semper fuit pretiosior auro*, virtue has always been more precious *than* gold. If, on the contrary, the word *than* is made by *quam*, the noun after the comparative must be put in the same case as that before it; as *Paulus est doctior quam Petrus*, Paul is more learned than Peter; *novi neminem doctiorem quam Carolum*, I know nobody more learned than Charles.

2. When after a comparative, the word *than* is immediately followed by an adjective or an adverb, this adjective or adverb must likewise be put in the comparative, though no sign be expressed, and in the same case as the former: as *felicior est quam prudentior*, he is more happy than prudent; *miserunt ducem audaciorem quam peritiorem*, they sent a general more bold than expert.

3. When the word *than* after a comparative is followed by a verb, it is still expressed by *quam*, and the verb put in the same tense, mood, &c. as in English; as *soror mea est doctior quam putas*, my sister is more learned than you think.

4. The

4. The superlative requires the following noun to be put in the *genitive*, or in the *accusative* with the preposition *inter*; or in the *ablative* with the preposition *ex* and in the plural number; then the noun adjective, in the superlative degree, must agree in gender with the following noun that is understood; as *altissima arborum*, *inter arbores*, or *ex arboribus*, the highest of the trees, that is, the highest tree of the trees; *ditissimus urbis*, the richest in the, or of the, town, that is, the richest man, &c.

N. B. *Primus*, *secundus*, &c. follow the above rules as the superlative.

Tanto, *quanto*, *eo*, *quo*, are often placed before the adverbs *plus*, *magis*, or *minus*; or before the adjective in the comparative, when *the more*, *the less*, are repeated in different members of a sentence; as *quanto*, *tanto*, or *quo plus* or *magis habent*, *tanto* or *eo plus cupiunt*, *the more* they have, *the more* they wish; *quanto superiores sumus*, *tanto submissius geramus nos*, *the higher* or *the more high* we are, *the lowlier* or *the more lowly* let us carry ourselves; *quanto magis opprimebant eos*, *tanto magis crescebant & multiplicabantur*, *the more* they oppressed them, *the more* they grew and multiplied.

PRAXIS ON THE ABOVE.

Our	life <i>nom.</i>	is	short.
noſt-er, ra, rum adj.	vit-a, æ f.	brev-is, e adj.	
The day <i>nom.</i>	of our death	is	uncertain.
di-es, ei f.	mor-s, tis f.	incert-us, a, um adj.	
A good education <i>nom.</i>	is better than	riches.	
educati-o, onis f.		diviti-æ, arum f. pl.	
		Nothing	

Nothing *nom.* is more pleasant to the mind
 nihil, n. ind. jucund-*us, a, um* adj. men-*s, tis* f.
 than truth. My brother *nom.*
 verita-*s, tis* f. me-*us, a, um* adj. frat-*er, ris* m.
 is taller than your's, but your
 magn-*us, a, um* adj. tu-*us, a, um* adj. fed, c.
 fister *nom.* is handsomer than mine. The lion *nom.*
 for-*or, oris* f. pulch-*er, ra, rum* adj. le-*o, onis* m.
 is the strongest and the boldest of all
 fort-*is, e* adj. auda-*x, cis* adj. omn-*is, e* adj.
 animals. Saturn the most ancient *nom.*
 anim-*al, alis* n. Saturn-*us, i* m. antiqu-*us, a, um* adj.
 of the gods was the son *nom.* of Cælus. Nothing
 de-*us, i* m. erat, v. fili-*us, i* m. Cæl-*us, i* m.
 is more agreeable, nothing more worthy of
 dulc-*is, e* adj. dign-*us, a, um* adj.
 a free man than husbandry. The more
 lib-*er, era, erum* adj. agricultur-*a, æ* f.
 difficult a thing *nom.* is, the more honourable.
 difficil-*is, e* adj. re-*s, ei* f. præclar-*us, a, um* adj.
 George *nom.* is the nimblest and the most learned
 Georgi-*us, i* m. agil-*is, e* adj. doct-*us, a, um* adj.
 scholar of all. Antiochus *nom.* was
 discipul-*us, i* m. Antioch-*us, i* m. fuit, v.
 the most powerful among all the
 pot-*ens, entis* adj. inter, pr. omn-*is, e* adj.
 kings *acc.* of the East. Cataline *nom.* was
 re-*x, gis* m. ori-*ens, entis* m. Catalin-*a, æ* m. fuit, v.
 the boldest and most villainous of men.
 aud-*ax, acis* adj. scelest-*us, a, um* adj. hom-*o, inis* m.
 He was the most violent and obstinate
 fuit, v. ac-*er, is, e* adj. pertin-*ax, acis* adj.
 of all the plebeians. They lost the
 omn-*is, e* adj. plebei-*us, i* m. amiserunt, v.
 best *acc.* of the foldiers and a most beautiful
 bon-*us, a, um* adj. mil-*es, itis* m. pulch-*er, ra, rum* adj.

fleet. The bolder ye are, the weaker.
class-*is*, *is* f. estis, v. infirm-*us*, *a*, *um* adj.
The daughter *nom.* is the most benevolent of
benevol-*us*, *a*, *um* adj.
the whole family. Romulus *nom.*
tot-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. famili-*a*, *æ* f. Romul-*us*, *i* m.
was the first king of the Romans.
fuit, v. re-*x*, *gis* m. Roman-*us*, *a*, *um* adj.
Your father *nom.* is more pious than
pi-*us*, *a*, *um* adj.
my aunt. My uncle *nom.* is the
amit-*a*, *æ* f. avuncul-*us*, *i* m.
happiest man in the town. To the blackest *dat.*
feli-*x*, *cis* adj. urb-*s*, *is* f. nig-*er*, *ra*, *rum* adj.
of the birds. The more learned your sister *nom.*
av-*is*, *is* f. doct-*us*, *a*, *um* adj.
is, the more she is modest.
illa, *pro*. modest-*us*, *a*, *um* adj.
Ingratitude *nom.* is the worst of all vices.
ingritud-*o*, *inis* f. mal-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. viti-*um*, *i* n.
No punishment *nom.* is heavier than
null-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. supplici-*um*, *i* n. grav-*is*, *e* adj.
public hatred. Socrates *nom.*
public-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. odi-*um*, *i* n. Socrat-*es*, *is* m.
was the wisest of all men.
fuit, v. prud-*ens*, *entis* adj. hom-*o*, *inis* m.
O William *voc.* your grand-father *nom.* has been
Gulielm-*us*, *i* m. av-*us*, *i* m. fuit, v.
the most generous of my friends. Avoid
generos-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. amic-*us*, *i* m. vita, v.
pride, the first cause *acc.* of all sins.
superbi-*a*, *æ* f. caus-*a*, *æ* f. peccat-*um*, *i* n.
Detest lying, *acc.* leisure, and
detestare, v. mendaci-*um*, *i* n. oti-*um*, *i* n.
idleness, vices very familiar to children.
pigriti-*a*, *æ* f. familiar-*is*, *e* adj. pu-*er*, *eri* m.
Nothi

Nothing *nom.* is more worthy a great
 dign-us, a, um adj. *magn-us, a, um adj.*
 man than mildness. The more vicious
 placit-as, atis f. *vitios-us, a, um adj.*
 boys *nom.* are, the more they are unhappy.
 pu-er, eri m. sunt, v. miser, a, um adj.

OF PRONOUNS.

A PRONOUN commonly supplies the place of a noun, to avoid the repetition of the latter.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

There are *three persons*; the *first* is the person that speaks, the *second* is the person spoken to, and the *third* is the person spoken of; they are called personal, because they directly denote the persons and supply the place of them.

First person. Three genders.

Singular.

<i>nom.</i>	ego	I
<i>gen.</i>	mei	of me, or mine
<i>dat.</i>	mihi	to me
<i>acc.</i>	me	me
<i>voc.</i>	wanting	
<i>abl.</i>	me	from me
	mecum	with me

Plural.

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	<i>nos</i>	we
<i>gen.</i>	<i>nostrûm or nostrî</i>	of us or ours
<i>dat.</i>	<i>nobis</i>	to us
<i>acc.</i>	<i>nos</i>	us
<i>voc.</i>	<i>wanting</i>	
<i>abl.</i>	<i>nobis</i>	from us
	<i>nobiscum</i>	with us

Second person. Three genders.

Singular.

<i>nom.</i>	<i>tu</i>	thou
<i>gen.</i>	<i>tuî</i>	of thee or thine
<i>dat.</i>	<i>tibi</i>	to thee
<i>acc.</i>	<i>te</i>	thee
<i>voc.</i>	<i>ô tu</i>	o thou
<i>abl.</i>	<i>te</i>	from thee
	<i>tecum</i>	with thee

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	<i>vos</i>	you or ye
<i>gen.</i>	<i>vestrûm or vestrî</i>	of you or yours
<i>dat.</i>	<i>vobis</i>	to you
<i>acc.</i>	<i>vos</i>	you
<i>voc.</i>	<i>vos</i>	you or ye
<i>abl.</i>	<i>vobis</i>	from you
	<i>vobiscum</i>	with you.

Third

Third person. Three genders.

Singular and Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	wanting	
<i>gen.</i>	fui	of himself, herself, itself, themselves
<i>dat.</i>	fibi	to himself, &c.
<i>acc.</i>	fe	himself, &c.
<i>voc.</i>	wanting	
<i>abl.</i>	fe	from himself, herself, &c.
<i>secum</i>		with himself, with herself, with themselves

PRONOUNS ADJECTIVE OR DEMONSTRATIVE.

The following may be called *adjective*, because, when they are joined to a substantive, they agree with it in *gender*, *number*, and *case*; and *demonstrative*, because they distinguish or point out, in a precise manner, the objects to which they are applied, when they agree with the substantive, whose place they supply, in *gender*, *number*, and *person*. They are all of the third person.

Singular.

	<i>mas.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>	
<i>nom.</i>	is	ea	id	he, she, that
<i>gen.</i>	ejus			{ of him, her, it; or { of his, her, its
<i>dat.</i>	ei			to him, her, it
<i>acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	him, her, it
<i>voc.</i>	wanting			
<i>abl.</i>	eo	eâ	eo	from him, her, it

Plural.

Plural.

	mas.	fem.	neut.	
<i>nom.</i>	ii or ei	eæ	ea	them
<i>gen.</i>	eorum	earum	eorum	of them or their
<i>dat.</i>	iis or eis			to them
<i>acc.</i>	eos	eas	ea	them
<i>voc.</i>	wanting			
<i>abl.</i>	iis or eis			from them

Decline as above *idem, eadem, idem*, the same : observing that some authors change the *m* into *n*, as, instead of writing *eumdem, eamdem, &c. eorumdem, earumdem, &c.* they write *eundem, eorundem, &c.*

Sing. *hic, hæc, hoc*, this or that ; plur. *hi, hæ, hæc*, these or those ; has been declined before.

Singular.

	mas.	fem.	neut.	
<i>nom.</i>	ille	illa	illud	he, she, that, or it
<i>gen.</i>	illius			of him, of her, &c.
<i>dat.</i>	illi			to him, her, it, &c.
<i>acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud	him, her, it
<i>voc.</i>	wanting			
<i>abl.</i>	illo	illâ	illo	from him, her, it

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	illi	illæ	illa	they, these
<i>gen.</i>	illorum	illarum	illorum	of them, or their
<i>dat.</i>	illis			to them, &c.
<i>acc.</i>	illos	illas	illa	them, &c.
<i>voc.</i>	wanting			
<i>abl.</i>	illis			from them, &c.

Decline as above, *iste, ista, istud*, this, that.

Singular.

Singular.

	mas.	fem.	neut.	
<i>nom.</i>	<i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	self
<i>gen.</i>	<i>ipsius</i>			of self
<i>dat.</i>	<i>ipsi</i>			
<i>acc.</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	
<i>voc.</i>	wanting			
<i>abl.</i>	<i>ipso</i>	<i>ipsâ</i>	<i>ipso</i>	

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsæ</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	selves or their
<i>gen.</i>	<i>ipforum</i>	<i>ipfarum</i>	<i>ipforum</i>	
<i>dat.</i>	<i>ipsis</i>			
<i>acc.</i>	<i>ipfos</i>	<i>ipfas</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	
<i>voc.</i>	wanting			
<i>abl.</i>	<i>ipsis</i>			

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

These may be called *possessive*, because they always denote *property* or *possession*. They must be repeated before every substantive in a sentence, and agree with it in *gender*, *number*, and *case*; as *pater meus*, my father; *mater mea*, my mother; *brachium meum*, my arm; *pater meus & soror mea*, my father and sister. They are *meus*, *mea*, *meum*, my, mine; *tuus*, *tua*, *tuum*, thy, thine; *suus*, *sua*, *suum*, his, her, hers, its, their or theirs; *cujus*, *cuja*, *cujum*, whose, used interrogatively; which are declined like *bonus*; but *meus* makes in its vocative *mi*, *mea*, *meum*. *Noster*, *nostra*, *nostrum*, our, ours; and *vester*, *vestra*, *vestrum*, are declined like *piger*.

PRONOUNS

PRONOUNS RELATIVE.

These pronouns are called relative, because they always have a reference to an *antecedent*, that is, some noun or pronoun in the discourse either expressed or understood. They are

Singular.

	mas.	fem.	neut.	
<i>nom.</i>	qui	quæ	quod	who, which, or that
<i>gen.</i>	cujus			whose, of whom, or of which
<i>dat.</i>	cui			to whom, &c.
<i>acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	whom, which, or that
<i>voc.</i>	wanting			
<i>abl.</i>	quo	quâ	quo	from whom or which

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	qui	quæ	quæ	who, which, &c.
<i>gen.</i>	quorum	quarum	quorum	whose, or of whom
<i>dat.</i>	quibus			to whom
<i>acc.</i>	quos	quas	quæ	whom or which, &c.
<i>voc.</i>	wanting			
<i>abl.</i>	quibus or queis			from whom, &c.

N. B. These pronouns agree with their *antecedent* in *gender* and *person*.

Compounds of *qui* or *indefinite* pronouns.

The following may be called *indefinite* pronouns, because they generally express, or are substituted for, the name of a vague and indeterminate object, as

	mas.	fem.	neut.	
<i>nom.</i>	quicunque	quæcunque	quodcunque	} whosoever, whatsoever
<i>gen.</i>	cujuscunque			
<i>dat.</i>	cuicunque, &c.			

	mas.	fem.	neut.	
<i>nom.</i>	quidam,	quædam,	quoddam or quiddam	} one, a certain, some
<i>gen.</i>	cujusdam			
<i>dat.</i>	cuidam, &c.			

<i>nom.</i>	quilibet, quælibet, quodlibet or quidlibet,	} who or whom, whom-ever or whatso-ever you please, &c.
<i>gen.</i>	cujuslibet	
<i>dat.</i>	cuilibet	

		or	
<i>nom.</i>	quivis,	quævis,	quodvis
<i>gen.</i>	cujusvis		
<i>dat.</i>	cuivis		

PRONOUNS INTERROGATIVE.

The following are called *interrogative*, because they are used in asking questions; they may have an antecedent or not, and are sometimes joined to a substantive: they are

	<i>Singular.</i>			
	mas.	fem.	neut.	
<i>nom.</i>	quis	quæ	quid	} who, which, or what? whose? to whom?
<i>gen.</i>	cujus			
<i>dat.</i>	cui			
<i>acc.</i>	quem	quam	quid or quod	
<i>voc.</i>	wanting			
<i>abl.</i>	quo	quâ	quo	

I

Plural.

Plural.

	mas.	fem.	neut.
<i>nom.</i>	qui	quæ	quæ
<i>gen.</i>	quorum	quarum	quorum
<i>dat.</i>	quibus		
<i>acc.</i>	quos	quas	quæ
<i>voc.</i>	wanting		
<i>abl.</i>	quibus		

or

qualis, quale, what? declined as *fortis*.

N. B. *Quod* agrees with the noun that follows it, in gender and number. *Quid*, on the contrary, requires the following noun to be put in the genitive case: as *quod malum*, or *quid mali tibi fecit?* what harm has he done to thee? *What* is to be made by *quot-us, a, um*, declined like *bonus*, when the question that is asked requires the answer to be made by the English cardinal number *one, two, three*, and in Latin by the ordinal, *primus, secundus, &c.* *Quota hora est?* what o'clock is it? *Septima*, seven. *What* is to be made by *quant-us, a, um*, when it expresses *surprise*; as *quanta perniciēs nobis instat!* what misfortune threatens us!

Compounds of *quis* or indefinite pronouns.

Quis only is declined in the following, and the other syllables remain the same; as

	mas.	fem.	neut.
<i>nom.</i>	quisnam	quænam	quodnam or quidnam
	who, which?	who, which?	what, or what thing?
<i>gen.</i>	cujusnam		
<i>dat.</i>	cuinam		&c.

<i>nom.</i> <i>ecquis</i>	<i>ecqua</i>	<i>ecquod</i> or <i>ecquid</i>
	who, whether any man or woman,	what, whether at all
<i>gen.</i> <i>eccujus</i>		
<i>dat.</i> <i>eccui</i>		&c.

Decline as above *ecquisnam*, *ecquænam*, *ecquodnam* or *ecquidnam*, whether any man, woman, or thing.

<i>nom.</i> <i>unusquisque</i>	<i>unaquæque</i>	<i>unumquodque</i>
	every, every one	every thing
<i>gen.</i> <i>uniuscujusque</i>		
<i>dat.</i> <i>unicuique</i>		

In the above pronoun, both *unus* and *quisque* are declined.

NATIONAL PRONOUNS.

These are called *national*, because they express the nation or country; they are of the three genders; as *nostras*, of our country; *vestras*, of your country; *cujas*, of what country. They are declined as the following:

Singular.

<i>nom.</i>	<i>nostras</i>	
<i>gen.</i>	<i>nostratis</i>	
<i>dat.</i>	<i>nostrati</i>	
<i>acc.</i>	<i>nostratem</i>	<i>hoc nostras</i>
<i>voc.</i>	<i>o nostras</i>	
<i>abl.</i>	<i>nostrate</i> or <i>nostrati</i>	

Plural.

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	nostrates	hæc nostratia
<i>gen.</i>	nostratium	
<i>dat.</i>	nostratibus	
<i>acc.</i>	nostrates	hæc nostratia
<i>voc.</i>	o nostrates	nostratia
<i>abl.</i>	nostratibus	

OBSERVATIONS.

His, her, its, their, placed with one or more substantives either before or after a verb, are to be made in Latin by *suus, sua, suum*, according to the gender, number, and case of that substantive, when they refer to the nominative of a verb; on the contrary, when they have no reference to it, they must be made in Latin by either of the genitives of *is, ille*, or *ipse*, according to the gender or number of the substantive to which they refer; which may be known in the following manner; *magister amat discipulos suos*, *at detestatur eorum vitia*; a master loves *his* scholars, but he detests *their* vices.

1st question, *Who loves his scholars?* answer, *the master*. 2d question, *Whose scholars are they?* answer, *the master's*. As the word *master* has been answered twice, *his* has a reference to the nominative, and thus must be made by *suus*, &c. But he detests their vices: 1st question: *Who detests the vices?* answer, *the master*. 2d question, *Whose vices does the master detest?* answer, *the scholars*; in which case the pronoun *their*, having no reference to the nominative of

of the verb must be made by the genitive of *is, ea, id*, and agree in gender with the noun of the second answer.

The relative pronoun *qui, quæ, quod*, agrees with its antecedent, that is the noun or pronoun to which it refers, in *gender, number, and person*; but as to case, it depends on the following word; as *Deus qui regnat*, God who reigns; *mater mea quæ ægrotat*, my mother who is ill; *animal quod currit*, the animal which or that runs; *homines quos vidi*, the men whom I saw, or with the English pronoun understood, the men I saw; *pennæ quas emi*, the pens I bought or which I bought; *legi librum cujus es auctor*, I read the book whose author you are.

When the relative *qui, quæ, quod*, has two or more antecedents, it is to be put in the plural number; and if the antecedent be of different genders, then the relative agrees with the most worthy: as *pater & mater quos amo*, the father and mother whom I love.

If the antecedents be inanimate objects, the relative is put in the plural and neuter gender: as *virtus & vitium quæ sunt contraria*, virtue and vice which are opposite.

Should the relative be governed by two verbs requiring different cases, the pronoun must be twice expressed in Latin and put in the case which each verb governs: as *pauperes quos amo & quibus opitulator*, the poor whom I love and succour, *that is*, and whom I succour.

Who, whom, which, what? are made by *quis, quæ, quod*,

quod, or *quisnam*, *quænam*, *quodnam*, and the following noun (if any) is put either in the genitive case, or in the ablative with the preposition *e* or *ex*, or in the accusative with the preposition *inter*: as *quis vestrum*, or *ex vobis*, or *inter vos*? who among you?

When *which* or *what* are joined to a noun substantive, *quis*, *quæ*, *quod*, or the compounds, must agree with it in gender, number, and case: as *quænam mater non amat liberos suos*? what mother does not love her children?

PRAXIS ON THE ABOVE PRONOUNS.

Give me *dat.* the bread *acc.* Bring us *dat.* the meat *acc.*
da, v. pan-is, is m. adfer, v. car-o, nis f.

Have you the key of my study *gen.* I have
habesne, v. clav-is, is f. muse-um, i n. inveni, v.

found the book *acc.* which *acc.* I looked for
lib er, ri, m. quæsi, v.

so long. Give me the wine *acc.* Carry
tamdiu, adv. vin-um, i n. fer, v.

the sword *acc.* to John *dat.* My brother and sister *nom.*
gladi-us, i m. Joann-es, is m.

are good. Our friends *nom.* are the enemies *nom.*
amic-us, i m. inimic-us, i m.

of our neighbours *gen.* To whom *dat.* (shall I give)
vicin-us, i m. dabo, v.

that? *acc.* Give it *acc.* to me *dat.* I know it *acc.*
da, v. scio, v.

from him *abl.* What *acc.* do you wish? Send that
ab, pr. optas, v. mitte, v.

coat *acc.* They, she, and I *nom.* live yet.
vest-is, is f. vivimus, v. adhuc, adv.

The miser *nom.* loves less his God *acc.* than his
avar-us, i m. amat, v. minus, adv.

money

money *acc.* Return me *dat.* the book *acc.*
 crumen-*a, æ f.* redde, *v.*

which *acc.* I have lent you *dat.* He *nom.* has accused
 commodavi, *v.* accusavit, *v.*

some *acc.* of us *abl.* to the master *acc.* That which
 ex, *pr.* ad, *pr.*

or what *acc.* is true. He is a friend *nom.* to
 ver-*us, a, um adj.*

whom *dat.* I gave my money *acc.* It is a garden *nom.*
 dedi, *v.* pecuni-*a, æ f.* hort-*us, i m.*

out of which *abl.* I gather much fruit *acc.*
 ex, *pr.* colligo, *v.* mult-*us, a, um adj.* fruct-*us, ūs m.*

The man *nom.* whose *gen.* virtue *acc.* I esteem so much.
 virt-*us, utis f.* facio, *v.* tanti.

You and your sister *nom.* love the boys *acc.* in
 amatis, *v.* in, *pr.*

whom *abl.* I formerly trusted. Whose daughter *acc.*
 olim, *adv.* confidebam, *v.* fili-*a, æ f.*

have you brought with you? What *acc.* do you think
 adduxistis, *v.* cogitas, *v.*

of her *abl.* The woman *nom.* whose *gen.* books *acc.*
 de, *pr.* femin-*a, æ f.*

you have taken and whom *acc.* you saw with me, was
 abstulisti, *v.* vidisti, *v.* erat, *v.*

your friend's *gen.* sister *nom.* What *acc.* have you

received from her brother? *abl.* The houses *nom.*
 accepisti *a, pr.*

about which *abl.* you talked with us were a little
 locutus-*es v.* erant, *v.* paulo

too small. Who *nom.* has done
 nimium, *adv.* exigu-*us, a, um adj.* fecit, *v.*

that? *acc.* There are very fine flowers *nom.*
 pulch-*er, ra, rum adj.* flo-*s, ris m.*

in my garden *abl.* do you wish to have any? A
 in, *pr.* cupis-*ne, v.* habere, *v.*

good

good father *nom.* loves his children *acc.* but despises
 amat, v. fed, c. spernit, v.
 their vices *acc.* What *acc.* can please
 viti-um, i m. potest, v. delectare, v.
 you *acc.* so much in this city? *nom.* This book *nom.*
 tam, adv. in, pr. urb-s, is f.
 was given me *dat.* by my mother *abl.* Whoso-
 est datus, v. a, pr.
 ever *nom.* spares the bad *dat.* hurts the good *dat.*
 parcit, v. mal-us, a, um adj. nocet, v.
 What *nom.* is more excellent than eloquence.
 præstabil-is, e adj. eloquenti-a, æ f.
 Of all things *gen.* by which somewhat *nom.*
 omn-is, e adj. re-s, i f. ex, pr.
 is gotten, nothing is better than husbandry,
 acquiritur, v. nihil, n. ind. agricultur-a, æ f.
 nothing more pleasant, nothing more worthy *nom.* of
 dulc-is, e adj. dign-us, a, um adj.
 a free man *abl.* What flourishing cities *acc.*
 liber, a, um adj. floren-s, tis adj.
 luxury *nom.* has destroyed! Whose *gen.* son
 lux-us, ūs m. perdidit, v. fili-us, i m.
 was Abel? Romulus *nom.* by whom *abl.*
 erat, v. Abel, is m. Romul-us, i m. a, pr.
 Rome *nom.* was built. God *nom.*
 Rom-a, æ f. fuit, v. condit-us, a, um p. p.
 whose *gen.* providence *acc.* we daily admire.
 providenti-a, æ f. quotidie, adv. miramur, v.
 Who *nom.* was the first man? *nom.* God *nom.*
 fuit, v.
 whom *acc.* I love and (whom *dat.*) obey. I saw
 amo, v. pareo, v. vidi, v.
 the mother *acc.* of the ladies *gen.* whose *gen.*
 fæmin-a, æ f.
 beauty *acc.* you praise.
 pulchritud-o, inis f. laudas, v.

RECAPITULATORY OR PROMISCUOUS PRAXIS
ON THE FIVE DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS, THE
ADJECTIVES AND THEIR GOVERNMENTS,
THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON, AND THE
PRONOUNS.

The desire *nom.* of honour, riches, and
 cupidit-*as*, *atis* f. hon-or, *oris* m. diviti-*æ*, *arum* f.
 pleasure *gen.* is a disease *nom.* of the mind *gen.*
 volupt-*as*, *atis* f. est, v. morb-*us*, *i* m. anim-*us*, *i* m.
 He sent two horses *acc.* with two mares *abl.*
 misit, v. duo, *adj.* equ-*us*, *i* m. cum, p. equ-*a*, *æ* f.
 into the meadows *acc.* Your brother *nom.* whom *acc.*
 in, p. prat-*um*, *i* n.
 every one *nom.* loves, is the most diligent
 amat, v. dilig-*ens*, *entis* *adj.*
 boy *nom.* in the school. They think themselves *acc.*
 schol-*a*, *æ* f. putant, v. fui, pro.
 more noble by relating the brave
 clar-*us*, *a*, *um* *adj.* memorando, v. fort-*is*, *e* *adj.*
 actions *acc.* of their ancestors *gen.* To us *dat.*
 fact-*um*, *i* n. major-*es*, *um* m. ego, pro.
 labours, sweat, and dust *nom.* are
 lab-or, *oris* m. sud-or, *oris* m. pulv-*is*, *eris* m. sunt, v.
 more agreeable than feasts. Patience *nom.*
 jucund-*us*, *a*, *um* *adj.* epul-*æ*, *arum* f. Patienti-*a*, *æ* f.
 is a remedy *nom.* for every grief *dat.*
 remedi-*um*, *i* n. quivis, &c. pro. dol-or, *oris* m.
 The empire *nom.* of custom *gen.* is the
 imperi-*um*, *i* n. consuetud-*o*, *inis* f.
 most weighty. (There is) more *nom.* danger
 grav-*is*, *e* *adj.* est, v. plu-*s*, *ris* *adj.* pericul-*um*, *i* n.
 than honour in innocence *abl.* He was
 in, p. innocent-*i*, *æ* f. fuit, v.
 hateful *nom.* to the nobility *dat.* and guilty
 invis-*us*, *a*, *um* *adj.* nobilit-*as*, *atis* f. re-*us*, *a*, *um* *adj.*
 of

of the most atrocious crimes. Live
 atro-*x*, *cis* adj. scel-*us*, *eris* n. vive, v.
 mindful *nom.* of death and old age,
 mem-*or*, *oris* adj. mor-*s*, *tis* f. senect-*us*, *utis* f.
 which *acc.* men *nom.* think the greatest *acc.*
 qui, &c. pro. hom-*o*, *inis* m. putant, v. magn-*us*, *a*, *um* adj.
 of all evils. He was an enemy
 omn-*is*, *e* adj. mal-*um*, *i* n. erat, v. insens-*us*, *a*, *um* adj.
 to good men, unmindful of a kindness
 bon-*us*, &c. adj. immem-*or*, *oris* adj. benefici-*um*, *i* n.
 and given up to avarice. The king *nom.*
 dedit-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. avariti-*a*, *æ* f. re-*x*, *gis* m.
 sent the same ambassadors *acc.* with
 misit, v. idem, &c. pro. legat-*us*, *i* m. cum, p.
 some noblemen *abl.* and he was
 quidam, &c. pro. nobil-*is*, *e* adj. erat
 doubtful in his mind *gen.* what *acc.*
 dubi-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. anim-*us*, *i* m. quisnam, &c. pro.
 resolution *gen.* (he should take.) He named
 consili-*um*, *i* n. caperet, v. nominavit, v.
 every one *acc.* of the conspirators and all
 unus quisque, &c. pro. conjurat-*us*, *i* m. omn-*is*, *e* adj.
 the accomplices *acc.* of the crime. No
 partic-*eps*, *ipis* m. crim-*en*, *inis* n. null-*us*, *a*, *um* adj.
 friendship *nom.* will be more convenient to you
 amicitia-*a*, *æ* f. erit, v. opportun-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. tu, pro.
 than ours. The captives *nom.* anxious
 nost-*er*, *ra*, *rum* pro. captiv-*us*, *i* m. anxi-*us*, *a*, *um* adj.
 with fear *abl.* ignorant *nom.* of the places,
 met-*us*, *us* m. ignar-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. loc-*us*, *i* m.
 tried an escape by every means *abl.*
 tentaverunt, v. fug-*a*, *æ* f. quivis, &c. pro. mod-*us*, *i* m.
 I will not suffer the villainy *acc.* of
 non, adv. patiar, v. scel-*us*, *eris* n.
 any one They lead a life *acc.* more grievous
 quisquam, &c. pro. agunt, v. vit-*a*, *æ* f. grav-*is*, *e* adj.
 K 2 than

than death. I despise a man *acc.*
mor-s. tis f. despicio, v. hom-o, *inis m.*
 suppliant to his enemies,
 suppl-*ex, icis adj.* inimic-*us, i m.*
 insolent to his friends,
 contumelios-*us, a, um adj.* amic-*us, i m.*
 faithful to nobody and ready
 fid-*us, a, um adj.* nem-o, *inis, do.* parat-*us, a, um adj.*
 for any crime. To few
 ad, p. quivis, &c. pro. facin-*us, oris n.* pauc-*us, a, um adj.*
 honesty is dearer than money.
 fid-*es, ei f.* car-*us, a, um adj.* pecuni-*a, æ f.*
 Their authority is a mockery *nom.* to
 is, &c. pro. auctorit-*as, atis f.* ludibri-*um, i n.*
 every one most base and abandoned.
 quisque, &c. pro. turp-*is, e adj.* scelerat-*us, a, um adj.*
 In whatever station *abl.* fortune *nom.*
 in, p. quicunque, &c. pro. stat-*us, ūs m.* fortun-*a, æ f.*
 has placed any one *acc.* he ought to be
 posuit, v. quisque, &c. pro. ille, pro. debet, v. esse, v.
 happy. Let him learn any trade
 feli-*x, cis adj.* ediscat, v. ar-*s, tis f.*
 whatever *acc.* Among all the
 quilibet, &c. pro. inter, p. cunct-*us, a, um adj.*
 Trojans *acc.* Æneas *nom.* was the most pious.
 Trojan-*us, i m.* Æne-*as, æ m.* fuit, v. pi-*us, a, um adj.*
 The more famous the life *nom.* of your
 præclar-*us, a, um adj.* vit-*a, æ f.*
 father has been, the more infamous your
 fuit, v. flagitios-*us, a, um adj.*
 sloth *nom.* is. Aristides *nom.* was indeed
 fociordi-*a, æ f.* Aristid-*es, is m.* erat, v. quidem, adv.
 the poorest of the Greeks, but the
 paup-*er, eris adj.* Græc-*us, i m.* fed, c.
 most just and famous. I despise
 just-*us, a, um adj.* celeb-*er, ris, re adj.*
 those

those *acc.* who, *nom.* are so
 ille, &c. *pro.* qui, &c. *pro.* sunt, *v.* tam, *adv.*
 insolent and quarrelsome.
 superb-*us, a, um adj.* litigios-*us, a, um adj.*
 Liberty *nom.* is desirable to the good and the
 Libert-*as, atis f.* optabil-*is, e adj.*
 bad, the brave and the cowardly.
 strenu-*us, a, um adj.* ignav-*us, a, um adj.*
 The horses *nom.* which *acc.* you see, and which *abl.*
 equ-*us, i m.* qui, &c. *pro.* vides, *v.*
 we use are swifter than mares.
 utimur, *v.* sunt, *v.* velo-*x, cis adj.* equ *a, æ f.*
 He is the worst *nom.* of all
 ille, &c. *pro.* mal-*us, a, um adj.* omn-*is, e adj.*
 men and worthy of a prison and
 dign-*us, a, um adj.* carc-*er, eris m.*
 gibbet *abl.* who despises his father or
 cru-*x, cis f.* qui, &c. *pro.* contemnit, *v.*
 mother. Take a bough *acc.* from whatever *abl.*
 fume, *v.* fron-*s, dis f.* de, *p.* quilibet, &c. *pro.*
 tree you please. They were
 arb-*or, oris f.* erant, *v.*
 diligent and stout *nom.* but
 assidu-*us, a, um adj.* strenu-*us, a, um adj.* fed, *c.*
 ignorant of the ground. The pleasures *nom.*
 nesci-*us, a, um adj.* loc-*us, i m.* volupt-*as, atis f.*
 which *abl.* I formerly enjoyed but which *acc.* I
 qui, *pro.* olim, *adv.* fructus sum *v.*
 now have lost are very like a dream *dat.*
 jam, *adv.* perdidit, *v.* simil-*is, e adj.* somni-*um, i n.*
 We lead a life *acc.* equal to our
 agimus, *v.* vit-*a, æ f.* pa-*r, is adj.* noster, &c. *pro.*
 assertions *dat.* and are content with
 verb-*um, i n.* sumus, *v.* content-*us, a, um adj.*
 the pleasures *abl.* of virtue, but we are
 virt-*us, utis f.* sumus, *v.*
 free

free from military service, because we
 immun-*is*, *e* adj. militi-*a*, *æ* f. quia, *c*.
 are very poor. A boy *nom.* endued
 paup-*er*, *eris* adj. prædit-*us*, *a*, *um* adj.
 with a good disposition is always
 ingeni-*um*, *i* n. semper, adv.
 fond of learning, Cows' *gen.*
 studios-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. liter-*æ*, *arum* f. vacc-*a*, *æ* f.
 milk *nom.* is very wholesome and agreeable to
 lac, *tis* n. salub-*er*, *ris*, *re* adj. apt-*us*, *a*, *um* adj.
 to the stomach. My father *nom.* was fitter
 stomach-*us*, *i* m. erat, *v.* habil-*is*, *e* adj.
 for a quiet life *dat.* than fatigue, but
 oti-*um*, *i* n. lab-*or*, *oris* m.
 a lover of justice. I have crossed
 am-*ans*, *antis* adj. æqu-*um*, *i* n. transivi, *v.*
 the river Thames *acc.* which *nom.* is a hundred
 flum-*en*, *inis* n. Tames-*is*, *is* m. qui, &c. pro.
 miles long and one
 mille pass-*us*, *us* m. long-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. mille pass-*us*, *us* m.
 broad. Some bodies are
 lat-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. quidam, &c. pro. corp-*us*, *oris* n. sunt, *v.*
 penetrable to no weapon.
 penetrabil-*is*, *e* adj. null-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. tel-*um*, *i* n.
 The crime *nom.* of one man
 crim-*en*, *inis* n. un-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. hom-*o*, *inis* m.
 was pernicious to all
 fuit, *v.* pernicios-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. omn-*is*, *e* adj.
 mortals. (By how much) the morning-star *nom.* is
 mortal-*is*, *is* m. quanto, adv. Lucif-*er*, *eri* m.
 brighter than the other
 splendid-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. cæt-*er*, *era*, *erum* adj.
 stars, (by so much) Helen *nom.* was
 sid-*us*, *eris* n. tanto, adv. Helen-*a*, *æ* f. erat, *v.*
 more beautiful than all other virgins.
 præst-*ans*, *antis* adj. virg-*o*, *inis* f.
 He

He implored the assistance *acc.* of every
 imploravit, v. op-is, is f. unus quisque, &c. pro.
 canton *gen.* which *nom.* had been faithful
 civit-as, atis f. fuerat, v. fidel-is, e adj.
 to his father.
 suus, &c. pro.

VERB.

A VERB is the chief word in every sentence, and signifies the *being*, as *sum*, I am; the *action*, as *amo*, I love; or *suffering*, as *punior*, I am punished.

Verbs are generally divided into four kinds, viz. *active*, *neuter*, *passive*, *deponent*.

In the *active verbs*, the action is *transitive*, that is, passes from the agent or nominative to another object, which generally is its accusative: as *ego doceo te*, I teach thee; *magister puniet pigros*, the master will punish the lazy.

In the *neuter verbs*, the action is *intransitive*, that is, remains in the agent that is doing it; as *ego sum*, I am; *venitis*, ye are coming; *currunt*, they run; *ægotamus*, we are sick.

In the *passive verbs*, the action is suffered or received by the subject or nominative; they are formed, in English, by the verb *to be* and its inflexions; as *ego punior*, I am punished; *amatus est*, he has been loved; *frater meus laudabitur*, my brother shall be praised.

A *deponent verb* ends in or like a passive, but its signification may be *active*, as *miror*, I admire; *imitor*,

tor, I imitate; or *neuter*, as *glorior*, I boast; *morior*, I die.

The above verbs may be divided, as to *termination* and *signification* considered together, into *common*, and *neuter passive*; the *common* has a passive termination, and both an active and passive signification; as *criminator*, I accuse or am accused: the *neuter passive* has partly an active and partly a passive termination, and is either wholly neuter or wholly passive as to its signification; as *gaudeo*, *gavissus sum*, I rejoice; *fiō*, *factus sum*, I become, or I am made; or it has an active termination only, and a passive signification, as *vapulo*, I am beaten.

Verbs are either *personal*, *impersonal*, *defective*, *simple*, or *compounded*.

Personal verbs are conjugated with three persons in their singular and plural, throughout all their tenses.

Impersonal verbs have only the third person of the singular number.

Defective verbs are those that can only be used in some of their tenses and persons.

A verb is *simple*, when it cannot be divided without losing its meaning, as *eo*, I go; *poto*, I drink; *sum*, I am; *sto*, I stand; &c.

A verb is *compounded*, when it is preceded by or part of a preposition; as *redeo*, I come back; *compoto*, I drink together; *præsum*, I preside over; *obsto*, I resist; &c.

CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

To conjugate verbs is to give them different *inflexions* or *terminations*, according to their *voices*, *moods*, *tenses*, *numbers*, *persons*, and *conjugations*.

There are two *voices*; the *active* ending in *o*, as *amo*, I love; the *passive* ending in *or*, as *amor*, I am loved.

MOODS.

Verbs have *four* moods, as in English, which express the manner of *being*, *acting*, or *suffering* an action; they are the *indicative*, the *imperative*, the *potential*, and the *infinitive*.

The *indicative* declares a thing positively; as *amo*, I love: or asks a question; as *amas tu?* dost thou love?

The *imperative* commands or bids; as *ama*, love thou.

The *potential* expresses *possibility* or speaks *conditionally*; as *amem*, I may love; *amarem*, I could or might love. This mood, when *subjoined* by a conjunction, as *if*, *when*, *that*, &c. is also called the *subjunctive* mood; as *cum amarem*, when I loved: and *optative* mood, when it is preceded by an adverb of *wishing*; as *utinam amem*, I wish I may love. This mood is generally known by these signs expressed or understood; *may*, *can*, *might*, *could*, *would*, *should*, or *ought*.

The *infinitive* expresses the signification of the verb in general, but without number or person; it

L

commonly

commonly has the sign *to* before it; as *amare*, to love.

GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

Verbs have *three gerunds* ending in *di*, *do*, *dum*, which have most generally an *active* signification; as *amandi*, of loving, *amando*, in or by loving, *amandum*, to love.

Verbs also have *two supines*, one ending in *um*, used for the infinitive mood *active*: the other ending in *u*, used for the infinitive mood *passive*.

TENSES.

Verbs have five tenses or times; the *present*, *preterimperfect*, *preterperfect*, *preterpluperfect*, and *future*.

In the *indicative* mood

The *present* speaks of the time that *now* is, and is known by the sign *do* and its inflexions; as *amo*, I love, *do love*, or, *am now* loving.

The *preterimperfect* speaks of a thing that was doing at some time past, but not ended; and is known by the sign *did* and its inflexion; as *amabam*, I did love, or, was loving.

The *preterperfect* speaks of a thing lately done; it is known by the sign *have* and its inflexions, or has no sign at all; as *amavi*, I have loved, or, loved *only*.

The *preterpluperfect* refers to some former time, and speaks of a thing that was over and done before that time; it is known by the sign *had* and its inflexion; as *amaveram*, I had loved.

The

The *future* speaks of a thing to be done hereafter, and is known by the sign *shall* or *will* and its inflexion; as *amabo*, I shall or will love.

In the *potential* mood.

The *present* takes the sign *may* or *can*; as *amem*, I may or can love.

The *preterimperfect* is known by the signs *might*, *could*, *would*, *should*; as *amarem*, I might, could, would, or should love.

The *preterperfect* has the sign *may have*; as *amaverim*, I may have loved.

The *preterpluperfect* has the signs *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should have*; as *amavissem*, I might, could, would, or should have loved.

The *future* uses the sign *shall have*; as *amavero*, I shall have loved.

N. B. Sometimes the above signs, *do*, *did*, *am*, *was*, *have*, *had*, *can*, *may*, *will*, *would*, *could*, &c. are verbs of themselves; as I *do*, *facio*; I *did*, *faciebam*; I *am*, *sum*; I *was*, *eram*; I *have*, *habeo*; I *had*, *habui*; I *can* or *may*, *possum*; I *could*, *potui*; I *will*, *volo*; I *would*, *velim*; &c. This will be explained hereafter.

NUMBERS AND PERSONS.

There are *two* numbers in verbs: the *singular* and *plural*; and *three* persons in both numbers; as, sing. *ego amo*, I love; *tu amas*, thou lovest; *ille amat*, he loves. Plur. *nos amamus*, we love; *vos amatis*, ye love; *illi amant*, they love.

Preterperfect—*I was or have been.*

Sing.

Plur.

fui fuisti fuit | fuimus fuistis fuerunt or fuêre

Preterpluperfect—*I had been.*

*This tense is formed from the above by changing i into eram.**

fueram fueras fuerat | fueramus fueratis fuerant

Future—*I shall or will be.*

ero eris erit | erimus eritis erunt

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

First person wanting. | simus, let us be

sis, or es, esto, be thou | sitis, or este, estote, be ye

sit or esto, let him be | sint or sunt, let them be

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present tense—*I be, or may, or can be.*

sim sis sit | simus sitis sint

Imperfect—*I were, or might, or could be.*

essem esses esset | essemus essetis essent

or

forem fores foret | foremus foretis forent

Preterperfect—*I have been or may have been.*

*This tense is formed from the preterperf. ind. by changing i into erim.**

fuerim fueris fuerit | fuerimus fueritis fuerint

Preterpluperfect—*I had been, or would, or might have been.*

*Formed from the preterperf. ind. by changing i into issem.**

fuissem fuisses fuisset | fuissemus fuissetis fuissent

* The same thing is to be observed in all the verbs, both regular and irregular.

Future past—*I shall or will have been.*

*Also formed from the preterperf. ind. by changing i into ero.**

fuero fueris fuerit | fuerimus fueritis fuerint

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and preterimperfect.

esse, to be.

Preterperfect and preterpluperfect.

*Formed from the preterperf. ind. by changing i into isse.**

fuisse, to have been.

Future.

fore, or futurum esse, to be hereafter, or that—
shall or will be.

Future past.

futurum fuisse, that—shall or will have been.

Participle.

futur-us, a, um, about to be.

The following verbs are compounded of *sum*, and conjugated in the same manner

ab-sum, es, fui, esse, to be absent or far from

ad-sum, es, fui, esse, to be at hand or present

de-sum, es, fui, esse, to be wanting, to want

in-sum, es, — esse, to be in

inter-sum, es, fui, esse, to be present

ob-sum, es, fui, esse, to injure, to hurt

præ-sum, es, fui, esse, } to preside over, to rule, to
be above

super-sum, es, fui, esse, to remain, to survive

* The same thing is to be observed in all the verbs, both regular and irregular.

The above compounded verbs govern a *dative* case after them, except *absum*, which requires the *ablative* case with the preposition *a* or *ab*.

N.B. 1. *Sum* requires the same case after it as it has before, and if an adjective follow, that adjective agrees with the noun or nouns substantive agreeably to the rules of adjectives.

2. When *sum* is used to express *habeo*, to have, it then governs the *dative* case for the person; as *est mihi liber*, I have a book, that is, a book is to me: then the nominative is turned into the dative, and the accusative into the nominative.

CONCORD OF THE VERB WITH ITS NOMINATIVE.

The verb must agree with its nominative case in number and person; as *ego sum amicus tuus*, I am your friend; *nos sumus discipuli tui*, we are your scholars; *illi sunt fratres*, they are brothers; *ego fleo*, *tu rides*, I weep, thou laughest; *ille legit*, he reads, *vos cantatis*, ye sing; *illi loquuntur*, they speak.

N.B. The pronouns personal *ego*, *tu*, *ille*, *illa*, *nos*, *vos*, *illi*, &c. are generally understood, when nominatives to the verb: thus instead of saying, *ego sum*, *nos sumus*, *illi sunt*, *ego fleo*, *ille legit*, &c. it is better to say, *sum*, *sumus*, *sunt*, *fleo*, *legit*, &c. It is however necessary to express the above nominative pronouns, especially when the two verbs convey an opposite sense, or a reproach, or any animated speech; as *ille loquitur*, *nos audimus*, he speaks and we hear; *tu audes loqui sic!* you dare speak thus!

N. B. The

N. B. The pronoun *you* denotes the second person both singular and plural; but when we speak to one person only, the Latin verb must be put in the singular, as it has been seen in many instances above.

The verb having two or more nouns or pronouns as its nominatives, must be put in the *plural*, though all these nominatives be in the singular; because two or more nouns or pronouns in the singular are equivalent to a plural: *observing* that the verb must agree with the first person in preference to the second, and with the second in preference to the third, the first person being more worthy than the second, and the second than the third; as *ego** & *frater meus* valemus, my brother and I* are well, *nos*, we, being understood; *tu* & *soror tua* estis pigri, you and your sister are lazy, *vos*, ye, being understood; *ego*,* *tu* & *Joannes* sumus diligentes, you, John, and I* are diligent; *Petrus* & *Paulus* ludunt, Peter and Paul are playing; *tu* & *amicus* garritis, you and your friend are chattering.

A verb having a pronoun relative for its nominative, that pronoun being of the same person with its antecedent or antecedents, must agree with it accordingly and follow the above rule; as *ego* & *tu* qui sumus diligentes, ficiamus docti, you and I who are diligent, will become learned; *tu* & *frater tuus* qui garritis, meremini verbera, you and your brother who are chattering, deserve stripes.

Sometimes

* In English the first person is named the last; in Latin it is the contrary.

Sometimes the verb agrees with an infinitive mood, as its nominative, or part of a sentence; and that infinitive is of the neuter gender; as *mentiri est peccatum*, to lie is a sin; *tuum scire est nihil*, your knowledge is nothing; *videre lucem est jucundum*, to see the light is pleasant.

To conjugate a verb *interrogatively*, the following rules must be attended to:

1. When the question is made without a negation, the nominative (if one of the pronouns personal) is set after the verb; as *es tu amicus meus?* are you my friend? *sunt illi fratres tui?* are they your brothers? *habet ille pecuniam?* has he money? Or by placing the interrogative adverbs, *an*, or *num*, before the first word of the sentence, or *ne* after it; as

<i>An sum custos fratris mei?</i>	} am I the keeper of my brother?
<i>Num sum custos fratris mei?</i>	
<i>Sum ne custos fratris mei?</i>	
<i>An loquor?</i>	do I speak?
<i>Num dormis?</i>	do you sleep?
<i>Vidisti ne regem?</i>	have you seen the king?

2. If the question be made with a *negation*, the interrogative adverbs *annon*, or *nonne*, must be placed before the first word of the sentence; as

<i>Nonne sumus amici?</i>	} are we not friends?
<i>Annon sumus amici?</i>	
<i>Annon or nonne vidisti regem?</i>	have you not seen the king?
<i>Nonne or annon scripsisti literas?</i>	have you not written the letters?

Nonne veniet hodiè? will he not come to-day?
Annon expetis scientiam? do you not desire knowledge?

It must be observed that the answer *yes* or *no* to the above questions is to be made by the verb of the interrogation; and if the answer be made by a noun or pronoun, that noun or pronoun, which is the answer, must be put in the same case as the noun or pronoun in the interrogation: as

Q. Recitavisti ne lectionem tuam? Have you repeated your lesson?

A. Recitavi. Yes, I have; *repeated* is understood in English.

Q. Nonne emisisti libros? Have you not bought books?

A. Non emi. No, I have not: *bought* is likewise understood, &c.

Q. Quis redemit mundum? Who redeemed the world?

A. Jesus Christus. Jesus Christ.

Q. Quid tibi dedit pater tuus? What did your father give you?

A. Librum. A book.

In the two above answers, the verbs *redemit* and *dedit* are understood, as if there had been *Jesus Christus redemit mundum*, Jesus Christ redeemed the world; *pater meus misit mihi librum*, my father sent me a book.

3. But when the question is made by any of the interrogative pronouns or an interrogative adverb, the

the sentence begins, as in English, by the pronoun or adverb, without expressing any of the above adverbs; as

Quis est contentus suâ sorte? who is content with his lot?

Quis est ille homo? who is that man?

Cujus est hic liber? fratris mei. whose book is this? my brother's or of my brother.

Uter est doctior, tu ne, an frater? which of the two is the more learned, you or your brother?

Quis favit vitio? who favours vice?

Quem vocas? whom do you call?

Quid faciunt? what are they doing?

Quid est pulchrius virtute? what is finer than virtue?

Quota hora est? what o'clock is it?

Ubi es? where are you?

Quare hoc fecisti? why have you done that?

Quo vadis? where are you going?

Undè venis? whence come you?

PRAXIS ON THE VERB *Sum* AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

Philosophy is the mother of many
Philosophi-a, æ f. mat-er, ris f. mult-us, a, um adj.
sciences. All my companions are

scienti-a, æ f. omn-is, e adj. foci-us, i m.

loyal subjects. Careless
fidel-is, e adj. civ-is, is m. inconsiderat-us, a, um adj.

boys will be careless men. Let us be diligent
puer, i m. vir, i m. diligen-s, tis adj.

Revenge always has been the pleasure
 ulti-o, *onis* f. semper, adv. volupt-as, *atis* f.
 of a weak mind. The fear
 infirm-us, *a, um* adj. anim-us, *i* m. tim-or, *oris* m.
 of God, the contempt of the world,
 De-us, *i* m. contempt-us, *us* m. mund-us, *i* m.
 and the stedfast hope of an eternal
 firm-us, *a, um* adj. spe-s, *i* f. ætern-us, *a, um* adj.
 life, are the greatest happiness of
 vit-a, *æ* f. magn-us, *a, um* adj. felicit-as, *atis* f.
 men. You *dat.* have a very beautiful
 hom-o, *inis* m. sum pulch-er, *ra, rum* adj.
 house *nom.* The greatest weakness of judgment
 dom-us, *us* f. debilit-as, *atis* f. judici-um, *i* n.
 always was in youth. Magistrates
 infum, v. juvent-us, *utis* f. magistrat-us, *us* m.
 are above the people as the laws
 præsum, v. popul-us, *i* m. ut, adv. le-x, *gis* f.
 are above the magistrates. Alfred was a
 Alfred-us, *i* m.
 great and learned king. All
 insign-is, *e* adj. doct-us, *a, um* adj. re-x, *gis* m.
 men *dat.* have not wit *nom.* Had
 sum, v. non, adv. ingeni-um, *i* n. sum, v.
 your brother *dat.* other business? *nom.*
 ali-us, *a, ud* adj. negoti-um, *i* n.
 Virtue was always an ornament to all, and
 Virt-us, *utis* f. ornament-um, *i* n.
 no part of beauty
 null-us, *a, um* adj. par-s, *tis* f. pulchritud-o, *inis* f.
 shall be wanting to them who are
 desum, v. ille, illa, &c.
 endowed with it. Is not wisdom
 prædit-us, *a, um* adj. is, ea, &c. sapienti-a, *æ* f.
 the chief of virtues and the knowledge of
 princ-eps, *ipis* com. scienti-a, *æ* f.
 divine

divine and human things?
 divin-*us, a, um* adj. human-*us, a, um* adj. re-*s, i* f.
 Be (ye) mindful of kindneſſes. That they
 mem-*or, oris* adj. benefi-*ci-um, i* n. ut, c.
 may not be ſo laſh of money.
 tam, adv. liberal-*is, e* adj. pecuni-*a, æ* f.
 If the phyſician had been preſent, pot. my brother
 ſi, c. medic-*us, i* m. adſum, v.
 would be alive. The poor
 viv-*us, a, um* adj. inopi-*us, a, um* adj.
 want many things, the covetous
 deſum, v. mult-*us, a, um* adj. avar-*us, a, um* adj.
 want all things. Have not ſhips always
 omn-*is, e*, adj. nav-*is, is* f.
 been the defence of the inhabitants of this
 tutam-*en, inis* n. incol-*a, æ* do.
 iſland? Joſeph thy beloved
 inſul-*a, æ* f. Joſeph-*us, i* m. delect-*us, a, um* adj.
 ſon is the man who preſides over all
 fili-*us, i* m. præſum, v. tot-*us, a, um* adj.
 Ægypt. Adam was the firſt man, and
 Ægypt-*us, i* m. Adam-*us, i* m.
 Eve the firſt woman. All, who are good, are
 Hev-*a, æ* f. muli-*er, eris* f.
 the friends of God: they ſhall be happy in
 feli-*x, cis* adj. in, p.
 this world and in the world
 hic, hæc, &c. mund-*us, i* m.
 hereafter. Virgil was one of the beſt
 futur-*us, a, um* adj. Virgili-*us, i* m.
 poets among the Latins. The ſea,
 poet-*a, æ* m. inter, p. Latin-*us, i* m. mar-*e, is* n.
 the rivers, and the woods are the works
 fluvi-*us, i* m. ſylv-*a, æ* f. op-*us, eris* n.
 of the hands of God. We thy ſervants are
 man-*us, ſs* f. ſerv-*us, i* m.
 twelve

twelve brothers, the sons of one man, the
 least is with our father *abl.* the other
parv-us, a, um adj. *cum, p.* *alter, a, um adj.*
 is not surviving. Bread and other
 superfum, v. *pan-is, is m.* *ali-us, a, um adj.*
 things necessary to life are wanting
 necessari-us, a, um adj. *vit-a, æ f.* *desum, v.*
 in France *abl.*
 Galli-a, æ f.

REGULAR VERBS.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Active voice.

Primitive tenses.

Present indicative.	Preterperf.	Supine.	Pres. Infin.
<i>radix inflexion rad.inf.</i>	<i>rad. inf.</i>	<i>rad. inf.</i>	<i>rad. inf.</i>
am - o,	am-as;	amav-i;	am-atum;
	am-are;*	to love	

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present tense.

Singular.

Plural.

I love, do love, *or* am loving we love, do love, *or* are loving

ego	tu	ille	nos	vos	illi
am-o,	as,	at;	am-amus,	atis,	ant.

Imper-

* All verbs form their other tenses from these, as will be seen in this and other conjugations; so that too great care and attention cannot be paid to the *preterperfect* and *supine*, when the verbs are looked out in the dictionary, especially as there are some verbs in all conjugations whose *preterperfect* and *supines* much differ from the regular ones.

Imperfect.

This tense is formed from the above, by changing o into abam, &c. as

Singular.

Plural.

I loved *or* was loving we loved *or* were loving
am-abam, abas, abat; am-abamus, abatis, abant.

Preterperfect.

N. B. *This tense, in all verbs, has its own peculiar formation; all other past tenses are formed from it.*

Singular.

Plural.

I loved, did love, or have loved; we loved, did love, or have loved.
amav-i, isti, it; amav-imus, istis, erunt *or* ere.

Preterpluperfect.

This tense is formed from the above by changing i into eram, &c. as

Singular.

Plural.

I had loved we had loved
amav-eram, eras, erat; amav-eramus, eratis, erant.

Future.

This tense is formed from the present, by changing o into abo, &c. as

Singular.

Plural.

I shall *or* will love we shall *or* will love
am-abo, abis, abit; am-abimus, abitis, abunt.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

This mood is formed from the present infinitive by taking away re.

Singular.

Plural.

love thou

let us love

tu

ille

nos

vos

illi

am-a *or* ato, et *or* ato; am-emus, ate *or* atote, ent *or* ato

POTEN-

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present tense.

This tense is formed from the present indicat. by changing o into em, &c. as

Singular.

Plural.

I may, can, or should love; we may, can, or should love.

am-em, es, et;

am-emus, etis, ent.

Preterimperfect.

This tense is formed from the present infinitive by adding m, &c. as

Singular.

Plural.

I would, could, or might love;

we would, could, or might love.

am-arem, ares, aret;

am-aremus, aretis, arent.

Preterperfect.

This tense is formed from the preterp. indic. by changing i into erim, &c. as

Singular.

Plural.

I may have loved

we may have loved

amav-erim, eris, erit;

amav-erimus, eritis, erint.

Preterpluperfect.

This tense is formed from the preterp. ind. by changing i into issem, &c. as

Singular.

Plural.

I would, should, or might have loved; we would, should, or might have
amav-issem, isses, isset; amav-issemus, issetis, issent

[loved.

Future past.

This tense is also formed from the preterp. ind. by changing i into ero, &c. as

Singular.

Plural.

I shall or will have loved

we shall or will have loved

amav-ero, eris, erit;

amav-erimus, eritis, erint.

INFL-

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and imperfect tense.

am-are, to love.

Preterperfect and preterpluperfect.

Formed from the preterperf. ind. by changing i into isse.

amav-isse, to have loved.

Future.

Formed from the supine by changing m into rum.

am-aturum esse, that—shall or will love.

Future past.

am-aturum fuisse, that—shall or will have loved.

Gerunds.

am-andi, of loving.

am-ando, in loving.

am-andum, to love.

Supine.

am-atum, to love.

Participles.

Present.

am-ans, antis, loving

Future.

am-aturus, a, um*, to love.

* Participles in *ans* or *ens* are declined like *prudens*; those ending in *us* as *bonus*.

Conjugate as above,

voc-o,	avi, atum, are,	to call.
laud-o,	avi, atum, are,	to praise.
cre-o,	avi, atum, are,	to create
lig-o,	avi, atum, are,	to tie
confili-o,	avi, atum, are,	to advise
ambul-o,	avi, atum, are,	to walk
clam-o,	avi, atum, are,	to cry
pugn-o,	avi, atum, are,	to fight
culp-o,	avi, atum, are,	to blame.
narr-o,	avi, atum, are,	to relate
accus-o,	avi, atum, are,	to accuse
habit-o,	avi, atum, are,	to inhabit
serv-o,	avi, atum, are,	to preserve, &c.

The following differ from the above in their preterperfect and supine.

cub-o,	ui, itum, are,	to lie down.
d-o,	edi, atum, are,	to give
son-o,	ui, itum, are,	to sound
crep-o,	ui, itum, are,	to make a noise
vet-o,	ui, itum, are,	to forbid
st-o,	eti, atum, are,	to stand
juv-o,	i, jutum, are,	to help, to please, &c.

N. B. Let the young beginners be rehearsed here upon the formation of the different tenses of the above verbs.

All transitive verbs and those having a transitive signification, whether *active*, *deponent*, or *common*, govern the *accusative*: as *amamus magistrum*, we love
the

the master; *docet pueros*, he teaches the boys; *miramur virtutem*, we admire virtue, &c.

Verbs signifying *comparison*, *information*, *refusal*, *application*, or *giving*, *restoring*, *promising*, *paying*, *commanding*, *telling*, and the like, generally govern the *accusative* for the *thing*, and the *dative* for the *person*, whether the dative sign TO be expressed or understood.

N. B. Whenever a verb deviates from the above general rules, the case is pointed out after the substantives in the following exercises.

PRAXIS ON THE ABOVE CONJUGATION.

We are calling. My father did praise. Ye have walked.
voc-o. laud-o. ambul-o.

Your brothers will cry. The soldiers had fought.
clam-o. mil-es, itis, m. pugn-o.

I will blame. The master has forbidden. I was tying.
culp-o. vet-o. lig-o.

God created. My friend had given. Relate (ye.)
cre-o. d-o. narr-o.

That he may advise. We would preserve. They may
ut, c. consili-o. ferv-o.

have stood. Ye might have inhabited. To have founded.
st-o. inhabit-o. fon-o.

Thou walkest. He was calling. We have praised.

I will fight. They were giving. Ye had blamed. For-
bid (ye.) Let them cry. We might have given. They
shall have related. They had not accused.

ADDITIONAL PRAXIS ON THE SAME
CONJUGATION.

Cæsar affembles the chiefs of
Cæsar, *is* m. convoc-o, *avi, atum, v.* princ-eps, *ipſis, m.*
the conspiracy by night, *abl.* The Roman people
conspirati-o, *onis, f.* nox. Roman-us, *a, um, adj.* popu-
governed the towns of the
l-us, *i, m.* adminiſtr-o, *avi, atum, v.* oppid-um, *i, n.* Car-
Carthaginians by magiſtrates, *acc.* Crying,
thagenienſ-is, *is, m.* magiſtrat-us, *ûs* lacrym-o, *avi, atum, v.*
he beſought him, *acc.* for the ſake of their
obſecr-o, *avi, atum, v.* per, *pr.*
friendſhip and the commonwealth, *acc.* They begged
amiciti-a, *æ,* reſpublic-a, *æ, f.* or-o, *avi, atum, v.*
that they would raiſe an army. When
ut, *c.* compar-o *avi, atum, v.* exercit-us, *ûs, m.* cum
fear had agitated their
pav-or, *oris, m.* agit-o, *avi, atum, v.* is, *ea, &c. pro.*
minds. We beg that you
anim-us, *i, m.* ſupplic-o, *avi, atum, v.* ne, *c.*
may not adviſe him. A pot will a
conſili-o, *avi, atum, v.* is, *ea, &c. pro.* teſt-a, *æ, f.*
long time preſerve a ſmell once
diù, *adv.* ſerv-o, *avi, atum, v.* od-or, *oris, m.* ſemel, *adv.*
infuſed. Do not relate every where that
infuſ-us, *a, um, adj.* ne, *c.* ubiqu, *adv.* quod, *c.*
I have perſpired in carrying water. Death calls
ſud-o, *avi, atum, v.* port-o, *avi, atum, v.* mor-s, *tis,*
all things under its laws. Let us prepare ourſelves.
ſub, *p.* le-x, *gis, f.* præpar-o, *avi, atum, v.* ego, *pro.*
Unleſs Cataline (had made great haſte) to give
ni, *c.* Catalin-a, *æ, m.* matur-o, *avi, atum, v.* ſubj.
the ſign, Rome would have changed its condi-
ſign-um, *i, n.* Rom-a, *æ, f.* mut-o, *avi, atum, v.* for-s, *tis, f.*
tion.

tion. Ye, senators, condemned
 senat-or, oris, m. condemn-o, avi, atum, v.
 the conspirators to death, abl. that ye might free
 conjurat-us, i, m. ut, c. liber-o, avi, atum, v.
 the republic from destruction. Who doubts
 exiti-um, i, n. dubit-o, avi, atum, v.
 (but that) you have acquired those riches
 quin, c. par-o, avi, atum, v. subj. ist-e, a, ud, opulen-
 by the blood, abl. of the citizens.
 ti-a, æ, f. sangu-is, inis, m. civ-is, is, nom.
 You had drawn to yourself alone,
 revoc-o, avi, atum, v. tu, pro. sol-us, a, um, adj.
 the power of life and death. Will you always
 potenti-a, æ, f. vit-a, æ, f. semper, adv.
 be loading our ears with injuries? abl.
 oner-o, avi, atum, v. aur-is, is, f. injuri-a, æ, f.
 Cease, O my friends, to reproach
 cess-o, avi, atum, v. amic-us, i, m. exprobr-o, avi, atum, v.
 me, dat. with poverty, acc. Soldiers, fight for your
 paupert-as, atis, f. pro, p.
 country, your children, and your houses, abl. They
 patri-a, æ, f. liber-i, orum, m. test-um, i, n. festin-o,
 hasten that they may fight with the enemy, abl.
 avi, atum, v. ut, c. cum, p. host-is, is, com.
 A short supper, and sleep on
 brev-is, e, adj. cæn-a, æ, f. somn-us, i, m. in, p.
 the grass, abl. always pleased me. Romans, fight
 herb-a, æ, f. juv-o, i, jutum, v. Roman-us, i, m.
 for the liberty which, acc. ye have lately
 pro, p. libert-as, atis, f. qu-i, æ, od, pro. nuper, adv.
 acquired. The Roman people would have
 recuper-o, avi, atum, v. popul-us, i, m. d-o, edi,
 given him the consulship, but
 atum, v. is, ea, &c. pro. consulat-us, ūs, m. sed, c.
 he refused it. When Cæsar had subdued
 recus-o, avi, atum, v. cum, c. dom-o, ui, itum, v. subj.

all Gaul, he prepared
 omn-is, e, adj. Galli-a, æ, f. par-o, avi, atum, v.
 an expedition against Britain, acc. When you
 expediti-o, onis, f. in, p. Britanni-a, æ, f. cum, c.
 (shall) have adored the deity of Juno, appease
 ador-o, avi, atum, v. num-en, inis, n. Jun-o, onis, f. plac-o,
 Mars by prayers, abl. The sweet
 avi, atum, v. Mar-s, tis, m. prec-es, um, f. dulc-is, e, adj.
 sounds of the lyre and flute shall delight you.
 son-us, i, m. lyr-a, æ, f. fistul-a, æ, f. delect-o, avi, atum, v.
 Greater dangers will threaten
 magn-us, a um, adj. pericul-um, i, n. inst-o, iti, itum, v.
 them, unless they tell
 is, ea, &c. pro. ni, c. nunci-o, avi, atum, v. subj.
 these things to the consul. You would think
 hic, hæc, &c. pr. consul, is, m. put-o, avi, atum, v.
 that his songs refounded (turn his songs
 is, ea, &c. pro. cant-us, ūs, m.
 to refound) on the harp, abl. of Apollo.
 reson-o, ui, or, avi, atum, v. cithar-a, æ, f. Apoll-o, onis, m.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Primitive tenses.

Present indicative.	Preterperf.	Supine.	Pres. Infinitive
radix inflexion rad. inf.	rad. inf.	rad. inf.	rad. inf.
mon - eo, mon - es	monu - i	mon - itum	mon - ěre,
			to advise.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present tense.

*Singular.**Plural.*

I advise, do advise, or am advising | we advise, do advise, or are advising.

ego	tu	ille	nos	vos	illi
mon-co,	es,	et;	mon-emus,	etis,	ent.

Preterimperfect.

*Formed from the above, by changing co into eam, &c. * as**Singular.**Plural.*

I was advising or did advise | we were advising or did advise

mon-ebam, ebas, ebat; mon-ebamus, ebatis, ebant.

Preterperfect.

*This tense has its own peculiar formation; all other past. tenses are formed from it.**Singular.**Plural.*

I advised, did advise, or have advised; we advised, did advise, or have advised

monu-i, isti, it; monu-imus, istis, erunt or ere.

Preterpluperfect.

*This tense is formed from the above by changing i into eram, &c. as**Singular.**Plural.*

I had advised

we had advised

monu-eram, eras, erat; monu-eramus, eratis, erant.

Future.

*This tense is formed from the present, by changing co into ebo, &c. as**Singular.**Plural.*

I shall or will advise

we shall or will advise

mon-ebo, ebis, ebit; mon-ebimus, ebitis, ebunt.

* This manner of forming the tenses being the same through all the regular verbs, it will be unnecessary to repeat it any more after this verb.

IMPE-

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

This mood is formed from the infinitive by taking away re.

Singular.

Plural.

advise thou

let us advise

tu

ille

nos

vos

illi

mon-e or eto, eto; mon-emus, ete or etote, ento or eant

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present tense.

This tense is formed from the present indicat. by changing eo into eam, &c. as

Singular.

Plural.

I may, can, or should advise; we may, can, or should advise

mon-eam, eas, eat; mon-eamus, eatis, eant.

Preterimperfect.

This tense is formed from the present infinitive by adding m, &c. as

Singular.

Plural.

I would, could, or might advise; we would, could, or might advise
mon-erem, eres, eret; mon-eremus, eretis, erent.

Preterperfect.

This tense is formed from the preterp. indic. by changing i into erim, &c. as

Singular.

Plural.

I may have advised

we may have advised

monu-erim, eris, erit; monu-erimus, eritis, erim.

Preterpluperfect.

This tense is formed from the preterp. ind. by changing i into issem, &c. as

Singular.

Plural.

I would, should, or might have advised; we would, should, or might have
monu-issem, isses, isset; monu-issemus, issetis, issent

[advised.

Future

Future past.

This tense is also formed from the preterp. ind. by changing i into ero, &c. as

Singular.

Plural.

I shall or will have advised we shall or will have advised
monu-ero, eris, erit; monu-erimus, eritis, erint.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect.

mon-ere to advise

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect.

Formed from the preterperfect indicative by changing i into isse, as

monu-isse to have advised

Future.

Formed from the supine by changing m into rum.

mon-iturum esse, that—shall or will advise

Future past.

mon-iturum fuisse, that—shall or will have advised

Gerunds.

mon-endi, of advising
mon-endo, in advising
mon-endum, to advise

Supine.

mon-itum, to advise.

O

Participles.

Participles.

Present.

Mon-ens, entis, advising

Future.

Mon-iturus, to advise

Conjugate as above,

Deb-eo,	ui,	itum,	ere,	to owe
Hab-eo,	ui,	itum,	ere,	to have
Prohib-eo,	ui,	itum,	ere,	to forbid
Plac-eo,	ui,	itum,	ere,	to please
Tac-eo,	ui,	itum,	ere,	to hold one's tongue.
Præval-eo,	ui,	itum,	ere,	to prevail
Compar-eo,	ui,	itum,	ere,	to appear

The following differ from the above in their preterperfect and supine.

jub-eo,	jussi,	jussum,	jub-ere,	to order
mord-eo,	momordi,	morsum,	mord-ere,	to bite
rid-eo,	risi,	risum,	rid-ere,	to laugh
fed-eo,	fessi,	fessum,	fed-ere,	to sit down
aug-eo,	auxi,	auctum,	aug-ere,	to increase
lug-eo,	luxi,	luctum,	lug-ere,	to weep, to bewail
Compl-eo,	complevi,	completum,	complere,	to fill, to accomplish
man-eo,	mansi,	mansum,	man-ere,	to live in, to tarry,
vov-eo,	vovi,	votum,	vov-ere,	to vow.

PRAXIS ON THE ABOVE CONJUGATION.

We were owing. He has had. Ye shall forbid. That
 deb-*eo* hab-*eo* prohib-*eo*
 they may please. We would tarry. Order (ye) I had
 plac-*eo* man-*eo*. jub-*eo*.
 held my tongue. You would have prevailed. He may
 tac-*eo* præval-*eo*.
 have appeared. Let us sit down. Ye were bewailing.
 compar-*eo*. fed-*eo* lug-*eo*
 That we may have filled. They had vowed. To have
 compl-*eo* vov-*eo*
 tarried. We would increase. They have bitten. Ye
 man-*eo* ang-*eo* mord-*eo*
 had pleased. We would have ordered. He was laughing.
 We shall have. They would forbid.

ADDITIONAL PRAXIS ON THE SAME
CONJUGATION.

Rich men (are puffed up with) the love, *abl.*
 div-*es*, *itis*, adj. tum-*eo*, *ui*, v. am-*or*, *oris*, m.
 of praise, but they have many
 lau-*s*, *dis*, f. fed, c. hab-*eo*, *ui*, *itum*, v. mult-*us*, *a um*, adj.
 nights full of fear.
 no-*x*, *etis*, f. plen-*us*, *a um*, adj. tim-*or*, *oris*, m.
 A covetous man always wants. Take
 avar-*us*, *a um*, adj. semper, adv. eg-*eo*, *ui*, v. cav-*eo*, *i*,
 care, O my friends, lest ambition should
 cautum, v. ne, c. ambiti-*o*, *onis*, f. mov-*eo*, *i*,
 move you to crimes. He abstained
 motum, v. ad, p. crim-*en*, *inis*, n. abstin-*eo*, *ui*, *abstentum*, v.

from no word, nor action,
 null-*us*, *a um*, adj. verb-*um*, *i*, n. nec, c. fact-*um* *i*, n.
 which might stir up their fury.
 commov-*eo*, *i*, *itum*, v. is, ea, pro. fur-*or*, *oris*, m
 He, whose father had obtained the government
 obtin-*eo*, *ui*, *obtentum*, v. principat-*us*, *ûs*, m.
 of all Gaul. Our ancestors
 tot-*us*, *a um*, adj. Galli-*a*, *æ*, f. major-*es*, *um*, m.
 wanted neither prudence nor means, *gen*. I will destroy
 nec, c. consili-*um*, *i*, n. del-*eo*, *evi*,
 the whole nation if you
 et-*um*, v. tot-*us*, *a um*, adj. nati-*o*, *onis*, f. si, c. jub-*eo*,
 command it. Children, fear God and
 juss-*i*, juss-*um*, v. tim-*eo*, *ui*, *itum*, v.
 dread the sight of vice. The king
 horr-*eo*, *ui*, v. conspect-*us*, *ûs*, m. viti-*um*, *i*, n.
 would treat me unjustly, if he should hinder me from
 hab-*eo*, *ui*, v. injustè, prohib-*eo*, *ui*, *itum*, v.
 the law of nations. The man, whom you saw,
 ju-*s*, *ris*, n. gen-*s*, *tis*, f. vid-*eo*, *visi*, *visum*, v.
 used to teach the Greek
 fol-*eo*, *itus sum*, v. doc-*eo*, *ui*, *tum*, v. Græc-*us*, *a um*, adj.
 language. He did not obey the senate, *dat*.
 lingu-*a*, *æ*, f. par-*eo*, *ui*, *itum*, v. senat-*us*, *ûs*, m.
 as the Carthaginians had persuaded
 ficut, adv. Carthageniens-*is*, *is*, m. persuad-*eo*, *suasi*,
 him *dat*. Have you not seen in history, *abl*.
 suas-*um*, v. vid-*eo*, v.
 the events which have increased one nation and
 event *us*, *ûs*, m. aug-*eo*, *auxi*, *auctum*, v.
 destroyed another? You shall keep the lands which
 del-*eo*, v. ten-*eo*, *ui*, *tum*, v. ag-*er*, *ri*, m.
 you have obtained by arms, *abl*. Domitius
 possid-*eo*, *possedi*, *possessum*, v. arm-*a*, *orum*, n. Domiti-*us*, *i*, m.
 would have remained, but he feared the conspirators.
 reman-*eo*, *si*, *sum*, v. timeo, v. conjurat-*us*, *i*, m.

The

The haughtiness of Pompey
 contumeli-a, æ, f. Pompei-us, i, m.
 displeased the Romans *dat.* therefore
 displic-eo, ui, itum, v. ideo, adv.
 they favoured Cæsar's party *dat.* Restrain
 fav-eo, i, fautum, v. re-s, i, f. retin-eo, ui, v.
 your children rather by shame and
 liber-i, orum, m. potiùs, adv. pud-or, oris m.
 liberality *abl.* than by fear *abl.* You ought
 liberalit-as, atis, f. met-us, ùs, m. deb-eo, ui, itum, v.
 not to frighten a horse by frequent
 exterr-eo, ui, itum, v. equ-us, i, m. ereb-er, ra, rum, adj.
 blows, but to cajole
 verb-er, eris, n. fed, c. permulc-eo, mulsi, mulsum, v.
 him by a gentle touch. They envy
 blandi-ens, entis adj. tact-us, ùs m. invid-eo, i, visum, v.
 my honour *dat.* let them envy my labours, my
 lab-or, oris, m.
 dangers *dat.* Will they fill all towns
 pericul-um, i, n. impl-eo, evi, etum, v. urb-s, is, f.
 with confusion and fear? *abl.* Have they not
 tumult-us, ùs, m.
 exercised the greatest cruelties in
 exerc-eo, ui, itum, v. crudelit-as, atis, f.
 the administration *abl.* of war? If you would
 administrati-o, onis f. bell-um, i n. si adhær-eo, hæsi,
 adhere to religion, you never would want
 hæsum, v. nunquam, adv. car-eo, ui, itum,
 the assistance *abl.* of God.
 auxili-um, i n.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Primitive tenses.

Present indicative.	Preterperf.	Supine.	Pres. Infin.
rad. inf. rad. inf.	rad. inf.	rad. inf.	rad. inf.
leg-o, leg-is	leg-i	lect-um	leg-ere, to read.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
I read, am reading, or do read	we read, are reading, or do read
ego tu ille	nos vos illi
leg-o, is, it;	leg-imus, itis, unt.

Imperfect.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
I was reading or did read	we were reading or did read
leg-ebam, ebas, ebat;	leg-ebamus, ebatis, ebant.

Preterperfect.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
I read, did read, or have read	we read, did read, or have read
leg-i, isti, it;	leg-imus, istis, erunt or êre.

Future.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
I shall or will read	we shall or will read
leg-am, es, et;	leg-emus, etis, ent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Singular.**Plural.*

read thou

|

let us read

tu

ille

nos

vos

illi

leg-e or ito*, at or ito; leg-amus, ite or itote, ant or unto

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present.

*Singular.**Plural.*

I may, can, or should read | we may, can, or should read

leg-am, as, at;

leg-amus, atis, ant.

Preterimperfect.

*Singular.**Plural.*

I would, could, or might read | we would, could, or might read

leg-erem, eres, eret; leg-eremus, eretis, erent.

Preterperfect.

*Singular.**Plural.*

I may have read

|

we may have read

leg-erim, eris, erit;

leg-erimus, eritis, erint.

* The four following verbs *dico, duco, facio, and fero*, make in the second person singular of this mood *dic, duc, fac, fer*: these four irregular imperatives are contained in the two following verses:

Dic sine fine preces, *vacuam duc* crimine vitam;

Fac sapienter opus, *fer* patienter onus.

Preter-

Preterpluperfect.

Singular.

Plural.

I would, should, or might have read | we would, should, or might have ^{[read}
leg-isse, isse, isset; leg-issemus, issetis, issent.

Future past.

Singular.

Plural.

I shall or will have read | we shall or will have read
leg-ero, eris, erit; leg-erimus, eritis, erint.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and preterimperfect.

leg-ere, to read.

Preterperfect and preterpluperfect.

leg-isse, to have read.

Future.

lect-urum esse, that—shall or will read.

Future past.

lect-urum fuisse, that—shall or will have read.

Gerunds.

leg-endi,	of reading.
leg-endo,	in or by reading.
leg-endum,	to read.

Supine.

Supine.

lect-um, to read.

Participles.

Present.

leg-ens, reading.

Future.

lect-urus, to read.

Conjugate as above,

bib-o,	i,	itum,	ere,	to drink.
cresc-o,	crevi,	cretum,	ere,	to grow.
dic-o,	dixi,	dictum,	ere,	to say.
cad-o,	cecidī,	casum,	ere,	to fall down.
ag-o,	egi,	actum,	ere,	to act.
tran-o,	traxi,	tractum,	ere,	to draw.
col-o,	colui,	cultum,	ere,	to cultivate.
toll-o,	fustuli,	sublatum,	ere,	to take away.
em-o,	i,	ptum,	ere,	to buy.
pon-o,	posui,	positum,	ere,	to place.
rump-o,	rupi,	ruptum,	ere,	to break.
coqu-o,	coxi,	coctum,	ere,	to bake.
curr-o,	cucurri,	cursum,	ere,	to run.
mitt-o,	misi,	missum,	ere,	to send.
viv-o,	vixi,	victum,	ere,	to live.
tribu-o,	i,	tum,	ere,	to give.

A VERB OF THE SAME CONJUGATION
ENDING IN *io*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Singular.

Plural.

I receive, &c.

accip-io, is, it; accip-imus, itis, iunt.

Imperfect.

Singular.

Plural.

accip-iebam, iebas, iebat; accip-iebamus, iebatis, iebant.

Preterperfect.

Singular.

Plural.

accep-i, isti, it; accep-imus, istis, erunt *or* ere.

Preterpluperfect.

Singular.

Plural.

accep-eram, eras, erat; accep-eramus, eratis, erant.

Future.

Singular.

Plural.

accip-iam, ies, iet; accip-iemus, ietis, ient.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.

Plural.

accip-e *or* ito, iat *or* ito; accip-iamus ite *or* itote, iant *or* iunto.

POTEN-

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present.

Singular.

Plural.

accip-iam, ias, iat ; accip-iamus, iatis, iant.

Preterimperfect.

Singular.

Plural.

accip-erem, eres, eret ; accip-eremus, eretis, erent.

Preterperfect.

Singular.

Plural.

accep-erim, eris, erit ; accep-erimus, eritis, erint.

Preterpluperfect.

Singular.

Plural.

accep-issem, isses, isset ; accep-issemus, issetis, issent.

Future past.

Singular.

Plural.

accep-ero, eris, erit ; accep-erimus, eritis, erint.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and preterimperfect.

accip-ere.

Preterperfect and preterpluperfect.

accep-isse.

P 2

Future.

Future.

accept-urum esse.

Future past.

accept-urum fuisse.

Gerunds.

accip-iendi.

accip-iendo.

accip-iendum,

Supine.

accept-um.

Participles.

Present.

accip-iens.

Future.

accept-urus.

Conjugate as above,

fac-io,	feci,	tum,	ere,	to make, to do.
cap-io,	cepi,	tum,	ere,	to take.
fod-io,	fodi,	fossam,	ere,	to dig.
arrip-io,	ui,	eptum,	ere,	to catch at, to seize.
fug-io,	i,	itum,	ere,	to run away.
incip-io,	incepti,	inceptum,	ere,	to begin.
				præcipio,

præcip-io, præcepi, præceptum, ere, to command.
 perfic-io, perfecti, perfectum, ere, to accomplish.
 cup-io, ivi, itum, ere, to wish.
 jac-io, jeci, jactum, ere, to throw.

PRAXIS ON THE TWO VERBS OF THIS CONJUGATION.

Ye have drunk enough. They might have grown. I
 bib-o, v. fatis, adv. cresc-o, v.
 will say. We fell down. We are making. He did act.
 dic-o, v. cad-o, v. fac-io, v. ag-o, v.
 Ye have drawn. That he might cultivate. Your
 trah-o, v. col-o
 brother was taking. We took away. The husbandmen
 cap-io, v. toll-o, v. agricol-a, æ m.
 had digged. My sisters will buy. The Lord God placed
 fod-io, v. em-o, v. pon-o, v.
 the first man in a most delightful garden abl.
 in, p. amoen-us, a, um adj. hort-us, i m.
 We might have broken. They will not run away.
 rump-o, v. fug-io.
 Begin (ye). Ye did not bake bread. We may
 incip-io, v. coqu-o, v. pan-is, is m.
 have run. They will command. I would have sent a
 curr-o præcip-io, v. mitt-o, v.
 book to my brother. We had lived. Ye were wishing.
 viv-o, v. cup-io, v.
 They will accomplish. We would have given. We
 perfic-io, v. tribu-o, v.
 will throw.
 jac-io, v.

ADDITIONAL PRAXIS ON THE SAME
CONJUGATION.

Women	easily	believe
muli- <i>er, eris</i> f.	facile, adv.	cred- <i>o, idi, itum</i> v.
false	reports.	These
fals- <i>us, a, um</i> adj.	rum- <i>or, oris</i> m.	ill- <i>e, a, ud</i> pro.
lands	will reduce	to slavery <i>acc.</i>
ag- <i>er, ri</i> m.	redig- <i>o, redegi, redactum, v.</i>	in, p. servit- <i>us, utis</i>
those	who	have accepted
is, ea, &c. pro.	accip- <i>io, accepi, acceptum, v.</i>	them.
The enemy	drove	the Romans into the city <i>acc.</i>
host- <i>is, is</i> m.	ag- <i>o, egi, actum, v.</i>	in, p. urb- <i>s, is</i> f.
When you (shall) have conquered	our army,	
cum, adv.	vinc- <i>o, vici, victum, v.</i>	exercit- <i>us, ūs</i> m.
we will surrender	ourselves.	The less
ded- <i>o, idi, itum, v.</i>	ego, pro.	quo minùs, adv.
Cato	fought	glory,
Cato, <i>nis</i> m.	pet- <i>o, ivi, itum, v.</i>	glori- <i>a, æ</i> f.
he obtained	it.	Julius Cæsar
acquir- <i>o, acquisivi, acquisitum, v.</i>		
conquered	Gaul,	which was a
subig- <i>o, subegi, subactum, v.</i>	Galli- <i>a, æ</i> f.	
very	difficult	thing, because
	difficil- <i>is, e</i> adj.	quia, c.
Gauls	were very brave.	O death,
Gall- <i>us, i</i> m.	fort- <i>is, e</i> adj.	our
last	home,	to thee <i>acc.</i>
ultim- <i>us, a, um</i> adj.	dom- <i>us, ūs</i> f.	ad, pr.
going.		Let us despise
tend- <i>o, tetendi, tensum, v.</i>		contemn- <i>o, contempsi,</i>
	all trifles,	and place
contemhtum, v.	inepti- <i>æ, arum</i> f.	pono, v.
a happy life	in the contempt <i>abl.</i>	of human
beat- <i>us, a, um</i> adj.	despicienti- <i>a, æ</i> f.	human- <i>us, a, um</i> adj.
		things.

things. Only shew war
 re-s, *i f. modò, adv. ostend-o, i, ostensum, v. bell-um, i n.*
 and they will ask for peace. Ye have spared
 pet-o, *ivi, itum, v. pa-x, eis f. parc-o, heherci, har-*
 neither old men, nor women, nor
citum, v. nec, c. sen-ex, is m. nec, c. mulier, eris f.
 children *dat.* Ye have slain the citizens,
 infan-s, *tis com. interfic-io, feci, factum, v. civ-is, is m.*
 give an account of your life. I would say more
 reddo, *v. rati-o, onis f. vit-a, æ f. dic-o, v. plu-s, ris n.*
 if the time would permit.
 si, *c. temp-us, oris n. permitt-o, misi, missum, v.*
 They have driven me out of those
 ejic-io, *ejeci, ejectum, v. is, ea, &c. pro.*
 territories *abl.* which *acc.* the Roman people
 ten-is, *is do. popul-us, i m.*
 had granted to my ancestors. He
 conced-o, *cessi, cessum, v. major-es, um m.*
 was aspiring to the kingdom *acc.* which *acc.* his
 appet-o, *ivi, itum, v. regn-um, i n.*
 father had acquired by arms *abl.*
 par-io, *heheri, partum, v. arm-a, orum n.*
 (Take care of) the republic, govern
 capess-o, *ivi, itum, v. reg-o, rexi, rectum, v.*
 the people with justice. Cæsar fears lest
 justiti-a, *æ f. metu-o, i, v. ne, c.*
 he should deliver up the town. Jugurtha
 trad-o, *idi, itum, v. oppid-um, i n. Jugurth-a, æ m.*
 induced the king to undertake
 impell-o, *puli, pulsum, v. fuscip-io, epi, eptum, v.*
 war against the Romans. The senate
 adversum, *p. senat-us, us m.*
 decreed that he should depart
 decern-o, *crevi, cretum, v. ut, c. disced-o, cessi, cessum, v.*
 from Italy in ten days. Pompey went
 in, *p. Pompei-us, i m. pet-o, ivi, itum, v.*

to Alexandria *acc.* that he might obtain
 Alexandri-*a, æ f.* ut accip-*io, accepi, acceptum, v.*
 help from Ptolemy. Did he not behave
 auxili-*um, i n.* Ptoleme-*us, i m.* ger-*o, gessi, gessum, v.*
 himself in office fo that
 fui, pro. magistrat-*us, ūs m.* ita, adv. ut, c.
 he thought *pot.* nothing unjust,
 duc-*o, duxi, ductum, v.* nihil, sub. injust-*us, a, um adj.*
 what he himself had resolved to do.
 statu-*o, i, itum, v.* fac-*io, feci, factum, v.*
 When cruel tyrants shall have drawn
 cum, c. tyrann-*us, i m.* educ-*o, duxi, ductum, v.*
 the sword, who will set bounds to them?
 gladi-*us, i m.* statu-*o, v.* fin-*is, is f.* ill-*e, a, &c. pro.*
 If Cataline had come off *pot.* conqueror *nom.* in
 disced-*o, cessi, cessum, v.* superi-*or, oris m.*
 the first battle, great calamities
 præli-*um, i n.* magn-*us, a, um adj.* calamit-*as, atis f.*
 would have oppressed the commonwealth.
 opprim-*o, pressi, pressum, v.* republic-*a, æ f.*
 I will shew you a method, by which
 ostend-*o, i, sum, v.* rati-*o, onis f.*
 we may avoid so many evils.
 effug-*io, i, itum, v.* tant-*us, a, um adj.* mal-*um, i n.*
 O my friends, always forgive those from
 ignosc-*o, novi, notum, v.* a, pr.
 whom you may have received an injury. The ancient
 injuri-*a, æ f.*
 Romans made no feasts which
 fac-*io, v.* null-*us, a, um adj.* epul-*æ, arum f.*
 they blushed to expose to the eyes of the people.
 erubesc-*o, bui, v.* subic-*io, v.* ocul-*us, i m.*
 What other thing ruined
 ali-*us, a, ud adj.* perd-*o, idi, itum, v.*
 Alexander, but drunkenness and the love
 Alexand-*er, ri m.* nisi, c. ebriet-*as, atis f.* am-*or, oris m.*
 of

of Cleopatra. Many men desire
 Cleopatr-*a*, æ f. mult-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. cup-*io*, v.
 to live, that they may eat and drink, wife
 viv-*o*, v. ut, c. ed-*o*, *i*, *esum*, v. bib-*o*, *i*, *itum*, v.
 men eat and drink that they may live. A brave
 fort-*is*, *e* adj.
 citizen and worthy of command
 civ-*is*, *is* m. dign-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. principat-*us*, *us* m.
 will give up himself wholly to the state,
 trad-*o*, *idi*, *itum* v. tot-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. respublic-*a*, æ f.
 so that he would suffer death rather than
 oppet-*o*, *ivi*, *itum*, v. potiùs, adv.
 (he would) desert it.
 defer-*o*, *ui*, *itum*, v.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Primitive tenses.

Present indic.	Preterperf.	Supine.	Pres. Infin.
rad. inf.	rad. inf.	rad. inf.	rad. inf.
aud- <i>io</i> , is	audiv- <i>i</i>	audit- <i>um</i>	aud- <i>ire</i> , to hear.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present tense.

*Singular.**Plural.*

I hear, am hearing, or do hear; we hear, are hearing, or do hear

ego	tu	ille	nos	vos	illi
aud- <i>io</i> ,	is,	it;	aud- <i>imus</i> ,	itis,	iunt.

Q

Preter-

Preterimperfect.

*Singular.**Plural.*

I was hearing *or* did hear | we were hearing *or* did hear
 aud-iebam, iebas, iebat; aud-iebamus, iebatis, iebant

Preterperfect.

*Singular.**Plural.*

I heard, did hear, *or* have heard | we heard, did hear, *or* have heard.
 audiv-i, isti, ivit; audiv-imus, istis, erunt *or* ere

Preterpluperfect.

*Singular.**Plural.*

I had heard | we had heard
 audiv-eram, eras, erat; audiv-eramus, eratis, erant.

Future.

*Singular.**Plural.*

I shall *or* will hear | we shall *or* will hear
 aud-iam, ies, iet; aud-iemus, ietis, ient.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Singular.**Plural.*

hear thou | let us hear
 tu ille nos vos illi
 aud-i *or* ito, iat, *or* ito; aud-iamus, ite *or* itote, iant *or* iunto.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present tense.

*Singular.**Plural.*

I may, can, *or* should hear | we may, can, *or* should hear
 aud-iam, ias, iat; aud-iamus, iatis, iant.

Preter-

Preterimperfect.

*Singular.**Plural.*

I would, could, *or* might hear | we would, could, *or* might hear,
 aud-irem, ires, iret; aud-iremus, iretis, irent.

Preterperfect.

*Singular.**Plural.*

I may have heard | we may have heard.
 audiv-erim, eris, erit; audiv-erimus, eritis, erint.

Preterpluperfect.

*Singular.**Plural.*

I would, should, *or* might have heard | we would, should, *or* might have ^{heard.}
 audiv-issēm, issēs, issēt; audiv-isse-mus, issētis, issent.

Future past.

*Singular.**Plural.*

I shall *or* will have heard | we shall *or* will have heard
 audiv-ero, eris, erit; audiv-erimus, eritis, erint.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and preterimperfect.

aud-ire, to hear.

Preterperfect and preterpluperfect.

audiv-isse, to have heard.

Future.

audit-urum esse, that—shall *or* will hear.

Future past.

audit-urum fuisse, that—shall *or* will have heard.

Gerunds.

aud-iendi, of hearing.
 aud-iendo, in *or* by hearing.
 aud-iendum, to hear.

Supine.

audit-um, to hear.

Participles.

Present.

aud-iens, entis, hearing.

Future.

audit-urus, to hear.

N. B. That a *syncope* may be made in the preterfects and all the tenses that are formed from them, by taking away the syllable *ve* or *vi*, and sometimes the letter *v* only in the verbs of the fourth conjugation: thus some authors write *amasti* for *amavisti*; *amarunt* for *amaverunt*; *implem* for *implevissem*; *audieram* for *audiveram*; *audiissent* for *audivissent*; &c.

Conjugate as above,

conc-io,	ivi,	itum,	ire,	to assemble.
sc-io,	ivi,	itum,	ire,	to know.
nesc-io,	ivi,	itum,	ire,	to know not.
e-io,	ivi,	itum,	ire,	to excite.

exaud-io,

exaud-io,	ivi,	itum,	ire,	to hear.
subaud-io,	ivi,	itum,	ire,	to understand.
obed-io,	ivi,	itum,	ire,	to obey.
fin-io,	ivi,	itum,	ire,	to finish.
len-io,	ivi,	itum,	ire,	to soften.
lin-io,	ivi,	itum,	ire,	to anoint.
mun-io,	ivi,	itum,	ire,	to fortify.
nutr-io,	ivi,	itum,	ire,	to feed.
vest-io,	ivi,	itum,	ire,	to clothe.
serv-io,	ivi,	itum,	ire,	to serve.

The following differ in their preterperfect and supine.

fulc-io,	fulsi,	fultum,	ire,	to prop.
haur-io,	hausi,	haustum,	ire,	to draw, to swallow.
aper-io,	ui,	tum,	ire,	to open.
oper-io,	ui,	tum,	ire,	to cover.
farc-io,	farfi,	farsum,	ire,	to mend.
sent-io,	fenfi,	fenfum,	ire,	to feel.
sepel-io,	ivi,	sepultum,	ire,	to bury.
ven-io,	i,	tum,	ire,	to come.

PRAXIS ON THE ABOVE CONJUGATION.

We did assemble. Do ye know? Your father did not know.

conc-io, v. fc-io, v. nesc-io, v.

My friends will excite. He has heard my prayer.

c-io, v. exaud-io, v. orati-o, *onis* f.

I shall obey. We had understood a vowel. Had they

obed-io, v. subaud-io, v. vocal-is, *is* f.

not finished? We would have softened the master.

fin-io, v. len-io, v.

The archbishop has anointed the king. That they

archiepiscop-us, *i* m. lin-io, v. ut, c.

may

may fortify the towns. We would feed. Have we not
mun-io, v. oppid-um, i n. nutr-io, v.
 clothed the poor? When they shall
vest-io, v. paup-er, eris m. quando, adv.
 have served. Let us prop all the walls. Why
serv-io, v. fulc-io, v. pari-es, etis m. quarê, adv.
 did you not draw some water? Open (ye) all the
haur-io, v. aper-io, v.
 doors. They shall have mended the clothes. Shall not
farc-io, v. vest-is, is f.
 his estate feel it. They
ille, &c. pro. patrimoni-um, i. sent-io.
 were burying. They might have come.
sepel-io, v. ven-io, v.

ADDITIONAL PRAXIS ON THE ABOVE CONJUGATION.

Alexander jumps down from the wall, *abl.* and
sal-io, ui or iui, tum, v. de, p. mur-us, i m.
 strikes the enemies' general. We were fortifying our
fer-io, v. host-is, is m. du-x, cis m.
 camp with a strong rampart *abl.* when
castr-a, orum n. firm-us, a, um adj. vall-um, i n.
 the enemies came. Pleasant and
amæn-us, a, um adj.
 voluptuous places had softened
voluptari-us, a, um adj. loc-us, i m. mol-io, iui, itum, v.
 the ferocious minds of the soldiers.
fero-x, cis adj. anim-us, i m. mil-es, itis m.
 You will find nothing greater, or more excellent
inven-io, i, tum, v. nihil, n. excell-ens, entis adj.
 than the nature of man. The daughter asswaged
natur-a, æ f. len-io, iui, itum, v.
 the

the hunger of her mother by the assistance of her milk.

fam-es, *is* f. subsidi-um, *i* n. la-c, *tis* n.

Sinners, obey the laws *dat.* of God, hear
peccat-or, *oris* m. obed-io, *v.* le-x, *gis* f.

his voice. Let us polish our
is, ea, &c. pro. vo-x, *cis* f. poll-io, *ivi, itum* v.

discourses with great care. He buried
ferm-o, *onis* m. cur-a, *æ* f. sepel-io, *v.*

the dead that he might find
mortu-us, *a, um* adj. ut, *c.* reper-io, *i, tum, v.*

an eternal reward. Did they not swallow
ætern-us, *a, um* adj. præmi-um, *i* n. haur-io, *v.*

poison that they might end their lives?
venen-um, *i* n. fin-io, *v.*

I would have slept longer, if the children
dorm-io, *ivi, itum, v.* diutius, *adv.* infan-s, *tis* com.

had not cried. The law of nature decrees
vag-io, *ivi, itum, v.* sanc-io, *ivi, itum, v.*

that parents should nourish their children. Left
nutr-io, *v.* liber-i, *orum* m. ne, *c.*

the oxen should low, he bound
bo-s, *vis, com.* mag-io, *ivi, itum, v.* vinc-io, *vixi, victum, v.*

their mouths. When you shall have perceived
o-s, *ris* n. sent-io, *v.*

the advantage of learning, you will hear your
utilit-as, *atis* f. liter-æ, *arum* f.

teachers more willingly. Let us season
præcept-or, *oris* m. libentiùs, *adv.* cond-io, *ivi, itum, v.*

the gloominess of the times by merriment.
tristiti-a, *æ* f. temp-us, *oris* n. hilarit-as, *atis* f.

Fabius supported the tottering state
Fabi-us, *i* m. fulc-io, *v.* lab-ens, *entis* adj. respublic-a, *æ* f.

by his prudence. They are always (talking foolishly)
prudenti-a, *æ* f. effut-io, *ivi, itum, v.*

but I will stop their prating.
sed, *c.* imped-io, *ivi, itum, v.* garrulit-as, *atis* f.

When

When I shall be hungry and thirsty, I shall find
 esur-*io, iui, itum, v.* sit-*io, iui, itum, v.* inven-*io, i,*
 meat and drink. When the Persian
tum, v. cib-*us, i m.* poti-*o, onis f.* Pers-*a, æ*
 noblemen met in the morning, Darius'
 procer-*es, um m* conven-*io, i, tum, v.* manè, adv.
 horse first neighed. It happened that
 hinn-*io, iui, itum, v.* even-*io, i, tum, v.* ut, c.
 at the same time *abl.* the lions roared
 idem, eadem, &c. pr. le-*o, onis m.* rug-*io, iui, itum, v.*
 and the swine grunted *poten.* Now
 fu-*s, is com.* grunn-*io, iui, itum, v.* nunc, adv.
 he is proud with his honours, *abl.* but
 superb-*io, iui, itum, v.* hon-*or, oris m.* sed, c.
 misfortunes will soon come.
 infortuni-*um, i n.* citò, adv. superven-*io, i, tum, v.*
 Cataline ensnared the minds of
 Catalin-*a, æ m.* irret-*io, iui, itum, v.* anim-*us, i m.*
 the young men by the allurements of pleasures.
 juven-*is, is com.* illecebr-*a, æ f.* volupt-*as, atis f.*
 Do not open your ears to flatterers,
 ne, c. aper-*io, v.* aur-*is, is f.* assentat-*or, oris m.*
 but to truth. God will bestow his
 verit-*as, atis f.* impert-*io, iui, itum*
 mercy upon you *dat.* They surrounded
 misericordi-*a, æ f.* circumven-*io, i, tum, v.*
 the enemy's camp with a multitude of Numidians.
 multitud-*o, inis f.* Numid-*a, æ m.*
 Let the purity of the master preserve
 sanctit-*as, atis f.* doc-*ens, entis adj.* custod-*io, iui, itum, v.*
 the tender minds of his scholars from
 tener, *a, um adj.* discipul-*us, i m.* a, p.
 vice *abl.* When Annibal arrived
 viti-*um, i n.* cum, adv. Annibal-*is m.* adven-*io, i, tum, v.*
 at Saguntum, *acc.* he surrounded it with a rampart
 Sagunt-*um, i n.* sep-*io, iui, itum, v.* vall-*um, i n.*
 and ditch *abl.*
 foss-*a, æ f.*

RECAPITULATORY AND PROMISCUOUS PRAXIS ON THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

We praise	your brother.	Do not you owe
laud-o, <i>avi, atum, are, v.</i>		deb-co, <i>ui, itum, ere, v.</i>
money	to your school-fellows?	The children
pecuni-a, <i>æ f.</i>	condiscipul-us, <i>i m.</i>	
drink	water.	My cousin
bib-o, <i>i, itum, ire, v.</i>		consobrin-us, <i>i m.</i>
knows	his lesson.	I was coming.
sc-io, <i>ivi, itum, ere, v.</i>	lectio, <i>nis f.</i>	ven-io, <i>i, tum, ire, v.</i>
They were calling.	Have they rejected	
voc-o, <i>avi, atum, are, v.</i>	rejic-io, <i>jeci, jectum, ere, v.</i>	
the offer?	We have taught	those men.
conditio, <i>nis, f.</i>	doc-co, <i>ui, tum, ere, v.</i>	
The master	has instructed	the boys.
præceptor, <i>is m.</i>	erud-io, <i>ivi, itum, ire, v.</i>	
Shall not the soldiers	fight	for
	mil-es, <i>itis m.</i>	pugn-o, <i>avi, atum, are, v.</i>
us <i>abl.</i>	The letter-carrier	has given
	tabellari-us, <i>i m.</i>	redd-o, <i>idi, itum, ere, v.</i>
a letter	to me.	My sons, hear
epistol-a, <i>æ f.</i>		your mother.
	aud-io, <i>v.</i>	
Had the servant	prepared	the supper.
serv-us, <i>i m.</i>	par-o, <i>avi, atum, are, v.</i>	cæn-a, <i>æ f.</i>
Those trees	would have grown	in our
arbor, <i>is f.</i>	cresc-o, <i>erevi, cretum, ere, v.</i>	
garden.	That	we may never
hort-us, <i>us m.</i>	ut, <i>c.</i>	nunquam, <i>adv.</i>
fear.	When	I shall have found
tim-co, <i>ui, ere, v.</i>	quando, <i>adv.</i>	inven-io, <i>i, tum, ire, v.</i>
a place	empty	We should be beaten.
loc-us, <i>i m.</i>	inan-is, <i>e adj.</i>	vapul-o, <i>avi, atum, are, v.</i>
The power of honesty	is so great	that
v-is, <i>is f.</i>	honest-as, <i>atis f.</i>	tant-us, <i>a, um adj.</i>
	ut, <i>c.</i>	

we love *pot.* it even in an enemy.
dilig-o, lexi, lectum, ere, v. etiam, adv. host-*is, is* com.
 Did they send messengers to the army *acc.*
mitt-o, isti, issum, ere, v. nunci-*us, i* m. ad, p. exercit-*us, us* m.
 A scholar who does wish to be
discipul-us, i m. cup-*io, iui, itum, ire, v.*
 learned, ought not only to read,
doct-us, a, um adj. deb-*eo, v.* non modò, adv.
 but also to write. Rome
 fed, c. etiam, adv. scrib-*o, scripsi, scriptum, ere, v.*
 formerly abounded with great
quondam, adv. abund-*o, avi, atum, are, v.*
 men *abl.* Pompey departing out of
vir, i m. deced-*o, cessi, cessum, ere, v.* e, p.
 Syria *abl.* wrote to his friends. The famine distressed
urg-eo, urxi,
 the besieging army. Men
ursum, ere, v. obsid-*eo, sedi, sessum, ere, v.*
 did live longer before
viv-o, vixi, victum, ere, v. diutiùs, adv. ante, p.
 the flood *acc.* The dog watches
diluvi-um, i n. can-*is, is* com. vigil-*o, avi, atum, are, v.*
 by night, *abl.* that he may keep safe his
de, p. no-*x, etis* f. ut, c. custod-*io, iui, itum, ire, v.*
 master's house by barking. The spring is the
latr-o, avi, atum, are, v. ver, *is* n.
 time of sowing. O boys, you will get
ser-o, sevi, satum, ere, v. acquir-*o, fivi,*
 new strength by playing.
situm, ere, v. nov-*us, a, um* adj. vir-*es, ium* f. lud-*o, si, sum,*
 The poor to whom you have given
ere, v. pauper, *is* m. d-*o, edi, atum, are, v.*
 money return you thanks.
pecuni-a, æ f. ag-*o, egi, actum, ere, v.* grati-*a, æ* f.
 Let him, who has done a kindness, (hold his tongue;)
d-o, v. benefici-*um, i* n. tac-*eo, v.*

let him relate it who has received it. The
 narr-o, avi, atum, are, v. accipi-o, epi, eptum, ere, v.
 master ordered me to observe
 jub-eo, jussi, jussum, ere, v. observ-o, avi, atum, are, v.
 Pamphilus, that I might know what he
 Pamphil-us, i m. ut, c. sc-io, iui, itum, ire, v.
 was doing *pot.* about marriage *abl.* Observe my son,
 ag-o, v. de, p. nupti-æ, arum f.
 said he to me, that you may know what he is
 dic-o, dixi, dictum, ere, v. sc-io, v.
 doing *pot.* Which of you will dare
 ag-o, v. aud-eo, ausus, sum, ere, v.
 refuse slavery when the
 recus-o, avi, atum, are, v. servit-us, utis f. cum, c.
 enemy shall have ravaged your frontiers and
 vast-o, avi, atum, are, v. fin-is, is com.
 murdered your wives and
 trucid-o, avi, atum, are, v. conju-x, gis f.
 children. When ye shall vow a vow
 liber-i, orum m. vov-eo, i, tum, ere, v. vot-um, i n.
 to the Lord, ye shall not delay to pay
 tard-o, avi, atum, are, v. redd-o, idi, itum,
 it left evil (fall upon) *pot.* you *dat.*
 ere, v. ne, c. mal-um, i n. even-io, i, tum, ire, v.
 The ancient Britons did not sow
 vet-us, eris adj. Britann-us, i m. fer-o, sevi, satum, ere, v.
 corn, but lived on milk and flesh *abl.*
 frument-um, i n. viv-o, v. lac, ris n. car-o, nis f.
 they clothed their bodies with skins *abl.*
 vest-io, iui, itum, ire, v. corp-us, oris n. pell-is, is f.
 and painted themselves with woad, *abl.*
 infic-io, eci, ectum, ere, v. vitr-um, i n.
 which caused a blue colour, by
 effic-io, v. cærule-us, a, um adj. color, is m.
 which they might appear more terrible in
 appar-eo, ui, itum, ere, v. terribil-is, e adj.

battle *abl.* The ancient Germans from
 pugn-*a*, æ f. antiqu-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. German-*us*, *i* m. *a*, *p.*
 infants inured themselves to
 parvul-*us*, *i* m. stud-*eo*, *ui*, *itum*, *ere*, *v.*
 labour and hardiness: they spent their time in
 labor, *is* m. duriti-*a*, æ f. ag-*o*, *v.*
 hunting and the arts of war. After
 venati-*o*, *onis* f. studi-*um*, *i* n. bell-*um*, *i* n. postquam, *c.*
 Nero had killed *pot.* his brother, his wife,
 interfic-*io*, *eci*, *ectum*, *ere*, *v.*
 and his mother, (he set fire to) the city of
 incend-*o*, *i*, *sum*, *ere*, *v.* urb-*s*, *is* f.
 Rome, *acc.* that he might see a representation
 cern-*o*, *crevi*, *cretum*, *ere*, *v.* imag-*o*, *inis* f.
 of Troy on fire. The emperor Titus
 Troj-*a*, æ f. arden-*s*, *tis* adj. imperator, *i* m.
 detested cruelty so much that
 abhorr-*eo*, *ui*, *ere*, *v.* crudelit-*as*, *atis* f. adeo, *adv.* ut, *c.*
 he never would punish any one, nor
 unquam, *adv.* pun-*io*, *v.* nem-*o*, *inis* m. nec, *c.*
 refuse any thing to any one.
 neg-*o*, *avi*, *atum*, *are*, *v.* quisquam, &c. pro. ull-*us*, *a*, *um* adj.
 He said to his friends, no one ought
 dic-*o*, *v.* nem-*o*, *inis* m. deb-*eo*, *v.*
 to go away sorrowful from an emperor,
 deced-*o*, *cessi*, *cessum*, *ere*, *v.* trist-*is*, *e* adj. ab, *p.*
 Lead me to the consul *acc.* and I
 duc-*o*, *xi*, *tum*, *ere*, *v.* ad, *p.*
 will surrender my kingdom to him. When
 ded-*o*, *idi*, *itum*, *ere*, *v.* regn-*um*, *i* n.
 avarice has invaded *pot.* the minds of
 avariti-*a*, æ f. invad-*o*, *si*, *sum*, *ere*, *v.* anim-*us*, *i* m.
 men, it destroys cities, confuses
 mortal-*is*, *is* m. evert-*o*, *i*, *sum*, *ere*, *v.* permisc-*eo*,
 divine with human
vi, *ere*, *v.* divin-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. cum, *p.* human-*us*, *a*, *um* adj.
 things,

- things, *abl.* deprives us from all good and
spoli-o, avi, atum, are, v. *bon-um, i n.*
- (thirsts after) blood and gold *acc.*
sit-io, i, i, itum, i, e, v. *fanguis, nis m.* *aur-um, i n.*
- Make me acquainted with Cæsar's
fac-io, feci, factum, ere, v. *certior, is adj.* *de, p.*
- arrival *abl.* that I may repel the
advent-us, us m. *repell-o, puli, pulsum, ere, v.*
- accusations of my enemies. Timon
criminatio, nis f. *inimic-us, i m.* *Timon, is m.*
- held this discourse to the Athenians *acc.*
hab-eo, v. *oratio, nis f.* *ad, p.* *Atheniens-is, is adj.*
- "In my garden *abl.* grows a fig-tree, on which *abl.*
hort-us, i m. *cresc-o, v.* *fic-us, us f.* *in, p.*
- "many have ended their life
mult-us, a, um adj. *fin-io, i, i, itum, ere, v.* *vit-a, æ f.*
- "by hanging *abl.* I wish to build
suspendi-um, i n. *cup-io, v.* *extru-o, xi, tum, ere, v.*
- "a house in that garden, before I cut down *pot.*
æd-is, is f. *antequam, c.* *excid-o, i, sum, ere, v.*
- "the fig-tree: I warn you that if any one
admon-eo, v. *ut, c. si, c. quis, &c. pro.*
- "think *pot.* of hanging *abl.* he may hasten
cogit-o, avi, are, v. *de, p.* *matur-o, avi, atum,*
- "(as much as possible.)" Take care
are, v. *quam maximè, adv.* *cav-eo, i, cautum, ere, v.*
- lest, by your folly *abl.* you ruin *pot.*
ne, c. *stultiti-a, æ f.* *prostern-o, travi, tratum, ere, v.*
- our country, and subject it to
patri-a, æ f. *addic-o, xi, tum, ere, v.*
- perpetual slavery. Tell (to) the
perpetu-us, a, um adj. *dic-o, xi, tum, ere, v.*
- Roman consul that a Carthaginian
consul, is m. *quòd, c.* *Carthageniens-is, is adj.*
- lady prefers *pot.* an honourable
matron-a, æ f. *antepon-o, sui, situm, ere, v.* *honest-us, a, um adj.*
- death

death to a disgraceful life. False friends
 turp-is, e adj. fals-us, a, um adj.
 frequent your house whilst your
 frequent-o, avi, atum, are, v. dum, c.
 fortune remains fut. pot. prosperous,
 fortun-a, æ f. man-co, fi, sum, ere, v. prosper, a, um adj.
 as soon as they (shall) see fut. pot.
 statim atque, c. vid-eo, visi, visum, ere, v.
 misfortune, they all will fly away.
 advers-us, a, um adj. fortun-a, æ f. evol-o, avi, atum,
 Fortune takes away nothing but
 are, v. erip-io, ui, tum, ere, v. nihil, n. nisi, c.
 what it has given. If you take away fut. pot.
 d-o, edi, atum, are, v. si, c. toll-o, sustuli, sub-
 or at least diminish fut. pot.
 latum, ere, v. aut, c. saltem, adv. minu-o, i, tum, ere, v.
 the love of money, you shall have done
 studi-um, i n. par-io, peper-i, partum, ire, v.
 a very great service to your country. When
 bon-um, i n. patri-a, æ f. cum, c.
 somebody had asked pot. Alexander acc.
 interrog-o, avi, atum, are, v.
 where he kept pot. his treasures, he answered,
 ubi, adv. hab-eo, v. thesaur-us, i m. respond-eo, fi,
 among my friends acc. Alexander
 sum, ere, v. apud, p.
 declared Achilles a most
 pronunci-o, avi, atum, are, v. Achill-is, is m.
 happy man, because whilst he lived pot. he
 fel-ix, icis adj. quòd, adv. dum, c. viv-o, v.
 had found a faithful friend, and after his death acc.
 inven-io, v. fid-us, a, um adj.
 a great panegyrist. Scarcely any one, from his
 præco, nis m. vix, adv. ex, p.
 heart, advises or dissuades
 anim-us, i m. suad-eo, fi, sum, ere, v. aut, c. dissuad-eo, v.
 powerful

powerful men *dat.* but their attendants
 poten-*s, tis* adj. com-*es, itis* com.

(contend among themselves), who shall deceive
 contend-*o, i, sum* or *tum, ere, v.* fall-*o, fefelli, falsum,*

 them, the most agreeably. Therefore they
ere, v. blandissimè, *adv.* itaque, *adv.*

(are ignorant of) their strength, *acc.* they indulge
 ignor-*o, avi, atum, are, v.* vir-*es, ium* f. indulg-*eo,*

 their anger *dat.* they rashly undertake
fi, ere, v. ir-*a, æ* f. temerè, *adv.* fuscip-*io, cepi,*

 wars, and come into the greatest
 ceptum, *ere, v.* bell-*um, i* n. ven-*io, v.*

dangers *acc.* Let us establish this the first
 pericul-*um, i* n. sanc-*io, iui, itum, ire, v.*

law in friendship, that we neither ask *pot.*
 le-*x, gis* f. amicitia-*a, æ* f. neque, *c.* rog-*o, avi,*

 base things, nor perform them,
atum, are, v. turp-*is, e* adj. nec, *c.* fac-*io, v.*

when our friends ask. If you esteem *fut. pot.*
cum, c. put-*o, avi, atum, are, v.*

your friend faithful you will make him so. If a
 fidel-*is, e* adj. fac-*io, v.*

man shall have begotten an obstinate
 gign-*o, genui, genitum, ere, v.* contuma-*x, cis* adj.

son, who shall refuse *pot.* to obey his
 recus-*o, avi, &c. v.* obed-*io, iui, ire, v.*

parents, *dat.* the people of the city
 paren-*s, tis* com. popul-*us, i* m. civit-*as, atis* f.

shall overwhelm him with stones. He obeys
 obru-*o, i, tum, ere, v.* lapi-*s, dis* m. par-*eo, ui,*

 the divine laws *dat.* who rises up
itum, ere, v. divin-*us, a, um* adj. confurg-*o,*

 before a grey
 rexi, *rectum, ere, v.* coram, *p.* can-*us, a, um* adj.

head and honours the person
 cap-*ut, itis* n. honor-*o, avi, atum, are, v.* person-*a, æ* f.

of

philosophy

philosophy, which will pluck out
 philosophi-a, æ f. extrah-o, xi, elum, ere, v.
 your vices by the roots, prepare
 viti-um, i n. radicitùs, adv. præpar-o, avi, atum,
 your minds for the seeds acc. of virtue, and
 are, v. ad, p. sem-en, inis n.
 produce most plentiful fruits. Whoever
 d-o, edi, atum, are, v. uber, adj.
 consecrates his mind to virtue, (looks upon)
 consecr-o, avi, atum, are, v. spect-o, avi,
 himself as a social animal, acc.
 atum, are, v. ut, adv. social-is, e adj. animal, is n.
 lives always as if in public,
 viv-o, v. semper, adv. tanquam, adv. public-um, i n.
 and practises justice: he will judge
 col-o, ui, cultum, ere, v. iustiti-a, æ f. judic-o,
 those men most miserable who
 avi, atum, are, v. miser, a, um adj.
 serve their gluttony and pleasure.
 serv-io, i, itum, ire, v. gluv-i-es, ei f. volupt-as, atis f.
 If you give pot. alms
 si, c. tribu-o, i, tum, ere, v. eleemosin-a, æ f.
 abundantly, you shall amass a good
 abundanter, adv. recond-o, i, itum, ere, v.
 treasure to yourself against the day acc. of neces-
 thesaur-us, i m. in, p. neces-
 sity.
 sit-as, atis f.

CONJUGATIONS OF THE PASSIVE VERBS.

FORMATION OF THE TENSES IN THE PASSIVE VOICE.

ALL active verbs may become passive, and therefore the latter are formed from the active voice.

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

In the passive verbs, three tenses are formed from the same tenses in the active, viz. the *present*, the *preterimperfect*, and the *future*.

The *present passive* is formed from the present active, by adding *r*: as *amo*, *amor*; *moneo*, *moneor*; *lego*, *legor*; *audio*, *audior*.

The *preterimperfect passive* is formed from the preterimperfect active, by changing *m* into *r*; as *amabam*, *amabar*; *monebam*, *monebar*; *legebam*, *legebar*; *audiebam*, *audiebar*.

The *future passive* is formed from the future active by adding *r* in the verbs of the first and second conjugation: as *amabo*, *amabor*; *docebo*, *docebor*: and in the two others by changing *m* into *r*; as *legam*, *legar*; *audiam*, *audiar*.

IMPERATIVE.

The *imperative*, in all the *passive* verbs, is the same as the present of the infinitive active: as infinitive, *amare*, *docere*, &c. imperative passive *amare*, *docere*, &c.

TENSES OF THE POTENTIAL MOOD.

The *present* and *preterimperfect passive* are formed from the same tenses in the active, by changing *m* into *r*; as *amem*, *amer*; *amarem*, *amarer*; *legam*, *legar*; *legerem*, *legerer*; &c.

The *preterperfect* and *preterpluperfect*, in all the moods, and the *future past* in the potential, are formed with the participle present passive, declined with the verb *sum*.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Primitive tenses.

am-or, am-atus sum *or* fui, am-ari, to be loved.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present tense.

Singular.

am-or,	I am loved.
aris <i>or</i> are,	thou art loved.
atur,	he is loved.

Plural.

am-amur,	we are loved.
amini,	you are loved.
antur,	they are loved.

Preter-

Preterimperfect.

Singular.

am-abar, I was loved.
abaris *or* abare
abatur.

Plural.

am-abamur, we were loved.
abamini
abantur.

Preterperfect.

Singular.

am-atus fui *or* fui, I was loved, *or* have been loved.
es *or* fuisti
est *or* fuit.

Plural.

am-ati sumus *or* fuimus, we were loved *or* have been
estis *or* fuistis loved.
sunt *or* fuerunt *or* fuere.

Preterpluperfect.

Singular.

amat-us eram *or* fueram, I had been loved.
eras *or* fueras
erat *or* fuerat.

Plural.

am-ati eramus *or* fueramus, we had been loved.
eratis *or* fueratis
erant *or* fuerant.

Future.

Future.

Singular.

am-abor, I shall *or* will be loved.
 aberis *or* abere
 abitur.

Plural.

am-abimur, we shall *or* will be loved.
 abimini
 abuntur.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.

am-are *or* ator, be thou loved.
 etur *or* ator, let him be loved.

Plural.

am-emur, let us be loved.
 amini, be ye loved.
 entur *or* antor, let them be loved.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present tense.

Singular.

am-er, I may, can, *or* should be loved.
 eris *or* ere
 etur.

Plural.

am-emur, we may, can, *or* should be loved.
 emini
 entur.

Preter-

Preterimperfect.

Singular.

am-arer, I were loved, *or* would, could, *or* might
areris *or* arere be loved.
aretur.

Plural.

am-aremur, we were, *or* would, could, *or* might be
aremini loved,
arentur.

Preterperfect.

Singular.

am-atus fim *or* fuerim, I may have been loved.
fis *or* fueris
fit *or* fuerit.

Plural.

am-ati fimus *or* fuerimus, we may have been loved.
fitis *or* fueritis
fint *or* fuerint.

Preterpluperfect.

Singular.

am-atus essem *or* fuisset, I would, should, *or* might
esses *or* fuisset have been loved.
esset *or* fuisset.

Plural.

am-ati essemus *or* fuissetus, we would, should, *or* might
essetis *or* fuissetis have been loved.
essent *or* fuissent.

Future

Future past.

Singular.

am-atus ero *or* fuero, I shall *or* will have been loved.
eris *or* fueris
erit *or* fuerit.

Plural.

am-ati erimus *or* fuerimus, we shall *or* will have been
eritis *or* fueritis loved.
erint *or* fuerint.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and preterimperfect.

am-ari, to be loved.

Preterperfect and preterpluperfect.

am-atum esse *or* fuisse, to have been loved.

Future.

am-atum iri, that—shall *or* will be loved,

Future past.

am-andum fuisse, that—shall *or* will have been loved.

Supine.

am-atu, to be loved.

Participles.

Present.

am-at-us, a, um, loved.

Future.

am-and-us, a, um, to be loved.

Conjugate as above

laud-or, I am praised. verber-or, I am beaten.
vituper-or, I am blamed. voc-or, I am called.

N. B. All the compound tenses of the passive verbs, both in the singular and plural, are declined as *bon-us, a, um*, and agree, like adjectives, in gender, number, and case with their nominatives: as

frater amatus est, the brother has been loved.
soror amata est, the sister has been loved.
fratres amati sunt, the brothers have been loved.
sorores amatae sunt, the sisters have been loved, &c.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Primitive tenses.

mon-eor, mon-itus sum *or* fui, mon-eri, to be advised.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present tense.

Singular.

mon-eor, I am advised.
eris *or* ere
etur.

Plural.

mon-emur, we are advised.
emini
entur.

Pretet.

Preterimperfect.

Singular.

mon-ebar, I was advised.

ebaris *or* ebare

ebatur.

Plural.

mon-ebamur, we were advised.

ebamini

ebantur.

Preterperfect.

Singular.

mon-itus sum *or* fui, I was *or* have been advised.

es *or* fuisti

est or fuit.

Plural.

mon-iti fumus *or* fuimus, we were *or* have been ad-

estis or fuistis

vifed.

sunt *or* fuerunt.

Preterpluperfect.

Singular.

mon-itus eram *or* fueram, I had been advised.

eras *or* fueras

erat *or* fuerat.

Plural.

mon-iti eramus or fueramus, we had been advised.

eratis *or* fueratis

erant *or* fuerant.

T

Future.

Future.

Singular.

mon-ebor, I shall *or* will be advised.
eberis *or* ebere
ebitur.

Plural.

mon-ebimur, we shall *or* will be advised.
ebimini
ebuntur.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.

mon-ere *or* etor, be thou advised.
eatur *or* etor, let him be advised.

Plural.

mon-eamur, let us be advised.
emini, be ye advised.
eantur *or* entor, let them be advised.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present.

Singular.

mon-ear, I may, can, *or* should be advised.
earis *or* eare
eatur.

Plural.

mon-eamur, we may, can, *or* should be advised.
eamini
eantur.

Preter-

Preterimperfect.

Singular.

mon-erer, I were, *or* would, could, *or* might be advised,
ereris *or* erere
eretur.

Plural.

mon-eremur, we were, *or* would, could, *or* might be advised,
eremini
erentur.

Preterperfect.

Singular.

mon-itus sim *or* fuerim, I may have been advised.
sis *or* fueris
sit *or* fuerit.

Plural.

mon-iti simus *or* fuerimus, we may have been advised.
sitis *or* fueritis
sint *or* fuerint.

Preterpluperfect.

Singular.

mon-itus essem *or* fuisset, I would, should, *or* might
esses *or* fuissetes have been advised.
esset *or* fuisset.

Plural.

mon-iti essemus *or* fuissetemus, we would, should, *or* might
essetis *or* fuissetetis have been advised.
essent *or* fuissent.

Future past.

Singular.

mon-itus ero *or* fuero, I shall *or* will have been advised.
eris *or* fueris
erit *or* fuerit.

Plural.

mon-iti erimus *or* fuerimus, we shall *or* will have been advised.
eritis *or* fueritis
erint *or* fuerint.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect.

mon-eri, to be advised.

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect.

mon-itum esse *or* fuisse, to have been advised.

Future.

mon-itum iri, that—shall *or* will be advised.

Future past.

mon-endum fuisse, that—shall *or* will have been advised.

Supine.

mon-itu, to be advised.

Participles.

Present.

mon-it-us, a, um, advised.

Future.

mon-end-us, a, um, to be advised.

Conjugate as above,

doc-eor, doctus sum *or* fui, eri, to be taught.
 impl-eor, impletus sum *or* fui, eri, to be filled.
 ten-eor, tentus sum *or* fui, eri, to be holden.
 terr-eor, territus sum *or* fui, eri, to be affrighted.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Primitive tenses.

leg-or, lect-us sum *or* fui, legi, to be read.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Singular.

leg-or, I am read.
 eris *or* ere
 itur.

Plural.

leg-imur, we are read.
 imini
 *untur.

Imperfect.

Singular.

leg-*ebar, I was read.
 *ebaris *or* ebare
 *ebatur.

Plural.

* Verbs of this conjugation, whose present tense of the indicative mood ends in *ior*, preserve the *i* whenever this mark is placed.

Plural.

leg-*ebamur, we were read.
 *ebamini
 *ebantur.

Preterperfect.

Singular.

lect-us sum or fui, I was or have been read.
 es or fuisti
 est or fuit.

Plural.

lect-i sumus or fuimus, we were or have been read.
 estis or fuistis
 sunt or fuerunt.

Preterpluperfect.

Singular.

lect-us eram or fueram, I had been read.
 eras or fueras
 erat or fuerat.

Plural.

lect-i eramus or fueramus, we had been read.
 eratis or fueratis
 erant or fuerant.

Future.

Singular.

leg-*er, I shall or will be read.
 *eris or ere
 *etur.

Plural.

Plural.

leg-*emur, we shall or will be read.
 *emini
 *entur.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.

leg-ere or itor, be thou read.
 atur or itor, let him be read.

Plural.

leg-*amur, let us be read.
 imini, be ye read.
 *antur or *untor, let them be read.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present.

Singular.

leg-*ar, I may, can, or should be read.
 *aris or are
 *atur.

Plural.

leg-*amur, we may, can, or should be read.
 *amini
 *antur.

Preterimperfect.

Singular.

leg-erer, I were read, or would, could, or might be
 ereris or erere read.
 eretur.

Plural.

Plural.

leg-eremur, we were read, *or* would, could, *or* might
eremini be read.
erentur.

Preterperfect.

Singular.

lect-us erim *or* fuerim, I may have been read.
eris *or* fueris
erit *or* fuerit.

Plural.

lect-i erimus *or* fuerimus, we may have been read.
eritis *or* fueritis
erint *or* fuerint.

Preterpluperfect.

Singular.

lect-us essem *or* fuissem, I would, should, *or* might
esses *or* fuisses have been read.
esset *or* fuisset.

Plural.

lect-i essemus *or* fuissemus, we would, should, *or* might
essetis *or* fuissetis have been read.
essent *or* fuissent.

Future past.

Singular.

lect-us ero *or* fuero, I shall *or* will have been read.
eris *or* fueris
erit *or* fuerit.

Plural.

Plural.

lect-i erimus *or* fuerimus, we shall *or* will have been
 eritis *or* fueritis read.
 erint *or* fuerint.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and preterimperfect.

leg-i, to be read.

Preterperfect and preterpluperfect.

lect-um esse *or* fuisse, to have been read.

Future.

lect-um iri, that—shall *or* will be read.

Future past.

leg-*endum fuisse, that—shall *or* will have been read.

Supine.

lect-u, to be read.

Participles.

Present.

lect-us, a, um, read.

Future.

leg-*endus, a, um, to be read.

Conjugate as above,

accipi-or, accept-us sum *or* fui, accipi, to be received.

cognosc-or, cognit-us sum *or* fui, cognosci, to be known

scrib-or, script-us sum *or* fui, scribi, to be written.

vinc-or, vict-us sum *or* fui, vinci, to be conquered

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Primitive tenses.

aud-ior, audit-us sum *or* fui, aud-iri, to be heard.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present tense.

Singular.

aud-ior, I am heard.
iris *or* ire
itur.

Plural.

aud-imur, we are heard.
imini
iuntur.

Preterimperfect.

Singular.

aud-iebar, I was heard.
iebaris *or* iebare
iebatur.

Plural.

aud-iebamur, we were heard.
iebamini
iebantur.

Preterperfect.

Singular.

audit-us sum *or* fui, I was *or* have been heard.
es *or* fuisti
est *or* fuit.

Plural.

audit-i sumus *or* fuimus, we were *or* have been heard.
estis *or* fuistis
sunt *or* fuerunt.

Preterpluperfect.

Singular.

audit-us eram *or* fueram, I had been heard.
eras *or* fueras
erat *or* fuerat.

Plural.

audit-i eramus *or* fueramus, we had been heard.
eratis *or* fueratis
erant *or* fuerant.

Future.

Singular.

aud-iar, I shall *or* will be heard.
ieris *or* iere
ietur.

Plural.

aud-iemur, we shall *or* will be heard.
iemini
ientur.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.

aud-ire *or* itor, be thou heard.
iatur *or* itor, let him be heard.

Plural.

aud-iamur, let us be heard.
imini *or* iminor, be ye heard.
iantur *or* iuntor, let them be heard.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present tense.

Singular.

aud-iar, I may, can, *or* should be heard.
iaris *or* iare
iatur.

Plural.

aud-iamur, we may, can, *or* should be heard.
iamini
iantur.

Preterimperfect.

Singular.

aud-irer, I were, *or* would, could, *or* might be heard.
ireris *or* irere
iretur.

Plural.

aud-iremur, we were, *or* would, could, *or* might be
iremini heard.
irentur.

Preterperfect.

Singular.

audit-us sim *or* fuerim, I may have been heard.
sis *or* fueris
fit *or* fuerit.

Plural.

Plural.

audit-i simus *or* fuerimus, we may have been heard.
fitis *or* fueritis
sint *or* fuerint.

Preterpluperfect.

Singular.

audit-us essem *or* fuisset, I would, should, *or* might
esses *or* fuisses have been heard.
esset *or* fuisset.

Plural.

audit-i essemus *or* fuisset, we would, should, *or*
essetis *or* fuissetis might be heard.
essent *or* fuissent.

Future past.

Singular.

audit-us ero *or* fuero, I shall *or* will have been heard.
eris *or* fueris
erit *or* fuerit.

Plural.

audit-i erimus *or* fuerimus, we shall *or* will have been
eritis *or* fueritis heard.
erint *or* fuerint.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and preterimperfect.

aud-iri, to be heard.

Preterperfect and preterpluperfect.

audit-um esse *or* fuisse, to have been heard.

Future.

Future.

audit-um iri, that—shall *or* will have been heard.

Future past.

aud iendum fuisse, that—shall *or* will have been heard.

Supine.

audit-u, to be heard.

Participles.

Present.

audit-us, a, um, heard.

Future.

aud-iend-us, a, um, to be heard.

Conjugate as above,

aper-ior, apert-us sum *or* fui, aperiri, to be opened.
 mun-ior, munit-us sum *or* fui, muniri, to be fortified.
 pun-ior, punit-us sum *or* fui, puniri, to be punished.
 sepel-ior, sepult-us sum *or* fui, sepeliri, to be buried.

GOVERNMENT OF THE PASSIVE VERBS.

All passive verbs, and those which have the passive signification, generally require the *person* by whom or from whom the action is done to be put in the *ablative* with the preposition *a* or *ab*; as *amor, amabar, amabor, a patre meo*, I am loved, I was loved, I shall be loved by my father; *hic liber legitur a puero*, this book is read by the child; *audiebaris, auditus fueris a discipulis tuis*, you were heard, you may have been heard by your scholars; &c.

VERBS DEPONENT.

VERBS deponent are conjugated in Latin as *passive* verbs and in English like *active*. There are verbs deponent of each of the four passive conjugations. The difference between a deponent and a passive verb is in the infinitive mood only, when their signification becomes sometimes active and sometimes passive. Therefore it is hoped the two following will suffice to conjugate all the others by.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Primitive tenses.

imit-or, imitat-us sum *or* fui, imit-ari, to imitate.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Singular.

imit-or, I imitate, am imitating, *or* do imitate.
 aris *or* are
 atur.

Plural.

imit-amur, we imitate, are imitating, *or* do imitate.
 amini
 antur.

Preter-

Preterimperfect.

Singular.

imit-abar, I did imitate *or* was imitating.
abaris *or* abare
abatur.

Plural.

imit-abamur, we did imitate *or* were imitating.
abamini
abantur.

Preterperfect.

Singular.

imitat-us sum *or* fui, I imitated, have imitated, *or* did
es *or* fuisti imitate.
est *or* fuit.

Plural.

imitat-i sumus *or* fuimus
estis *or* fuistis
sunt *or* fuerunt.

Preterpluperfect.

Singular.

imitat-us eram *or* fueram, I had imitated.
eras *or* fueras
erat *or* fuerat.

Plural.

imitat-i eramus *or* fueramus, we had imitated.
eratis *or* fueratis
erant *or* fuerant.

Future.

Future.

Singular.

imit-abor, I shall *or* will imitate.
 aberis *or* abere
 abitur.

Plural.

imit-abimur, we shall *or* will imitate.
 abimini
 abuntur.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.

imit-are *or* ator, imitate.
 etur *or* ator, let him imitate.

Plural.

imit-emur, let us imitate.
 amini, imitate.
 entur *or* antor, let them imitate.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

· Present tense.

Singular.

imit-er, I may, can, *or* should imitate.
 eris *or* ere
 etur.

Plural.

imit-emur, we may, can, *or* should imitate.
 emini
 entur.

Preterimperfect.

Singular.

imit-arer, I would, could, or might imitate.
areris or arere
aretur.

Plural.

imit-aremur, we would, could, or might imitate.
aremini
arentur.

Preterperfect.

Singular.

imitat-us sim or fuerim, I may have imitated.
sis or fueris
sit or fuerit.

Plural.

imitat-i simus or fuerimus, we may have imitated.
sitis or fueritis
sint or fuerint.

Preterpluperfect.

Singular.

imitat-us essem or fuisset, I would, should, or might
esses or fuisses have imitated.
esset or fuisset.

Plural.

imitat-i essemus or fuissetus, we would, should, or
essetis or fuissetis might have imitated.
essent or fuissent.

Future

Future past.

Singular.

imitat-us ero *or* fuero, I shall *or* will have imitated.
eris *or* fueris
erit *or* fuerit.

Plural.

imitat-i erimus *or* fuerimus, we shall *or* will have imi-
eritis *or* fueritis tated.
erint *or* fuerint.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and preterimperfect.

imit-ari, to imitate.

Preterperfect and preterpluperfect.

imitat-um esse *or* fuisse, to have imitated.

Future active.

imitat-urum esse, that—shall *or* will imitate.

Future past active.

imitat-urum fuisse, that—shall *or* will have imitated.

Future passive.

imitat-um iri, that—shall *or* will be imitated.

Future past passive.

imit-andum fuisse, that—shall *or* will have been imi-
tated.

Gerunds.

imit-andi,	of imitating.
ando,	in <i>or</i> by imitating.
andum,	to imitate.

X 2

Supines.

(156)

Supines.

Active.

imitat-um, to imitate.

Passive.

imitat-u, to be imitated.

Participles.

Present.

imit-ans, antis, imitating.

Past.

imitat-us, a, um, having imitated.

Future active.

imitat-urus, a, um, to imitate.

Future passive.

imit-andus, a, um, to be imitated.

Conjugate as above,

mir-or, atus sum *or* fui, mirari, to admire.

hort-or, atus tum *or* fui, hortari, to exhort, &c.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Primitive tenses.

loqu-or, locut-us sum *or* fui, loqui, to speak.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present tense.

Singular.

loqu-or, I speak, do speak, *or* am speaking.

eris *or* ere

itur.

Plural.

Plural.

loqu-imur, we speak, do speak, *or* are speaking.
imini
untur.

Preterimperfect.

Singular.

loqu-ebam, I did speak *or* was speaking.
ebaris *or* ebare
ebatur.

Plural.

loqu-ebamur, we did speak *or* were speaking.
ebamini
ebantur.

Preterperfect.

Singular.

locut-us sum *or* fui, I spoke, did speak, *or* have spoken, &c.

Plural.

locut-i fumus *or* fuimus, &c.

Preterpluperfect.

Singular.

locut-us eram *or* fueram, I had spoken, &c.

Plural.

locut-i eramus *or* fueramus, &c.

Future.

Singular.

loqu-ar, I shall *or* will speak.
eris *or* ere
etur.

Plural.

loqu-emur, we shall or will speak.
emini
entur.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.

loqu-ere or itor, speak.
atur or itor, let him speak.

Plural.

loqu-amur, let us speak.
imini, speak.
antur or untor, let them speak.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present.

Singular.

loqu-ar, I may, can, or should speak.
aris or are
atur.

Plural.

loqu-amur, we may, can, or should speak.
amini
antur.

Preterimperfect.

Singular.

loqu-erer, I would, should, or might speak.
ereris or erere
eretur.

Plural.

loqu-eremur, we would, should, or might speak.
eremini
erentur.

Preterperfect.

Singular.

locut-us sim *or* fuerim, I may have spoken, &c.

Plural.

locut-i simus *or* fuerimus, &c.

Preterpluperfect.

Singular.

locut-us essem *or* fuissem, I would, should, *or* might
have spoken, &c.

Plural.

locut-i essemus *or* fuissemus, &c.

Future past.

Singular.

locut-us ero *or* fuero, I shall *or* will have spoken, &c.

Plural.

locut-i erimus *or* fuerimus, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect.

loqu-i, to speak.

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect.

locut-um esse *or* fuisse, to have spoken.

Future active.

locut-urum esse, that—shall *or* will speak.

Future past active.

locut-urum fuisse, that—shall *or* will speak.

Future passive.

locut um iri, that—shall *or* will be spoken.

Future

Future past passive.

loqu-endum fuisse, that—shall *or* will have been spoken.

Gerunds.

loqu-endi,	of speaking.
endo,	in <i>or</i> by speaking.
endum,	to speak.

Supines.

Active.

locut-um, to speak.

Passive.

locut-u, to be spoken.

Participles.

Present.

loqu-ens entis, speaking.

Past.

locut-us, a, um, having spoken.

Future active.

locut-urus, a, um, to speak.

Future passive.

loqu-end-us, a, um, to be spoken.

Conjugate as above,

sequ-or,	secut-us sum <i>or</i> fui,	sequi,	to follow.
ut-or,	ut-us sum <i>or</i> fui,	uti,	to use.

GOVERNMENT OF THE VERBS DEPONENT.

There are some verbs deponent which govern the *accusative*: as *imitor patrem*, I imitate my father; there are others which govern the *genitive*: as *obliviscor injuriarum*, I forget injuries. Some govern the *dative*: as *blanditur nutrici*, he caresses the nurse. And lastly, others govern the *ablative*: as *utitur lacte*, he uses milk. The cases will, therefore, be put after the substantives in the following exercises, whenever the verbs govern any other case but the accusative.

 VERBS NEUTER.

THE verbs neuter are conjugated like the active, but they have no passive: as *noceo*, I hurt; *studeo*, I study; *faveo*, I favour. Most of the neuter verbs govern the dative: as *studeo grammaticæ*, I study the grammar; *faves nobilitati*, you favour the nobility, &c.

N. B. When a verb, which, in English, is in the *passive voice*, is expressed by a *deponent* or *neuter* verb, the phrase must be turned from the passive into the active, by putting in the *nominative*, the noun which was in the *ablative*, and in the *accusative* or any other case governed by the verb, that which was in the *nominative*: as *pater hortatur me*, I am exhorted by my father, i. e. my father exhorts me; *virī boni favent innocentibus*, the innocent are favoured by good people, i. e. the good people favour the innocent.

Y

But

But if, with a verb which can be turned by the passive, there were another in the sentence which did not admit of that voice, both must be turned from the passive into the active: as *omnes eum laudant & mirantur*, he is praised and admired by all, i. e. all admire and praise him.

PROMISCUOUS PRAXIS ON THE ACTIVE, PASSIVE,
DEPONENT, AND NEUTER VERBS.

Your brother is praised by some,
 laud-or, *atus, sum, ari* hic, hæc, &c. p.
 but he is blamed by others. The
 fed, c. culp-or, *atus, sum ari.* ali-us, *a, um* adj.
 world was created by God. Eve,
 mund-us, *i m.* cre-or, *atus, sum ari.* Ev-a, æ f.
 the first woman, was seduced by the
 muli-er, *is f.* seduc-or, *tus, sum, i.*
 serpent. I have seen your
 serpen-s, *tis m.* vid-co, *visi, visum, ere.*
 house, and have admired its
 dom-us, *us f.* mir-or, *atus sum, ari.* ille, &c.
 beauty. Romulus by whom Rome
 pulchritud-o, *inis f.* Romul-us, *i m.* Rom-a, æ f.
 was built. My sister has recovered
 cond-or, *itus sum, i.* apisc-or, *aptus sum, i.*
 he books which *abl.* she used. This
 ut-or, *usus sum, i.* ill-e, *a, &c. pro.*
 word is found in Phædrus *acc.*
 vo-x, *cis f.* inveni-or, *inventus sum, i.* apud, p. Phædr-us, *i m.*
 The shares being made, *abl.* the lion spoke thus.
 par-s, *tis f.* fact-us, *a, um* par. leo, *nis m.* sic, adv.
 Your friend will set out in three
 proficisc-or, *profectus sum, i.* post, p.
 days.

days. *acc.* Two nouns substantive,
 di-es, *ei f.* nom-en, *inis n.* substantiv-us, *a, um adj.*
 which signify the same thing,
 signific-o, *avi, atum, are.* idem, eadem, &c.-
 are put in the same case *abl.* I always
 pon-or, *positus sum, i.* idem, &c. cas-us, *us m.* semper, *adv.*
 shall remember your advices.
 record-or, *atus sum, ari.* consili-um, *i n.*
 Pleasure flatters the senses, *dat.*
 volupt-as, *atis f.* bland-ior, *itus sum, iri.* sens us, *us m.*
 but virtue heals the soul *dat.* All these
 med-eor, *eri.* anim-us, *i m.* iste, &c. *pro.*
 boys have been taught grammar *acc.*
 doc-eor, *tus sum, eri.* grammatic-a, *a f.*
 The good shall enjoy an everlasting
 fru-or, *itus sum, i.* sempitern-us, *a, um adj.*
 life *abl.* A good name is sought and
 æv-um, *i n.* fam-a, *a f.* quær-or, *quæsitus sum i.*
 a beautiful woman is loved.
 pulch-er, *ra, rum adj.* fæmin-a, *a f.* am-or, *atus sum, ari.*
 A diligent scholar always will get
 assequ-or, *assecutus sum, i.*
 useful knowledge. Bitter
 util-is, *e adj.* cognitio, *nis f.* acerb-us, *a, um adj.*
 enemies often deserve better
 inimic-us, *i m.* sæpe, *adv.* mer-eor, *itus sum, eri.* melius, *adv.*
 than pleasant friends. Memory always would
 dulc-is, *e adj.* Memori-a, *a f.*
 fail if it were not to be exercised *pot.*
 minu-or, *tus sum, i.* si exerc eor, *itus sum, eri.*
 The king's army has been preserved.
 exercit-us, *us m.* conserv-or, *atus sum, ari.*
 The army of Cataline was made up
 Catalin-a, *a m.* collig-or, *collectus sum, i.*
 of desperate old men *abl.* The enemies
 ex, *p.* desperat-us, *a, um adj.* sen-ex, *is adj.*

(lay wait for) our convoys *dat.* A wise man
 infidi-or, *atus sum, ari.* com meat-us, *us.* sapi-ens, *entis adj.*
 is not overcome by grief *abl.* Your
 vinc-or, *vi ctus sum, i.* dolor, *is m.*
 letters never have been delivered
 liter-æ, *arum f.* numquam, *adv.* redd-or, *itus sum, i.*
 to me in time *abl.* Charity is exercised
 temp-us, *oris n.* Carit-as, *atis f.*
 towards men *acc.* We always have been forbidden
 erga, *p.* prohib-eor, *itus sum, eri.*
 to do injury by the laws of nature.
 fac-io, *ere.* injuri-a, *æ f.* le-x, *gis f.* natur-a, *æ f.*
 The king commanded the money to be
 jub-eo, *jussi, jussum, ere.* pecuni-a, *æ f.*
 scattered in the way. The knowledge
 sparg-or, *sparsus sum, i.* vi-a, *æ f.* cognitio, *nis f.*
 which is obtained by study is esteemed.
 quær-or studi-um, *i n.* estim-or, *atus sum, ari.*
 We, who have been invited, will come.
 invit-or, *atus sum, ari.* ven-io, *i, tum, ire.*
 We will wait that we may know.
 opper-ior, *pertus sum, iri.* ut, *c.* sc-io, *ivi, itum, ire.*
 what your brother has done. A good man
 fac-io, *feci, tum, ere.* vir, *i m.*
 easily forgets injuries *gen.*
 facile, *adv.* oblivisc-or, *oblitus sum, i.*
 Wicked men always have flattered
 scelerat-us, *a, um adj.* adul-or, *atus sum, ari.*
 the rich *dat.* Jason obtained the
 div-es, *itis adj.* Jason, *is m.* pot-ior, *itus sum, iri.*
 golden fleece *abl.* No one
 aure-us, *a, um adj.* vell-us, *eris n.* Nem-o, *inis m.*
 enjoys the greatest pleasures *abl.* of soul
 perfru-or, *itus sum, i.* anim-us, *i m.*
 and body in this life. Stars
 corp-us, *oris n.* Stell-a, *æ f.*
 seem

seem small luminaries *nom.*
vid-eor, visus sum, eri. parv-us, a, um adj. lum-en, inis, n.
 but they are great bodies. Did he not beseech

you by the memory *acc.* of his father? They promised
per, p. pollic-eor,

a great multitude for that war *acc.*
itus sum, eri. multitud-o, inis f. ad, p.

in the common assembly *abl.* of the Belgæ.

commun-is, e adj. confili-um, i n. Belg-æ, arum m.

Endeavour to assault the
con-or, atus sum, ari. oppugn-o, avi, atum, are.

town. All your friends were talking

oppid-um, i n. loqu-or, locutus sum, i.

in common of your wickedness. *abl.*

commun-is, e adj. de, p. nequiti-a, æ f.

Some young men have followed
nonnull-us, a, um adj. adolesc-ens, entis m. sequ-or,

a right course of life.
secutus sum, i. rect-us, a, um adj. vi-a, æ f.

How many more men have been cut off

quanto, adv. plu-s, ris adj. del-eor, etus

by the violence of men than by all other
sum, eri. impet-us, us m.

calamities? Either riches or pleasures have
calamit-as, atis f. aut, c. op-is, is f. aut, c.

always been coveted. Cesar would have
expet-or, itus sum, i.

departed with two legions *abl.* to
proficisc-or, profectus sum, i. legio, nis f. ad, p.

pursue *gerund.* the enemies. No friend is present
persequ-or, cutus sum, i. host-is, is m. adsum, v.

who may comfort *pot.* me. What shall I do that
sol-or, atus sum, ari. fac-io. ut, c.

I may be admitted into the friendship *acc.*
recip-i-or, ceptus sum, i. in, p. amicitia, æ f.

of

of the senate and of the Roman people. The
senat-us, us m. *popul-us, i m.*
 same thing is shameful to be spoken *sup.*
idem, eadem, &c. *turp-is, e adj.* *dic-or, tus sum, i.*
 which is mean to be done *sup.* All these
foed-us, a, um *f-io, ætus sum, ieri.*
 houses were built by a carpenter. He
ædific-or, atus sum, ari. *fab-er, ri m.*
 kept with him, *acc.* for the sake of
retin-co, ui, entum, ere. *apud, p. fui,* *pro causâ*
 defending the town, the two cohorts
tu-eor, itus sum, eri. *oppid-um, i n.* *cohor-s, tis f.*
 which were called *colonicæ*, and which
appell-or, atus sum, ari.
 had come thither by chance. You, who followed
ven-io. *eð, adv.* *casu.* *sequ-or, secutus*
sum, i. *tamdiù, adv.* *viçt-us, a, um adj.*
 enemy? We ought to love
deb-co, ui, itum, ere. *dilig-o, lexi, lectum, ere.*
 our country for which *dat.* we were born.
patri-a, æ f. *nasç-or, natus sum, i.*
 If I had followed your advice I should be more
fi, c. *consili-um, i n.*
 learned than my brother. The rain, by
doçt-us, a, um adj. *pluvi-a, æ f.*
 which the earth is watered, falls
terr-a, æ f. *rig-or, atus sum, ari.* *cad-o, cecidi,*
 from the clouds. The old age of
casum, ere. *a, p.* *nub-es, is f.* *senect-us, utis f.*
 those men who are respected and loved
col-or, cultus sum, i. *dilig-or, lectus*
 by youth is pleasant to them.
sum, i. *juvent-us, utis f.* *jucund-us, a, um adj.*
 You and your brother deserve a reward,
mer-eor, itus sum, eri. *præmi-um, i n.*
 but

but John and his cousin will always
 fed, c. Joann-es, is consobrin-us, i m.
 deserve stripes. There are certain
 verber, is n. quidam, &c. pro.
 duties to be performed (*part. in dus*) towards those
 offici-um, i. ferv-or, atus sum, ari. erga, p.
 from whom you may have received an
 a, p. accip-io, cepi, ceptum, ere.
 injury. This is the art by which we may
 injuri-a, æ f. ar-s, tis f. per, p.
 obtain all the virtues. If any
 assequ-or, secutus sum, i. quisque, &c. pro.
 damage gen. be done to us, we may
 incommod-um, i m. import-or, atus sum, ari.
 repel it and revenge those
 propuls-o, avi, atum, are. ulcisc-or, ultus sum, i.
 who hurt us dat. I shall always endeavour
 noc-eo; ui, itum, ere. con-or, atus
 to reward those who are diligent.
 sum, ari. muner-or, atus sum, ari.

N. B. Let the young learners now form the Passive voice themselves, in the following praxis.

The help of the gods is not obtained
 auxili-um, i n. par-o, avi, atum, are.
 by vows and womanish prayers. They
 vot-um, i n. muliebr-is, e adj. supplici-um, i n.
 worked from day abl. to day acc.
 elabor-o, avi, atum, are. de, p. di-es, ei f. in, p.
 till a wall was built *pot.* that
 dum, c. mur-us, i m. ædific-o, avi, atum, are. quò, adv.
 Cæsar's impetuosity might be stopped
 impet-us, ūs m. tard-o, avi, atum, are.
 more easily. Epaminondas bore
 faciliùs, adv. Epaminond-as, æ m. perpet-ior, pessus sum, i.
 poverty

poverty so easily, that he acquired *pot.*
 paupert-as, *atis* f. aded facile, adv. ut, c. adipisc-or,

nothing besides glory *acc.* from
adeptus sum, *i.* nihil, n. præter, p. glori-a, *æ* f. de, p.
 the state *abl.* When any one shall have

respublic-a, *æ* f. quando, adv.
 entered our house, let him admire
 ingred-ior, *ingressus sum*, *i.* admir-or, *atus*

us rather than our furniture.
sum, ari. potiùs, adv. supell-ex, *ectilis* f.

Such a desire of money
 tant-us, *a, um* adj. cupid-o, *inis* f. pecuni-a, *æ* f.

(has seized upon) men, that they seem
 invad-o, *vasi, vasum, ere.* ut, c. vid-eor, *visus sum, eri.*

rather to be possessed by riches
 possid-eo, *edi, effum, ere.* diviti-æ, *arum* f.

than to possess them. Whatever gold
 quisque, &c. pro. aur-um, *i* n.

there is above or beneath the earth *acc.* is of
 supra, p. aut, c. infra, p. terr-a, *æ* f.

no value *abl.* if it be compared
 null-us, *a, um* adj. preti-um, *i.* compar-o, *avi, atum, are.*

with virtue Q. Fabius Maximus was chosen
 elig-o, *exi,*

general by the Romans against
ectum, ere. du-x, *cis* m. adversùs, p.

Hannibal *acc.*; he found out a
 Hannib-al, *alis* m. commisc-or, *commentus sum, i.*

new art of conquering, not
 nov-us, *a, um* adj. ar-s, *tis* f. vinc-o, *vici, victum, ere.*

to fight and to weaken
 pugn-o, *avi, atum, are.* frang-o, *fregi, fractum, ere.*

the enemy by delay. After Otho,
a, p. mor-a, *æ* f. post, p. Otho, *nis* m.

Vitellius obtained the empire, *abl.*
 Vitelli-us, *i* m. pot-ior, *itus, sum, iri.* imperi-um, *i* n.

when

when, (on account of) his cruelty, *acc.* he had
 cum, c. propter, p. crudelit-*as, atis f.*
 been judged *pot.* an enemy *nom.* by the senate
 judic-*o, avi, atum, are.* senat-*us, ūs m.*
 he was dragged through the city of
 trah-*o, traxi, tractum, ere.* per, p. urb-*s, is f.*
 Rome *acc.* and thrown into the Tyber *acc.*
 de-*jic- io, eci, ectum, ere.* in, p. Tiber-*is, is m.*
 When Titus had recollected *pot.* that he *acc.*
 cum, c. Tit-*us, i m.* record-*or, atus sum, ari sui, pro.*
 had performed *infm.* no kindness
 præst-*o, iti, itum, ere.* null-*us, a, um adj.* benefici-*um, i n.*
 on a certain day *abl.* to any one, he
 quidam, &c. *pro.* quisquam, &c. *pro.*
 said, O my friends, this day I have lost
 dic-*o, xi, etum, ere.* hodie, *adv.* perd-*o,*
 a day. Vespasian very affectionately
 idi, *itum, ere.* Vespasian-*us, i m.* studiosissimè, *adv.*
 distributed money to the poor, so that
 larg-*ior, itus sum, iri.* pauper, *is com.* ita ut, *c.*
 no prince's liberality was found
 null-*us, &c.* liberalit-*as, atis f.* comper-*ior, tus*
 either greater or more just. (As much as)
 sum, *iri.* vel, *c.* just-*us, a, um adj.* quantum, *adv.*
 human weakness permits,
 human-*us, a, um adj.* imbecillit-*as, atis f.* pat-*ior, passus*
 let us follow the gods for our guides *acc.*
 sum, *i.* sequ-*or, secutus sum, i.* du-*x, cis m.*
 who give kindnesses even to the
 d-*o, edi, atum, are.* etiam, *adv.*
 ungrateful Aristides and Epaminondas
 ingr-*at-us, a, um adj.* Aristid-*es, is m.*
 are reported to have been such lovers
 trad-*o, idi, itum, ere.* tam, *adv.* dilig-*ens, entis*
 of truth, that not even in joke they did
 ut, *c.* ne, *c.* quidem, *adv.* joc-*us, i m.*

ever lie *pot.* Liars
 unquam, adv. ment-ior, itus sum, iri. mend-ax, acis com.
 gain, this, that when they shall have spoken
 consequ-*or*, &c. ut, c. cum, adv. dic-o,
 the truth, credit is not given
 dixi, dictum, ere. fid-es, ei f. tribu-o, i, tum, ere.
 to them. Since we are born not
 quoniam, adv. nasc-or, natus sum, i.
 only for ourselves *dat.* but our country, *dat.* and those
 solum, adv. patri-a, æ f.
 things which grow on earth *abl.* are
 gign-or, genitus sum i. in, p.
 created for the use of all men, we
 cre-o, avi, atum, are. ad, p. us-us, ūs m.
 ought to follow nature and consult
 deb-eo, &c. sequ-or, &c. consul-o, ui, tum, ere,
 the common good *dat.* The advantages
 commun-is, e adj. utilit-as, atis f. commod-um, i n.
 which *abl.* we have, the light which *abl.*
 ut-or, usus sum, i. lu-x, cis f.
 we enjoy, the breath which we draw,
 fru-or, itus sum, i. spirit-us, ūs m. duc-o,
 are given and (bestowed on)
 duxi, ductum, ere. impert-io, i vi, itum, ire,
 us *dat.* by God. Jupiter seemed
 Jupiter, Jovis m. vid-eor, visus sum, eri.
 more propitious to the Romans, when his
 propiti-us, a, um adj. cum, adv.
 statues were made *pot.* of clay *abl.*
 statu-a, æ f. fing-or, fictus sum, i. ex, p. argill-a, æ f.
 than when they were cast of gold,
 confl-or, atus sum, ari. aur-um, i n.
 as Pliny says. Let us imitate
 ut, adv. Plini-us, i m. dico, &c. imit-or, atus sum, ari.
 God as much as human weakness permits.
 permitt-o, i fi, ūm, ere.
 We

We are made like God by pru-
 effice-*io, feci, factum, ere.* simil-*is, e* adj.
 dence, justice, and sanctity. *abl.* The Greeks
 sanctit-*as, atis* f. Græc-*us, i* m.
 enacted a law, that all parents should be
 sanc-*io, xi, itum, ire.* ut, c.
 maintained by their children: but the
 al-*o, ui, itum, ere.* liber-*i, orum, m.* verò, c.
 Athenians ordered those parents only
 Atheniens-*is, is* com. jub-*eo.* tantum, adv.
 to be maintained by their sons, who had instructed
 erud-*io, iui, itum, ire.*
 them in some art. A good man will be deterred
 ar-*s, tis* f. vir, *i* m. deterr-*eo,*
 by no thing *abl.* from honesty,
 ui, *itum, ere.* null-*us, a, um* adj. honest-*um, i* n.
 and will be enticed by no hope to
 invit-*o, avi, atum, are.* sp-*es, ei* f. ad, p.
 baseness. Your mother has promised
 turpitud-*o, inis* f. pollic-*eor, itus sum, eri.*
 you *dat.* a reward, but believe me *dat.*
 merc-*es, edis* f. cred-*o, idi, itum, ere.*
 if you wish *pot.* to please her *dat.* use
 cup-*io* plac-*eo, ui, itum, ere.* ut-*or, usus sum, i.*
 diligence *abl.* Awake, O Romans,
 expurg-*is, or, perrectus sum, i.*
 revenge the injuries which *acc.* you have
 ulcisc-*or, ultus sum, i.*
 suffered so long. Emulation *is*
 pat-*ior, passus sum, i.* tandiù, adv. emulati-*o, onis* f.
 excited by praise, and every one *is*
 excit-*o, avi, atum, are.* lau-*s, dis* f. omn-*is, e* adj.
 encouraged to study *acc.* by glory. Virtue *is*
 incend-*o, i, sum, ere.* ad, p.
 neither lost by shipwreck
 neque, c. amitt-*o, misi, missum, ere, v.* naufragi-*um, i* n.
 Z 2 nor

nor by fire; nor is it changed
 neque incendi-um, i n. nec, c. mut-o, avi, atum, are, v.
 by the alteration of seasons and times.
 permutatio, nis f. tempesta-s, tis f. temp-us, oris n.
 Confess your sins to God and he
 confit-eor, fessus sum, eri. peccat-um, i n.
 will not remember them gen. (Pray to)
 record-or, atus sum, ari. præc-or, atus
 him acc. when the sun rises fut. pot.
 sum, ari. quando, adv. sol-is, m. or-ior, tus sum, iri.
 and when it sets fut. pot. The friendship of
 occid-o, i, occasum, ere.
 Orestes and Pylades has obtained
 Orest-es, is m. Pylad-es, is m. adipisc-or, adeptus sum, i.
 immortal fame with posterity acc.
 immortal-is, e adj. fam-a, æ f. apud, p. poster-i, orum.
 What has been celebrated more
 quis, &c. pro. celebr-o, avi, atum, are. magis, adv.
 than their mutual contention of
 mutu-us, a, um adj. contenti-o, onis m.
 love (which of the two) should die.
 am-or, oris m. ut-er, ra, rum, pro. mor-ior, mortuus sum, i.

VERBS IRREGULAR.

WE call *irregular* those verbs, which, in some of their tenses or persons, differ from either of the foregoing conjugations.

NEUTER PASSIVES.

Those verbs are called *neuter passives*, because they have their preterperfect and the other tenses formed from

from it, ending in *us* as the passive verbs. In their other tenses they are conjugated agreeably to the conjugation they belong to. Therefore, in the following verb, the first person of each tense will sufficiently shew how to conjugate all the others.

Primitive tenses.

gaud-eo, es, gavifus sum, gavifum, gaudere, to rejoice.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

gaud-eo, es, &c. I rejoice.

Preterimperfect.

gaud-ebam, ebas, &c. I did rejoice *or* was rejoicing.

Preterperfect.

gavifus sum *or* fui, &c. I rejoiced, did rejoice, *or* have rejoiced.

Preterpluperfect.

gavifus eram *or* fueram, &c. I had rejoiced.

Future.

gaud-ebo, ebis, &c. I shall *or* will rejoice.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

gaud-e *or* eto, &c. rejoice.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present.

gaud-eam, eas, &c. I may, can, *or* should rejoice.

Preterimperfect.

gaud-erem, eres, &c. I would, could, *or* might rejoice.

Preterperfect.

gavifus sim *or* fuerim, &c. I may have rejoiced.

Preterpluperfect.

gavifus essem or fuiffem, &c. I would, could, *or* might
have rejoiced.

Future past.

gavifus ero or fuero, &c. I shall *or* will have rejoiced.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and preterimperfect.

gaud-ere, to rejoice.

Preterperfect and preterpluperfect.

gavis-um esse or fuiffe, to have rejoiced.

Future.

gavis-urum esse, that—shall *or* will rejoice.

Future past.

gavis-urum fuiffe, that—shall *or* will have rejoiced.

Gerunds.

<i>gaud-endi,</i>	of rejoicing.
<i>endo,</i>	in <i>or</i> by rejoicing.
<i>endum,</i>	to rejoice.

Supines.

<i>gavis-um,</i>	to rejoice.
<i>gavis-u,</i>	to be rejoiced.

Participles.

Present.

gaud-ens, entis, rejoicing.

Past.

gavis-us, a, um, rejoiced.

Future.

gavifur-us, a, um, to rejoice.

Conjugate

Conjugate as above,

aud-eo, ausus sum, aud-ere, to dare.

mœ-eo, mœstus sum, mœr-ere, to grieve, to mourn.

sol-eo, solitus sum, sol-ere, to be accustomed.

Fido, fîsus sum, fidere; but its compounds *confido*, to trust, and *diffido*, to mistrust, belong to the third conjugation.

FERO. Active voice.

Primitive tenses.

fer-ô, tuli, latum, fer-re, to bear, suffer or carry.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

I bear or suffer.

Singular.

Plural.

fero, fers, fert; ferimus, fertis, ferunt.

Preterimperfect.

I did bear or suffer.

Singular.

Plural.

fer-ebam, ebas, ebat; ebamus, ebatis, ebant

Preterperfect.

I borne or suffered, have borne or suffered.

Singular.

Plural.

tul-i, isti, it; imus, istis, erunt or ere.

Preterpluperfect.

I had borne or suffered.

Singular.

Plural.

tul-eram, eras, erat; eramus, eratis, erant.

Future.

I shall *or* will bear *or* suffer.

Singular.

Plural.

fer-am, es, et; emus, etis, ent,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

bear, let him bear, &c.

fer *or* ferto, ferat *or* ferto; feramus, ferte *or* fertote,
ferant *or* ferunto.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present.

I may can *or* should bear, &c.

Singular.

Plural.

fer-am, as, at; amus, atis, ant.

Preterimperfect.

I would, could, *or* might bear, &c.

Singular.

Plural.

fer-rem, res, ret; remus, retis, rent.

Preterperfect.

I may have borne, &c.

Singular.

Plural.

tul-erim, eris, erit; erimus, eritis erint,

Preterpluperfect.

I would, could *or* might have borne, &c.

Singular.

Plural.

tul-issem, isses, isset; issemus, issetis, issent.

Future past.

I shall *or* will have borne.

Singular.

Plural.

tul-ero, eris, erit; erimus, eritis, erint.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and preterimperfect.

fer-re, to bear, &c.

Preterperfect and preterpluperfect.

tul-isse, to have borne, &c.

Future.

lat-urum esse, that—shall *or* will bear, &c.

Future past.

lat-urum fuisse, that—shall *or* will have borne, &c.

Gerunds.

fer-endi, of bearing, &c.

endo, in *or* by bearing, &c.

endum, to bear, &c.

Supine.

lat-um, to bear, &c.

Participles.

Present.

fer-ens, entis, bearing, &c.

Future.

lat-ur-us, a, um, to bear, &c.

Thus are conjugated the compounds of *ferō*.affero (or adfero, attuli,) allatum, afferre, *or* adferre,
to bring.

aufero, abstuli, ablatum, ferre, to carry away.

confero, contuli, collatum, ferre, to confer, to con-
tribute.

deferō, detuli, delatum, ferre, to bring, to convey.

differo, distuli, dilatum, ferre, to differ, to put back.

A a

effero,

effero, extuli, elatum, ferre, to carry forth, to divulge
offero, obtuli, oblatum, ferre, to offer.

suffero, sustuli, sublatum, ferre, to take upon, to
suffer, &c.

FER-OR. Passive voice.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present tense.

I am borne, or carried.

Singular.

Plural.

Feror, ferris or ferre, fertur; ferimur, ferimini, feruntur

Preterimperfect.

I was borne or carried.

Singular.

Plural.

fer-ebat, ebaris or ebare, ebatur; ebamur, ebamini,
ebantur,

Preterperfect.

I have been borne or carried.

Singular.

Plural.

lat-us sum or fui, &c. lati sumus or fuimus, &c.

Preterpluperfect.

I had been born or carried.

Singular.

Plural.

lat-us eram or fueram, &c. lat-i eramus or fueramus,

Future.

I shall or will be borne or carried.

Singular.

Plural.

fer-ar, eris or ere, etur; emur, emini, entur.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

be borne or carried.

Singular.

Plural.

fer-re or tor, atur or tor; amur, imini or iminor, an-
tur or untor.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present tense.

I may, can or should, be borne or carried.

Singular.

Plural.

fer-ar, aris or are, atur; amur amini antur.

Preterimperfect.

I would, could, &c. be borne or carried.

Singular.

Plural.

fer-rer, reris or rere, retur; remur, remini, rentur.

Preterperfect.

I may have been borne or carried.

Singular.

Plural.

lat-us sim or fuerim, &c. lat-i simus or fuerimus.

Preterpluperfect.

I would, could, &c. have been borne, &c.

Singular.

Plural.

lat-us essem or fuisset; lat-i essemus or fuissetus.

Future past.

I shall or will have been borne, &c.

Singular.

Plural.

lat-us ero or fuero, &c. lat-i erimus or fuerimus &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and preterimperfect.

ferri, to be borne or carried.

Preterperfect and preterpluperfect.

lat-um esse *or* fuisse, to have been borne, &c.

Future.

lat-um iri, *or* ferendum esse, that—shall *or* will be, &c.

Future past.

ferendum fuisse, that—shall *or* will have been, &c.

Supine.

lat-u, to be carried.

Participles.

Past.

lat-us, a, um, carried *or* borne.

Future.

ferend-us, a, um, to be borne *or* carried.

IRE, to go.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present tense.

I go *or* am going.

Singular.

Plural.

eo, is, it;

imus, itis, eunt.

Preterimperfect.

I was going *or* did go.

Singular.

Plural.

ib-am, as, at;

amus, atis, ant.

Preterperfect.

I did go *or* went.

Singular.

Plural.

iv-i, isti, it;

imus, istis, erunt *or* ere.

Preterpluperfect.

Sing. I had gone. *Plur.*
iv-eram, eras, erat, eramus, eratis, erant

Future.

Sing. I shall *or* will go. *Plur.*
ib-o, is, it; imus, itis, ibunt.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular. go. *Plural.*
I *or* ito, eat, ito; eamus, ite *or* itote, eant *or* eunto

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present.

Sing. I may, can, *or* should go. *Plur.*
e-am, as, at; amus, atis, ant

Preterimperfect.

Sing. I would, could, *or* might go. *Plur.*
ir-em, es, et; emus, etis, ent

Preterperfect.

Sing. I may have gone. *Plur.*
iv-erim, eris, erit; erimus, eritis, erint

Preterpluperfect.

Sing. I would, could, *or* might have gone *Plur.*
iv-isse, isses, isset; issemus, issetis, issent

Future past

Sing. I shall *or* will have gone. *Plur.*
iv-ero, eris, erit; erimus, eritis, erint

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and preterimperfect

ire, to go

Preterperfect and preterpluperfect.

iv-isse, to have gone

Future

it-urum esse, that—shall *or* will go

Future past

it-urum fuisse, that—shall *or* will have gone.

Gerunds.

eundi, of going

eundo, in or by going

eundum, to go

Supines

itum, itu, to go

Participles.

Present

iens, euntis, going

Future

itur-us, a, um, to go

Thus are conjugated its compounds, viz.

ab-eo,	ivi, itum, ire,	to go away
ad-eo,	ivi, itum, ire,	to go or come to
co-eo,	ivi, itum, ire,	to assemble, to meet
ex-eo,	ivi, itum, ire,	to go out
in-eo,	ivi, itum, ire,	to go in
inter-eo,	ivi, itum, ire,	to die, to perish
intro-eo,	ivi, itum, ire,	to come in
ob-eo,	ivi, itum, ire,	to end, to die
per-eo,	ivi, itum, ire,	to perish
præter-eo,	ivi, itum, ire,	to go by, to pass
		qu-eo,

qu-eo,	ivi, itum, ire,	to be able
nequ-eo,	ivi, itum, ire,	not to be able
red-eo,	ivi, itum, ire,	to return
trans-eo,	ivi, itum, ire,	to pass by or over, &c.

FIO, to become, or be made, or done

When this verb signifies *to become*, it is a neuter passive, and it is the passive of *facere*, when it signifies *to be done or made*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present

<i>Sing.</i>	I become or I am made	<i>Plur.</i>
fio, is, it;		imus, itis, iunt

Preterimperfect

<i>Sing.</i>	I was becoming or made	<i>Plur.</i>
fiebam, iebas, iebat;		iebamus, iebatis, iebant

Preterperfect

I have become or have been made.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
fact-us sum or fui, &c.		fact-i sumus or fuimus, &c.

Preterpluperfect

<i>Sing.</i>	I had become or had been made	<i>Plur.</i>
fact-us eram or fueram, &c.		fact-i eramus or fueramus,

Future

&c.

I shall or will become or I shall or will have been made

Singular.

Plural.

fiam, ies, iet;		iemus, ietis, ient
-----------------	--	--------------------

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i>	become or be made	<i>Plur.</i>
f-i or ito, iat or ito;		iamus, ite or itote, iant or unto

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present

I may, can *or* should become *or* be made*Singular.**Plural.*

f-iam, ias, at;

iamus, iatis, iant

Preterimperfect

I would, could *or* might become *or* be made*Singular.**Plural.*

f-ierem, ieres, ieret;

ieremus, ieretis, ierent

Preterperfect.

Sing. I may have become *or* be made. *Plur.*fact-us sim *or* fuerim, &c. fact-i simus *or* fuerimus, &c.

Preterpluperfect

I would, could *or* might have become *or* be made*Singular.**Plural.*fact-us essem *or* fuisset, &c. fact-i essemus *or* fuisset, &c.

Future past

I shall *or* will have become *or* be made*Singular.**Plural.*fact-us ero *or* fuero, &c. fact-i erimus *or* fuerimus, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect

feri, to become *or* be made

Preterperfect and preterpluperfect

fact-um esse *or* fuisse, to have become *or* been made

Future

fact-um iri *or* faciendum esse, that—shall *or* will become
or be made

Future past

faci-ēndum fuisse, that—shall or will have become
or been made

Supine

fact-u, to become, to make *or* to be made

Participles

Past

fact-us, a, um; having become or been made

Future

faciend-us, a, um, to become or be made

VOLO, I will *or* am willing

Primitive tenses

vol-o, volu-i, velle, to be willing

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present

<i>Sing.</i>	I will <i>or</i> am willing	<i>Plur.</i>
vol-o, vis, vult;		volumus, vultis, volunt

Preterimperfect

<i>Sing.</i>	I would <i>or</i> was willing.	<i>Plur.</i>
vol-ebam, ebas, ebat;		ebamus, ebatis, ebant

Preterperfect

<i>Sing.</i>	I would <i>or</i> have been willing	<i>Plur.</i>
volu-i, isti, it;		imus, istis, erunt <i>or</i> ere

Preterpluperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	I had been willing	<i>Plur.</i>
volu-eram, eras, erat;		eramus, eratis, erant

B b

Future.

Future.

Sing. I will *or* I shall be willing *Plur.*
vol-am, es, et; emus, etis, ent

Imperative mood *wanting.*

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present tense

Sing. I will *or* I may *or* should be willing *Plur.*
vel-im, is, it; imus, itis, int

Preterimperfect

I would *or* I could *or* might be willing
Sing. *Plur.*
vel-lem, les, let; lemus, letis, lent

Preterperfect

Sing. I may have been willing *Plur.*
volu-erim, eris, erit; erimus, eritis, erint

Preterpluperfect

I would *or* I could *or* might have been willing
Sing. *Plur.*
volu-issēm, issēs, issēt; issēmus, issētis, issent

Future past.

Sing. I shall have been willing. *Plur.*
volu-ero, eris, erit; erimus, eritis, erint.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect.

velle, to be willing.

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect.

volu-isse, to have been willing.

Par-

Participle present.
vol-ens, entis, willing.

NOLO. I will not *or* am unwilling.

Primitive tenses.

nol-o, nolu-i, nolle, to be unwilling.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present tense.

Sing. I will not, *or* am unwilling *Plur.*

nolo, non vis, non vult; nolumus, non vultis, nolunt.

The rest of the tenses of this mood are conjugated like *volo*, only changing the *v* into *n*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. be unwilling. *Plur.*

nol-i, *or* ito; the rest wanting. nol-ite, *or* itote.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present.

Sing. I will not, *or* may be unwilling. *Plur.*

nol-im, is, it; imus, itis, int.

Preterimperfect.

Sing. I would not *or* might be unwilling *Plur.*

nol-lem, les, let; lemus, letis, lent.

The other tenses as *volo*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and preterimperfect.

nolle, to be unwilling.

Preterperfect and preterpluperfect.
nolu-isse, to have been unwilling.

Participle present.
nol-ens, entis, being unwilling.

MALO. I am more willing *or* had rather.

Primitive tenses.
mal-o, malu-i, malle, to be more willing.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. I am more willing *or* I had rather. *Plur.*
malo, mavis, mavult; malumus, mavultis, malunt.

Preterimperfect.

mal-ebam, &c.

Preterperfect.

malu-i, &c.

Preterpluperfect.

malu-eram, &c.

Future.

mal-am, es, et, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD *wanting*.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present tense.

mal-im, is it, &c.

Preterimperfect.

mal-lem, les, let, &c.

Pre-

(189)

Preterperfect.

malu-erim, eris, erit, &c.

Preterpluperfect.

malu-issem, isses, isset, &c.

Future past.

malu-ero, eris, erit, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and preterimperfect.

malle, to be more willing.

Preterperfect and preterpluperfect.

mal-uisse, to have been more willing.

Participle present.

mal-ens, entis, having rather.

N.B. The two following verbs are compounded of *sum*, but being irregular, they could not be admitted among those after it.

Possum, I can, I may, or I am able.

Primitive tenses.

possum, potu-i, posse, to be able.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present tense.

Sing. I can, I may, or I am able. *Plur.*

possum, potes, potest; possumus, potestis, possunt.

Preterimperfect.

Sing. I could, or I was able. *Plur.*

pot-eram, eras, &c; eramus, eratis. &c.

Pre-

Preterperfect.

I could *or* I have been able, &c.
potu-i, isti, &c. imus, istis, &c.

Preterpluperfect.

I could *or* had been able.
potu-eram, eras, &c; eramus, eratis, &c.

Future.

I can, I shall be able.
pot-ero, eris, &c; erimus, eritis, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD *wanting*.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present.

I may, I can, *or* I may be able.
poss-im, is, &c; imus, itis, &c.

Preterimperfect.

I might, I could, *or* could be able.
poss-em, es, &c; emus, etis, &c.

Preterperfect.

I may have been able.
potu-erim, eris, &c; erimus, eritis &c.

Preterpluperfect.

I might, I could, *or* might have been able.
potu-issim, isses, &c; issemus, issetis, &c.

Future past.

I shall be able.
potu-ero, eris, &c; erimus, eritis &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and preterimperfect.
posse, to be able.

Preterperfect and preterpluperfect.
potu-isse, to have been able.

PROSUM, to do good to, to avail.

Primitive tenses.

prosum, profui, prodesse.

This verb is conjugated like sum, but takes a *d* in the persons, which, in its primitive *sum*, begin with an *e*, as

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Sing. I do good to, I avail. *Plur.*
prosum, prodes, prodest; profumus, prodestis, profunt.

Preterimperfect.

prod-eram, eras, &c. eramus, eratis, &c.

Preterperfect.

profu-i, isti, &c. imus, istis, &c.

Future.

prod-ero, eris, &c. erimus, eritis, &c.

The rest as *sum*.

EDO,

EDO, to eat.

Primitive tenses.

edo, edi, esum or estum, edere, to eat.

The following tenses are *irregular*, the rest regular.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. I eat, or am eating. *Plur.*
edo, edis or es, edit or est; edimus, editis or estis, edunt

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

eat.

Singular.

ede or es, edito or esto; edat or edito, or esto.

Plural.

edamus, edite or editote, or esse estote; edant, edunto.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Imperfect.

I would, could, or might eat.

Singular.

ederem or essem, ederes or esses, &c.

Plural.

ederemus or essemus, ederetis or essetis, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and preterimperfect.

edere or esse, to eat.

And in the passive voice, third person singular indicative mood, present tense, *editur* or *estur*.

DEFECTIVE

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

THESE verbs are called *defective*, because they want several *tenses* or *persons*; as :

MEMINI, I remember.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. I remember, I am remembering &c. *Plur.*
memin-i, isti, it; memin-imus, istis, erunt or ere.

Preterimperfect.

Sing. I did remember, or was remembering. *Plur.*
memin-eram, eras, erat; memin-eramus, eratis, erant

Neither preterperfect, nor pluperfect.

Future.

Sing. I shall or will remember. *Plur.*
memin-ero, eris, erit; memin-erimus, eritis, erunt.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i>	remember.	<i>Plur.</i>
tu	ille	vos
memento, memento;		mementote.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present.

Sing. I may, can, or should remember. *Plur.*
memin-erim, eris, erit; memin-erimus, eritis, erint.

Preterimperfect.

Sing. I would, could, or might remember. *Plur.*
memin-issem, isses, isset; memin-issemus, issetis, issent.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and preterimperfect.

memin-isse, to have remembered.

Thus are conjugated—*coep-i*, I begin; *nov-i*, I know; *odi*, I hate: this last makes *osus sum* or *fui* in its *preterperfect*, and *osus eram* or *fueram* in its *preterpluperfect*, &c. but they have no imperative mood.

AIO, I say.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

<i>Sing.</i>	I say, I am saying.	<i>Plur.</i>
aio, ais, ait;		wanting, wanting, aiunt.

Preterimperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	I said, or was saying.	<i>Plur.</i>
aiebam, aiebas, aiebat;	aiebamus, aiebatis, aiebant.	

Preterperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	thou saidst or didst say.	<i>Plur.</i>
— aisti, —;		—, aistis, —.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present.

<i>Sing.</i>	thou mayest, canst or shouldest say.	<i>Plur.</i>
— aias, aiat;		—, —, —.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Participle present.

ai-ens, entis, saying.

IN.

INQUAM, do I say.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present

Sing. do I say *or* am I saying. *Plur.*
 inqu-am, is, it; imus, itis, iunt.

Preterimperfect.

Sing. did he say, was he saying. *Plur.*
 —, inquiebat, —; —, —, inquiebant,

Preterperfect.

Sing. didst thou say, hast thou said. *Plur.*
 —, inquisti, inquit; — inquistis, —.

Future.

Sing. wilt thou say.
 —, inqui-es, inqui-et; —, —, —.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. say.
 — inque *or* inquito, —; —, —, —.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present.

Sing. that he may, can *or* should say.
 —, —, inquit; —, —, —.

There are some few more defective verbs, such as *apage*, away; *ave*, hail; *valve*, hail; *vale*, farewell, &c. but they are seldom used but in the imperative mood, and are easily found in the dictionary.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

These are called *impersonal*, because they have only the third person singular, and have generally the English neuter pronoun *it* before them.

OPORTET, it behoveth, it is fit *or* necessary, it must, &c.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present tense.

Oport-et, it behoveth, it is necessary.

Preterimperfect

Oport-ebat, it behoved, &c.

Preterperfect

Oport-uit, it behoved, &c.

Preterpluperfect.

Oport-uerat, it had behoved, &c.

Future.

Oport-ebit, it will behove, &c.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present

Oport-eat, that it behove, &c.

Preterimperfect

Oport-eret, it should behove, &c.

Preterperfect.

Oport-uerit, it may have behoved, &c.

Preterpluperfect

Oport-uisset, it might have behoved, &c.

Future

Future past

Oport-uerit, it will have behaved, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and preterimperfect.

Oport-ere, to behove,

Preterperfect and preterpluperfect

Oport-uisse, to have behaved, &c.

Thus are conjugated,

dec-et, it becomes, it is meet, &c.

dedecet, it does not become.

lib-et, it pleaseth, it liketh, &c.

lic-et, it is lawful, it is allowed, it is possible, &c.

liqu-et, it is clear, it is well known, &c.

POENITET.

This verb is conjugated throughout all its tenses with the personal pronouns in the accusative, as *me, te, illum, illam*, (or a substantive) in the singular; and *nos, vos, illos, illas*, (or a substantive) in the plural.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present tense.

Singular.

<i>me</i>	poenitet,	I repent.
<i>te</i>	poenitet,	thou repentest.
<i>illum</i>	poenitet,	he repents.
<i>illam</i>	poenitet,	she repents.
<i>fratrem meum</i>	poenitet,	my brother repents,

Plur.

Plural.

nos	poenitet, we repent.
vos	poenitet, ye repent.
illos, illas	poenitet, they repent.
sorores meas	poenitet, my sisters repent.

Preterimperfect.

me poenitebat, I did repent, &c.

Preterperfect.

me poenituit, I repented or did repent, &c.

Preterpluperfect.

me poenituerat, I had repented, &c.

Future

me poenitebit, I shall *or* will repent, &c.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present tense.

me poeniteat, I may, can, *or* should repent, &c.

Preterimperfect.

me poeniteret, I would, could, *or* might repent, &c.

Preterperfect.

me poenituerit, I may have repented, &c.

Preterpluperfect.

me poenituisset, I would, could, *or* might have repented &c.

Future past.

me poenituerit, I shall *or* will have repented, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and preterimperfect
poenitere, to repent.

Preterperfect and preterpluperfect.

poenituisse, to have repented.

Participles.

Present.

poenit-ens entis, repenting.

Future passive.

poenitend-us, a, um, to be repented of.

Gerunds.

poenit-endi, of repenting

endo, in or by repenting

endum to repent.

Thus are conjugated,

Me pudet, I am ashamed; preterperf. *puduit* or *pud-
ditum est*; participle future passive, *pudend-us, a, um*,
Cic.

Me piget, it grieves me; preterperf. *piguit* or *pi-
gitum est*; participle future passive *pigend-us, a, um*,
Ovid.

Me tædit, it irketh, I am weary; preterperf. *tæduit*
or *tæsum est*.

Me pertædit, it irketh, I am quite weary; preterpf.
pertæduit or *pertæsum*.

Me miseret, it pitieth, I am sorry; preterperf. *mi-
sertum*, or *miseritum est*.

Most of the impersonal verbs have neither gerunds,
supines, nor participles, a few excepted. They may
become personal, and verbs personal impersonal: as
constat, it is certain, from consto
præstat, it is better, from præsto
restat,

reſtat,	} there remains,	{ from	reſto
ſuperat,			ſupero
ſupereſt,			ſuperſum
debet,	ought,	from	debeo
interet,	} it concerns, it im-	from	interſum
refert,		from	refero
ſpectat,	} it belongs, it concerns	from	ſpecto
attinet,		from	attineo
pertinet,		from	pertineo
opus eſt,	it needs, it wants.		
eſt,	it is, it belongs,	from	ſum, &c.
Others cannot ; as oportet, poenitet, pudet, &c.			

IMPERSONAL PASSIVE.

The impersonal paſſive, is the third perſon ſingular of the paſſive throughout all its tenſes, without any nominative ; as *dicitur*, it is ſaid, *dicebatur*, it was ſaid, *dictum eſt*, it has been ſaid, *dicetur*, it will be ſaid, &c.

GOVERNMENT OF THE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

I. The five impersonal verbs *poenitet*, *pudet*, *piget*, *tædet* and *miſeret*, govern an *accuſative* of the *perſon*, and a *genitive* of the *thing*, or a verb in the infinitive mood ; as—*ſapientem nullius rei poenitet*, Cic. a wiſe man repents of nothing ; *miſerete aliorum* ; *tui te nec miſeret, nec pudet*, you have pity of others, but you neither pity, nor are aſhamed of, yourſelf ; *me piget ſtultitiæ*, I am grieved for my folly ; *tædet me vitæ*, or *tædet me vivere*. I am weary of life, or I am weary of living.

Debet,

N.B. *Debet, cæpit, incipit, oportet, potest, solet*, and some others, are used impersonally, with the infinitive mood of the other impersonal verbs, and their nominative in the accusative ; as—*incipit me poenitere negligentia mea*, I begin to repent of my negligence ; *debet te pudere culpa tua*, you ought to be ashamed of your fault.

II. *Constat, præstat, restat, superat, superest, dolet, libet, licet*, and the like, when used impersonally, govern the *dative* of the *person*, and the nominative of the thing, or an infinitive ; as—*nemini licet peccare*, no one is allowed to sin, that is, it is not lawful for any one to sin ; *nihil nobis superest*, we have nothing left, that is, nothing is left to us ; *non vacat mihi nunc te audire*, I have no time to hear you now, that is, time is wanting to me, &c. *mibi non licet esse pigro*, I am not allowed to be idle.

III. *Decet, dedecet, delectat, juvat*, and the like, used impersonally, govern the *accusative* of the *person* and the *nominative* of the *thing* ; as—*modestia decet hominem*, modesty becomes a man ; *id me delectat* or *juvat*, that pleases me.

IV. *Interest* and *refert*, signifying it belongs to, it concerns, it is the interest of, &c. govern the *genitive* of the *person*, except these ablatives, *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra* ; as—*interest omnium, rectè facere*, it concerns all men, to do well ; *tua quod nihil refert, percontari desinas*, cease to inquire after what does not concern you.

N.B. This genitive or ablative agrees with the noun substantive *causa* or *gratia*, understood. If there be a noun or pronoun joined with *me, thee, him, her,*

us, you, them, that noun or pronoun must be put in the genitive; as—*refert meâ Cæsaris*, it concerns me Cæsar; *tuâ unius refert*, it concerns you alone. Should that noun express some dignity or quality, it is better to turn the sentence by *me who am, you who are*, &c. as—*tuâ qui es orator interest*, it concerns you orator, that is, you who are an orator.

Refert, interest, having for regimen a noun substantive inanimate, that noun is put in the accusative with the preposition *ad*; as—*ad honorem nostrum interest*, it concerns our honour. The above verbs are often followed by these six genitives, *tanti, quanti, pluris, magni, permagni, parvi*; and sometimes by the adverb *tantum, quantum, magnum, plurimum, magis, minus*, &c. to shew *how much, or how little it concerns*, as—*permagni nostrâ interest*, it very much concerns us; *parvi refert*, it is of little consequence.

V. *Attinet, pertinet, spectat*, govern the accusative of the person with the preposition *ad*, and the nominative of the thing, or an infinitive; as—*id pertinet ad illum*, that belongs to, or concerns, him; *nihil attinet dicere*, it is of no use to say; *spectat res ad rebellionem*, the thing tends to a rebellion.

VI. *Est* governs a genitive case, when the English impersonal *it is*, is immediately followed by some of these nouns, *part, duty, property, manner, sign, instance*, and the like, which are omitted and understood in Latin; as—*est magni animi despicere injurias*, it is the property, part, sign, or instance of a great mind to despise injuries.

It is, being followed by one of the English nouns

nouns personal, *me, thee, his, her, our, your, their*, require those pronouns to be put in the nominative case and the neuter gender; *negotium*, business, being understood; as—*meum est loqui*, it is for me to speak, I am to speak, or it is my business to speak, &c.

VII. *Opus est* governs the *dative* for the person that is *wanting*, and the *ablative* for the person or thing that is *wanted*, or an infinitive; as—*mibi opus est amico*, I want a friend; *hoc fieri opus est*, that needs to be done.

OBSERVATIONS ON *am, do, will, can, may, could, might, ought, should, and must*.

It has been mentioned before that the above verbs are not always *auxiliary*, but often verbs of themselves. Some attention must be paid to the following rules.

Am.

When in English the verb *to be* is used in the *present* or *imperfect* tenses of the indicative mood, or the *present* or *imperfect* of the subjunctive, and precedes another verb in the infinitive mood *active voice*, denoting a *futurity* in the action or an *intention* of doing something, that active verb is to be made in Latin by its participle future in *rus* and the verb *sum* put in the same tense as in English; as—*rex profecturus sum*, I am to set out presently; *profecturus erat*, he was to set out; *nunc sumus acturi Menandri eunuchum*, we are now to act Menander's eunuch.—But if the English verb *to be* be used in the above tenses of the same

mood preceding another verb in the infinitive mood, *passive voice*, that passive verb must be made by the participle of the future in *dus*, and the verb *sum* put in the same tense as in English; as—*urbs cras diripienda est*, the town is to be plundered to-morrow.

Do.

Do and its past tense *did* are verbs of themselves, whenever they are immediately followed by a noun or pronoun in the accusative case, when they are rendered in Latin by *fac-io*, *ag-o*, &c. as—*ne quid simile feceris*, do so no more; *nihil egit*, he did nothing, &c. *ego feci illud ad meam utilitatem*, I did that thing for my own improvement.

Will.

When *will* or *would* express a *will*, *choice*, or *deliberation*, in the agent, and can be turned by *choose* or *chose*, *will* is rendered in Latin by the present of the indicative or potential of *volo*, and *will not* by the same tenses of *nolo*; as—*volo, ut filius studeat*, I will have* my son study; *hoc facere nolumus*, we will not do that: and *would* by some preter tense of *volo*, *would not*, by *nolo*; as—*si Antiochus voluisset parere consilio Annibalis*, if Antiochus would have followed the advice of Annibal; *nolui ostendere illi me ægrè pati*, I would not shew him that I was troubled. Sometimes the imperative mood of *nolo* is elegantly used before ano-

* It may be seen, by this instance, that after the verbs *I will*, *I will not*, &c. the verb *to have* is not expressed, but rendered in Latin by *ut*, with the following verb in the potential mood, or in the infinitive mood without *ut*.

ther verb in the infinitive mood, to express a stronger emphasis in the command or entreaty ; as—*nolite spoliare hos auxilio vestro*, do not deprive these men of your assistance.

May, can, could, might.

When *can, may, could, or might*, express an absolute or permissive power, or a possibility of doing a thing, *can* and *may* are rendered in Latin by the present tense of the indicative or subjunctive of the verb *possum* or *queo*, and *could* and *might* by some preter tense of the same verbs. *May* or *can*, when implying *liberty* or *allowance*, is sometimes made by *licet* ; as—*poteſt ex caſa vir magnus exire*, a great man may come out of a cottage ; *quantum poteſt quiſque nitatur*, let every one do what he can ; *abdimus nos quantum licet*, we hide ourselves as much as we may or can ; *operam melius nunquam potui ponere*, I could never beſtow my pains better ; *priore ſacramento amiſſo, jure pugnare cum hoſtibus non poterat*, the former oath being diſſolved, he could not lawfully fight with the enemies.

Might have, and could have, when the poſſibility of what did not happen is ſignified, are rendered by *poſſum* or *licet* in the preterpluperfect potential, and the participle following put in the infinitive mood ; as—*an poteſt quiſquam dubitare, quin ſi Ligarius in Italiâ eſſe potuiſſet*, or *licuiſſet*, &c. can any one doubt, but if Ligarius could have been in Italy, &c.

Ought, ſhould, and muſt.

Ought and *ſhould*, when implying *duty, obligation, or concern*, are rendered in Latin by *debeo* or *oportet*, with
the

the following verb in the infinitive mood or in the potential, with the conjunction *ut* after *oportet*; as—*an de interitu reipublicæ queri non debui?* should I not complain of the ruin of the commonwealth? *oportet te abundare præceptis officii*, you ought to be well furnished with rules of duty. *Must*, as implying a strong duty or obligation, is more generally rendered by *oportet* with the following verb in the infinitive, or in the potential with *ut*; as—*oportet ut hoc faciam*, I must do that. *Should*, *ought*, and *must*, are often made by the passive voice, when the future in *dus*, *da*, *dum*, is to be used, and the nominative of the above verb put in the dative case; as—*hoc mihi faciendum est*, I ought to, I should, or must, do that; *Deum timere debemus*, or *nobis timendus est Deus*, we should, or ought, to fear God; *comprimendæ sunt libidines*, we should, must, or ought to, repress our passions; *nihil desperandum est*, *Teucro duce*, we ought to despair of nothing, Teucer being our leader.

PRAXIS ON THE IRREGULAR, DEFECTIVE, AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

A man,	who dat.	has	a manly
hom-o, inis m.		fum, v.	viril-is, e adj.
foul, nom.	cannot	bear	such
ingeni-um, i n.	possum, v.	toler-o, avi, are, v.	tal-is, e adj.
injuries.	My father rejoiced	to see	him
injuri-a, æ f.		gaud-eo, v.	vid-eo, v.
safe.	Bear	with fortitude abl.	what
incolum-is, e adj.	fero, v.	fortitud-o, inis f.	
cannot be avoided.	Bad	trees	
	vit-o, avi, are, v.	mal-us, a, um adj.	arbor, is f.
			have

have always produced bad fruits. A fawning
 effero, v. bland-us, a, um adj.
 friend may be discerned from
 possum, v. decern-o, decrevi, decretum, ere, v.
 a true one. That modest man
 ver-us, a, um adj. modest-us, a, um adj. vir, i m.
 could not bear the consul's voice.
 possum fero, v. consul, is m. vo-x, cis f.
 Every one ought to be (skilful in) his
 quisquis, &c. pro. oportet, v. perit-us, a, um adj.
 own art gen. Your brothers returned that
 ar-s, tis f. red-co, v. is, ea, &c.
 very day abl. They did not dare
 ipse, a, &c. di-es, ei f. aud-eo, ausus, sum, &c. v.
 engage against the enemies with
 dimic-o, avi, atum, are, v. adversus, p. host-is, is m.
 small forces. It concerns the
 exigu-us, a, um adj. copi-a, æ f.
 magistrates to protect the good and
 magistrat-us, ūs m. tu-eor, itus sum, eri, v.
 punish the bad. What did you
 pun-io, iui, ire, v. mal-us, a, um adj. fac-io, feci, tum, ere, v.
 in the school to-day? I have made my
 hodiē, adv. compon-o, posui, ere, v.
 Latin exercise, and can construe
 Latin-us, a, um adj. exerciti-um, i n. explic-o, avi,
 every sentence, which will
 are, v. singul-us, a, um adj. sententi-a, æ f.
 please the master dat. We can neither conquer
 plac-co, ui, ere, v. nec, c. vinc-o,
 nor be conquered without your danger abl.
 vici, ere, v. nec, c. sine, p. pericul-um, i n.
 Your ancestors have left you
 major-es, um m. relin-qu-o, liqui, ere, v.
 riches, but could not leave you virtue.
 diviti-æ, arum, f. fed, c. virt-us, utis f.
 Men

Men are willing to be accounted good.
 vol-o, v. hab-eor, *itus sum, eri, v.*

Those men, that are desirous of honour, ought
 cupid-us, *a, um* adj. deb-eo,
 to be studious of learning and
ui, ere, v. studios-us, *a, um* adj. liter-æ, *arum* f.

good manners. Many men may do good
 mo-s, *ris* m. mult-us, *a, um* adj. licet, *v.* profum, *v.*
 by their labour. Our deliverers always ought
 oper-a, *æ* f. liberator, *is* m.

to be remembered gratefully by us, who
 memor-or, *atus sum, ari, v.* gratè, *adv.*

have received our safety from them.
 accip-io, *epi, ere, v.* incolumit-as, *atis* ab, *p.*

Learning is to be attained by study,
 doctrin-a, *æ* f. assequ-or, *secutus sum, i, v.*

not by idleness. I never made
 ignavi-a, *æ* f. nunquam, *adv.* fac-io, *feci, tum,*
 war on the Roman people, *dat.* nor
ere, v. bell-um, *i* n. neque, *c.*

wished it to be made *fut. inf.* When Marius was made
 vol-o, *v.* fi-o, *v.* cum, *c.* fio, *v.*

more certain about the arrival *abl.* of the
 cert-us, *a, um* adj. de, *p.* advent-us, *ûs* m.

ambassadors, he returned to Cirtha *acc.* He being
 legat-us, *i* m. red-eo, *v.* Cirth-a, *æ* f.

obnoxious to you, will accept an alliance
 obnoxi-us, *a, um* adj. accip-io, *v.* societ-as, *atis* f.

such as you shall wish. It much concerns boys
 qual-is, *e* adj. vol-o, *v.* magn-um

to beware of bad company. It is the part
 cav-eo, *i, ere, v.* a, *p.* conforti-um, *i* n.

of a good king to protect his subjects. Life is
 tu-eor, *v.* subdit-us, *i* m.

not to be bought at every price. My
 em-o, *i, ptum, ere, v.* omn-is, *e* adj. preti-um, *i* n.

father

father is to send some money to me.
 mitt-o, *misi, missum, ere* pecuni-a, *æ f.*
 Ambitious of praise, they wished for
 avid-us, *a, um adj.* lau-s, *dis f.* vol-o, *v.*
 great glory, and honourable riches.
 ing-ens, *entis adj.* honest-us, *a, um adj.*
 It is the duty of all men to mind their own
 ag-o, *egi, actum, ere, v.*
 business. Young people ought to be
 negoti-um, *i n.* adolesc-ens, *entis com.* debeo, *v.*
 ashamed of their faults. Miltiades
 pud-eo, *ui, ere, v.* delict-um, *i n.* Miltiad-es, *is m.*
 wished to reduce the inhabitants of the
 vol-o redig-o, *egi, actum, ere, v.* incol-a, *æ com.*
 island under the power of the Athe-
 inful-a, *æ f. sub, p.* potest-as, *atis f.* Athe-
 nians, but could not. We may learn
 niens-is, *is com.* possum, *v.* possum, *v.* percip-io,
 from quarrels, how much
 cepi, *ceptum, ere* dissentio, *nis f.* quant-us, *a, um adj.*
 good there is in friendship. Those who
 bon-um, *i n. potent. mood* amicitia, *æ f.*
 ought to have pity of me, do not
 deb-eo, *v.* miser-eor, *tus sum, eri, v.*
 cease to envy me *dat.*
 defin-o, *ivi, itum, ere, v.* invid-eo, *i, visum, ere, v.*
 Old age destroys most *acc.* of the
 senect-us, *utis f.* dissolv-o, *i, utum, ere, v.* plerique
 Moors, except those who may have perished
 Maur-us, *i m. nisi, c.* inter-eo, *v.*
 by the sword or by wild beasts. So much
 gladi-us, *i m. vel, c.* besti-a, *æ f.* tantum
 it concerns to do honest
 ag-o, *egi, actum, ere, v.* honest-us, *a, um adj.*
 things. My soul is weary of my life. Antiochus
 anim-a, *æ f.*

being dead, *abl.* his brother made war upon
delet-us, a, um infero, v.
 Egypt. I could relate in what
Egypt-um, i n. possum, v. memor-o, *avi, are, v.*
 places the Roman people, with a small
loc-us, i m. parv-us, *a, um*
 body of men, have routed very great
man-us, us f. fund-o, *fusi, fustum, ere, v.*
 forces of the enemy. They could not buy
copi-a, æ f. em-o, *i, ptum, ere, v.*
 timber from any. Misers are
materi-a, æ f. ull-us, *a, um adj.* avar-us, *a, um*
 used to grow weary of expences. They
sol-eo, ui, ere, v. tæd-eo, v. impendi-um, *i n.*
 have begun to repent. I had rather die
cœpi, v. poenit-eo, v. mal-o, v. mor-ior, *tuus*
 than live thus. I would have you *acc.* to be
sum, i viv-o, v. sic, adv. volo, v.
 more diligent. You never will become
dilig-ens, entis adj. nunquam, adv. fio, v.
 learned, unless you study *pot.* The law
doct-us, a, um nisi, c. stud-eo, *ui, ere, v.* le-x, *gis f.*
 of war was, that those, who had conquered,
ut, c. vinc-o, *vici, victum, ere*
 might govern those *dat.* who had been
imper-o, avi, atum, are, v.
 conquered as they would. If you ask
ut volo, v. si, c. pet-o, *ivi, itum, ere*
 any thing worthy of me and you, you shall
quis, & c. pro. dign-us, *a, um adj.*
 not go away refused. A good man chooses rather
eo, v. repuls-us, *a, um.* malo, v.
 to pardon than to revenge an
ignosc-o, novi, ere, v. persequ-or, *cutus sum, i, v.*
 injury. How have you, who just now were not able
unde, adv. tu, pro. modò, adv. possum, v.
 to

to redeem even your father's house, acquired
 em-o, v. nequidem, adv. par-o, avi,
 those gardens and country-house. Who could
 are, v. hort-us, i m. vill-a, æ f. possum
 bear so many misfortunes!
 pat-ior, passus sum, i, v. tant-us, a, um adj. infortuni-um, i n.
 If Pompey could have borne an equal, the
 Pompei-us, i m. pat-ior, v. par-is, adj.
 world (would not have been torn in
 orb-is, is m. terr-a, æ f. concut-ior, cussus sum, i, v.
 pieces) by wars. We dat. ought to use
 ut-or, usus sum i, v.
 popular and common words abl. when
 popular-is, e adj. usitat-us, a, um verb-um, i n. cum, c.
 we are speaking of a popular opinion abl.
 loqu-or, cutus sum, i, v. de, p. opinio, nis f.
 He persuades Jugurtha dat. lest he
 persuad-eo, ari, asum, ere, v. Jugurth-a, æ m. ne, c.
 should choose to experience the power
 malo, v. exper-ior, tus sum, iri, v. v-is, is f.
 rather than the mercy of the Roman
 potiùs, adv. misericordi-a, æ f.
 people. It is the part of a prudent man
 prud-ens, entis adj.
 to do very much and speak
 fac-io, feci, ere, v. plurimum, adv. loqu-or, v.
 very little of himself. My mind has
 minimum, adv. de, p. anim-us, i m.
 dared begin the greatest and
 audeo, v. incip-io, cepi, ceptum, ere, v.
 most noble exploit. To wish
 pulch-er, ra, rum adj. facin-us, oris n. volo, v.
 the same things and to dislike the same things,
 idem, eadem, &c. nolo, v.
 that is firm friendship. Honours ought
 firm-us, a, um adj. deb-eo, v.

moment, *abl.* the flag to be hung out,
 temp-*us*, *oris* n. vexill-*um*, *i* n. propon-*o*, *posui*, *positum*,
 the sign to be given by the
 ere, *v.* sign-*um*, *i* n. d-*o*, *edi*, *atum*, *are*, *v.*
 trumpet: the soldiers to be recalled
 tub-*a*, *æ* f. mil-*es*, *itis* m. revoc-*o*, *avi*, *atum*, *are*, *v.*
 from work: the army to be drawn up,
 ab, *p.* oper-*a*, *æ* f. aci-*es*, *ei* f. institui-*o*, *i*, *tum*, *ere*, *v.*
 and the soldiers to be encouraged. He is said
 cohort-*or*, *atus* *sum*, *ari*, *v.* dic-*o*,
 to have borne all things patiently.
 dixi, *tum*, *ere* fero, *v.* patienter, *adv.*
 Can any one become an excellent
 possum, *v.* ull-*us*, *a*, *um*. fio, *v.* egregi-*us*, *a*, *um* *adj.*
 citizen, who has not been instructed *pot.* in
 erud-ior, *itus* *sum*, *iri*, *v.*
 useful arts and knowledge? I feared
 util-*is*, *e* *adj.* scienti-*a*, *æ* f. tim-*eo*, *ui*, *itum*, *ere*, *v.*
 nothing but the laws, many wished their
 nisi, *c.* mult-*us*, *a*, *um* *adj.* volo, *v.*
 arms to be feared. He who bears with a great
 arm-*a*, *orum* n. fero
 foul *abl.* those evils by which others are
 anim-*us*, *i* m. mal-*um*, *i* n. ali-*us*, *a*, & c.
 cast down. does turn
 opprim-*o*, *pressi*, *pressum*, *ere*, *v.* vert-*o*, *i*, *versum*, *ere*, *v.*
 the calamities themselves into glory *acc.*
 calamit-*as*, *atis* f. ips-*e*, *a*, & c. in, *p.* glori-*a*, *æ* f.
 They are truly unhappy, who cannot bear
 verè, *adv.* infeli-*x*, *cis* *adj.*
 unhappiness. Rutilius, a very honest man,
 infelicit-*a*, *tis*, *f.* integ-*er*, *ra*, *rum* *adj.*
 when he was accused, *pot.* would not become
 cum, *c.* accus-*o*, *avi*, *atum*, *are*, *v.* nolo, *v.* sum, *v.*
 a suppliant to his judges, and forbade
 suppl-*ex*, *cis* *adj.* jud-*ex*, *icis* m. vet-*o*, *ui*, *itum*, *are*, *v.*
 his

his cause to be pleaded more
 caus-a, æ f. *dic-o, dixi, tum, ere, v.*
 elegantly than the simple truth
 ornatiùs, adv. *simpl-ex, icis adj.* *verita-s, tis f.*
 could permit. I would rather find
 fero, v. *malo, v.* *inven-io, i, tum, ire, v.*
 good men than to make them so. The souls
 fac-io, v. *anim-us, i m.*
 of men are immortal, but their bodies
 immortal-is, e adj. *corp-us, oris n.*
 return to dust *acc.* In vain therefore
red-eo, v. *in, p.* *pulv-is, eris do.* *frustrà, adv.* *igitur, adv.*
 have I rejoiced, my hopes have vanished.
 gaudeo, v. *sp-es, ei f.* *evanesc-o, nui, ere, v.*
 We must beware lest we should give
 cav-eo, i, cautum, ere, v. *ne, c.* *ded-o,*
 ourselves up to sloth. Young men
idi, itum, ere, v. *desidi-a, æ f.*
 ought to remember modesty *gen.* It much
oportet, v. *reminisc-or, i, v.* *verecundi-a, æ f.*
 concerns all men to practise virtue, and it does not
 col-o, ui, ere, v.
 a little concern the commonwealth that all should
 parvum *respublic-a, æ f.* *ut*
 promote peace. It is your part to
promov-eo, i, motum, ere, v.
 pardon me *dat.* Are you not ashamed of
ignosc-o, novi, ere, v. *pudet*
 your unhappy country? Do you not repent of
 infeli-x, cis adj. *patri-a, æ f.*
 your crimes? I am sorry for your iniquities.
 delict-um, i n. *piget* *iniquit-as, atis f.*
 He made a law that no one should be accused
 fer-o, v. *ne, c.* *accus-o, arvi, atum,*
 of things done before. I will go to
are, v. *act-us, a, um* *antè* *eo, v. ad, p.*
 the

the town. Regulus chose rather to return to
 oppid-um, *i* n. malo, *v.* red-eo, *v.*
 Carthage acc. It is the part of masters to teach,
 Cartag-o, *inis* f. doc-eo, *ui, tum,*
 and the duty of scholars to shew
 ere, *v.* discipul-us, *i* m. præb-eo, *ui,*
 themselves docile. Tell him, *dat.*
itum, ere, v. docil-is, *e* adj. dic-o, *v.*
 father, I am willing, and shall always be willing, that
 ut, *c.*
 he may not (be angry with) you *dat.* None
 queo irasc-or, *ratus sum, i* nem-o, *inis* m.
 of those had returned, who had been sent.
 mitt-o, *missi, missum, ere*
 The earth brings forth food for man and
 profero, *v.* cib-us, *i* m.
 beast. Servilius, a very famous man, is to
 pec-us, *oris* n. clar-us, *a, um* adj.
 pass sentence on thee *abl.* At that
 fero, *v.* sententi-a, *æ* f. de, *p.* is, *ea, &c.*
 very time *abl.* I was going to you *acc.*
 ipse, *a, &c.* eo, *v.* ad, *p.*
 I would know what you think
 sci-o, *vi, tum, ire, v.* cogit-o, *avi, are, v.*
 of going out, *ger.* He who is ashamed of his
 de, *p.* exeo, *v.*
 sin is almost innocent. They would not
 peccat-um, *i* n. penè, *adv.* nolo, *v.*
 lose that place which they had
 dimitt-o, *missi, ere, v.* loc-us, *i* m.
 taken. Do not take uncertain
 cap-io, *cepi, ere* nolo, *v.* hab-eo, *ui, ere* uncert-us, *a, um, adj.*
 things for certain, which is foolish.
 pro, *c.* cert-us, *a, um* adj. stolid-us, *a, um* adj.
 There may be resemblances of virtue, where
 possum similitud-o, *inis* f. ubi, *adv.*
 virtue

virtue itself is not. We must endeavour
 ips-e, a, &c. con-or, atus sum, ari
 to become *pot* like God dat.
 ut, c. effic-io, feci, factum, ere, v. simil-is, e adj.
 as much as is permitted man dat. We ought to
 quantum, adv. licet, v.
 resist anger, dat. and our tongue
 resist-o, iti, itum, ere, v. iracundi-a, æ f. lingu-a, æ f.
 ought to be guarded diligently.
 contin-co, ui, tentum, ere, v. diligenter, adv.
 A certain man enquired of
 quidam, quædam, &c. quær-o, sivi, situm, ere, v. ab, p.
 Aristippus abl. what advantage he should
 Aristipp-us, i m. commod-um, i n.
 obtain if (he should apply him-
 consequ-or, secutus sum, i, v. si, c. operam d-o, edi, atum,
 self) to learning. The greatest, said he, there will
 are, v. doctrin-a, æ f. inquo, v.
 be a difference between thee and the brute acc.
 discrim-en, inis n. inter, p. brut-um, i n.

VERBS, PRIMITIVES, AND COMPOUNDS,
 WHOSE PRETERPERFECT AND SUPINE
 DIFFER FROM THE GENERAL FORMA-
 TION IN THE FOUR REGULAR CONJU-
 GATIONS.

The verbs of the first conjugation generally have
 their *preterperfect* in *avi* and their *supine* in *atum*, as

voc-o, avi, -atum, are. &c. &c.

The

The following are excepted.

BO.

cub-o, ui, itum, are, to lie down.
 accub-o, ui, itum, are, to lie down or sit at table.
 excub-o, ui, itum, are, to lie out.
 incub-o, ui, itum, are, to lie or sit upon.
 recub-o, ui, itum, are, to lie along.

N. B. Its other compounds belong to the third conjugation, and take *m* before *bo* as will be seen hereafter.

CO.

fric-o, ui, itum, are, to rub.
 refric-o, ui, itum, are, to rub again, to renew.
 ellic-o, ui, wanting, are, to shine.
 emic-o, ui, are, to shine forth, to issue.
 dimic-o, ui or avi, atum, are, to fight, to contend.
 nec-o, ui or avi, atum or tum, are, to kill.
 enec-o, ui or avi, atum or tum, are, to slay.
 internec-o, ui or avi, atum or tum, are, to put to the
 sword, to massacre.
 plic-o, ui or avi, atum or itum, are, to fold.
 applic-o, ui or avi, atum or itum, are, to apply.
 complic-o, ui or avi, atum or itum, are, to fold toge-
 ther.
 explic-o, ui or avi, atum or itum, are, to explain.
 implic-o, ui or avi, atum or itum, are, to wrap.

N. B. *Duplico*, to double, *multiplico*, to multiply.
repliko, to reply, *supplico*, to intreat, have their pre-
 terperfect and supine regular.

F f

sec-o,

sec-o, ui, tum, are, to cut.

dissec-o, ui, tum, are, to cut to pieces, to dissect.

interfec-o, ui, tum, are, to cut, to chop in.

refec-o, ui, tum, are, to pare, to clip, to cut off.

DO.

d-o, edi, atum, are, to give.

circumd-o, edi, atum, are, to furround.

peffund-o, edi, atum, are, to throw down, to over-
come.

fatid-o, edi, atum, are, to put in sufficient securities.

venund-o, edi, atum, are, to expose to sale.

N. B. The other compounds of *do* belong to the third conjugation.

MO.

dom-o, ui, itum, are, to tame:

No.

fon-o, ui, itum, are, to found.

conson-o, ui, itum, are, to sound with, to agree.

ton-o, ui, itum, are, to thunder.

inton-o, ui, itum, are, to make a loud noise.

PO.

crep-o, uĩ, itum, are, to give a crack.

discrep-o, ui *or* avi, itum *or* atum, are, to disagree in
sound.

incred-o, ui *or* avi, itum *or* atum, are, to make a noise,
to rebuke.

TO.

TO.

pot-o,	avi, um <i>or</i> atum,	are, to drink.
compot-o,	avi, um <i>or</i> atum,	are, to drink together.
epot-o,	avi, um <i>or</i> atum,	are, to drink up.
perpot-o,	avi, um <i>or</i> atum,	are, to drink continually.
st-o,	eti, atum,	are, to stand.
const-o,	iti, itum <i>or</i> atum,	are, to stand together.
inst-o,	iti, itum <i>or</i> atum,	are, to urge, to press.
obst-o,	iti, itum <i>or</i> atum,	are, to resist, to hinder.
præst-o,	iti, itum <i>or</i> atum,	are, to give, to surpass.
ast-o,	iti, itum,	are, to stand by, to approach.
prost-o,	iti, itum,	are, to stand out, to jut.
rest-o,	iti, itum,	are, to stay, to remain.
subst-o,	iti, itum,	are, to stand still.
dist-o,	iti,	are, to be distant, to differ.
vet-o,	ui, itum,	are, to forbid, to prohibit.

VO.

juv-o,	i, jutum,	are, to help.
adjuv-o,	i, jutum,	are, to assist.
lav-o,	i, lotum, lautum <i>or</i> lavatum,	are, to wash.

The verbs deponent of the first conjugation have all their preterperfect ending in *atus sum*, and their supine in *atum*; as

prec-or,	atus sum, atum, ari,	to pray, to intreat.
vag-or,	atus sum, atum, ari,	to wander.
glori-or,	atus sum, atum, ari,	to glory, to brag.

congratul-or,	atus fum, atum, ari, to congratulate.
dign-or,	atus fum, atum, ari, to vouchsafe, to think worthy.
domin-or,	atus fum, atum, ari, to rule over.
opin-or,	atus fum, atum, ari, to think, to judge.
ven-or,	atus fum, atum, ari, to hunt.
fur-or,	atus fum, atum, ari, to steal.
mir-or,	atus fum, atum, ari, to admire, to won- der.
moder-or,	atus fum, atum, ari, to moderate, to limit.
mor-or,	atus fum, atum, ari, to delay, to tarry.
oper-or,	atus fum, atum, ari, to operate, to work
vener-or,	atus fum, atum, ari, to respect.
caus-or,	atus fum, atum, ari, to pretend, to give an excuse.
comit-or,	atus fum, atum, ari, to accompany.
hort-or,	atus fum, atum, ari, to exhort.
læt-or,	atus fum, atum, ari, to rejoice.
medit-or,	atus fum, atum, ari, to meditate.
test-or,	atus fum, atum, ari, to testify.
obtest-or,	atus fum, atum, ari, to protest, to be- seech.
mutu-or,	atus fum, atum, ari, to borrow.

The verbs of the second conjugation generally have their preterperfect in *ui* and their supine in *itum*; as

deb-eo, ui, itum, ere, &c. &c.

The

The following are excepted.

BEO.

jub-*eo*, jussi, jussum, ere, to order.
 rub-*eo*, ui, ere, to blush, to redden.
 forb-*eo*, ui, forptum, ere, to swallow; and its
 compounds *absorb-*eo**, to absorb, *exforb-*eo**, to swal-
 low up, and *resorb-*eo**, to swallow again. The two
 last have no *supines*.

CEO.

doc-*eo*, ui, tum, ere, to teach.
 edoc-*eo*, ui, tum, ere, to instruct.
 jac-*eo*, ui, ere, to lie along.
 adjac-*eo*, ui, ere, to lie near.
 luc-*eo*, luxi, ere, to shine, and

its compounds *diluc-*eo**, to shine, to be clear, *eluc-*eo**,
 to appear, *illuc-*eo**, to shine upon, *polluc-*eo**, to make
 bright, and *præluce-*eo**, to give a light before.

Polluceo has a *supine* *polluctum*.

misc-*eo*, ui, mistum or mixtum, ere, to mingle, to mix,
 and its compounds *admisc-*eo**, to mingle with, *com-
 misc-*eo**, to mix together, *immisc-*eo**, to mingle with,
 and *permisc-*eo**, to mingle together.

mulc-*eo*, mulsi, mulsum, ere, to soften, to appease,
 and its compounds *demulc-*eo**, to flatter, to caress,
*permulc-*eo**, to please, to cheer.

DEO.

DEO.

ard-eo,	arſi,	arſum,	ere,	to burn.
cand-eo,	ui,		ere,	to be white.
frend-eo,	ui,	freſſum,	ere,	to break.
mord-eo,	momordi,	morſum,	ere,	to bite.
admord-eo,	i,	morſum,	ere,	to bite hard.
remord-eo,	i,	morſum,	ere,	to bite again.
pend-eo,	pependi,	penſum,	ere,	to hang on, to depend, &c.
impend-eo,	i,	penſum,	ere,	to hang over one's head, to threaten.
prand-eo,	i,	pranſum,	ere,	to dine.
renid-eo,			ere,	to ſhine, to glitter.
rid-eo,	riſi,	riſum,	ere,	to laugh; and its compounds <i>arrid-eo</i> , to laugh at, to ſmile, <i>derid-eo</i> , to mock, <i>irrid-eo</i> , to ſcorn, <i>ſubrid-eo</i> , to ſmile.
fed-eo,	fedi,	feſſum,	ere,	to ſit; and its com- pounds <i>aſſid-eo</i> , to ſit by or at, <i>conſid-eo</i> , to ſit together, <i>inſid-eo</i> , to ſit upon, <i>obſid-eo</i> , to beſiege, <i>poſſid-eo</i> , to poſſeſs, <i>præſid-eo</i> , to preſide, <i>ſubſid-eo</i> , to ſtop, <i>ſuperſed-eo</i> , to ſuperſede, to give over, <i>deſid-eo</i> , to be ſtill or idle, <i>diſſid-eo</i> , to be at variance, <i>reſid-eo</i> , to reſide, to reſt ſtill. Theſe three laſt have no ſupine.
ſplend-eo,	ui,		ere,	to ſhine, to glitter.
ſpond-eo,	ſpopondi,	ſponſum,	ere,	to promiſe.
deſpond-eo,	i,	ſponſum,	ere,	to promiſe in marriage, to betroth.
				reſpond-eo

respond-eo, i, sponsum, ere, to answer.
 frid-eo, ui, ere, to make a noise
 stud-eo, ui, ere, to study.
 suad-eo, suasi, suasum, ere, to advise, and
 its compounds *dissuad-eo*, to dissuade, *persuad-eo*, to
 persuade.
 tond-eo, totondi, tonsum, ere, to shear; and
 its compound *detond-eo*, to clip, to lop off.
 vid-eo, i, visum, ere, to see; and its com-
 pounds *invid-eo*, to envy, *prævid-eo*, to foresee,
provid-eo, to provide.

GEO.

alg-eo, alsi, ere, to be cold.
aug-eo, auxi, auctum, ere, to increase.
eg-eo, egui, ere, to want, and
its compound *indig-eo*, to lack, to stand in need.
frig-eo, frigui and frixi, ere, to be cold.
perfrig-eo, frixi, ere, to shiver with cold.
refrig-eo, frixi, ere, to grow cool.
fulg-eo, fulsi, ere, to glitter, and its
compound *affulg-eo*, to shine upon, *effulg-eo*, to
shine forth, *resulg-eo*, to shine bright.
indulg-eo, dulsī, dultum, ere, to indulge, to
be indulgent.
lug-eo, luxi, luctum, ere, to lament.
mulg-eo, { mulxi muletum } ere, to milk.
 { or mulsi, or mulfum,
rig-eo, ui, ere, to be stiff with
cold.
terg-eo,

terg-eo, terfi, terfum, ere, to wipe, and its compounds *absterg-eo*, to wipe clean, *deterg-eo*, to scour or brush.

turg-eo, turfi, ere, to swell.

vig-eo, ui, ere, to flourish.

urg-eo, urfi, urfum, ere, to urge, to press on.

IEO.

ci-eo, ivi, itum, ere, to move, to stir, and its compound *conci-eo*, to call together.

LEO.

call-eo, ui, ere, to be hard, to know well.

del-eo, evi, etum, ere, to blot out.

fl-eo, evi, etum, ere, to weep, and its compound *defl-eo*, to bewail.

abol-eo, evi, itum, ere, to abolish.

adol-eo, evi or ui, dultum, ere, to burn.

exol-eo, evi, etum, ere, to fade, to fail away.

obfol-eo, evi, etum, ere, to grow obsolete.

pl-eo, evi, etum, ere. N. B. This verb is no longer in use, only its compounds *compl-eo*, evi, etum, ere, to fill up, to accomplish, and the following, *expl-eo*, to fill, to finish, *impl-eo*, to fill, to accomplish, *repl-eo*, to replenish, and *suppl-eo*, to supply.

pall-eo, ui, ere, to grow pale.

poll-eo, ere, to excel, to exceed.

fil-eo, ui, ere, to keep silence.

MEO.

MEO.

tim-eo, ui, ere, to fear; and its compound
pertim-eo, to fear much.

tum-eo, ui, ere, to be swelled; and its com-
pound *intum-eo*, to swell.

NEO.

man-eo, fi, sum, ere, to remain; and its com-
pounds *perman-eo*, to abide, to continue; *reman-eo*,
to stay behind.

min-eo is no longer in use, but its compounds
emin-eo, ui, ere, to excel, to be eminent; and the
following *immin-eo*, to threaten; *promin-eo*, to jut,
to appear from far.

n-eo, evi, etum, ere, to spin.

ten-eo, ui, tum, ere, to hold; and its com-
pounds *abstin-eo*, to abstain; *contin-eo*, to contain;
detin-eo, to detain; *distin-eo*, to hinder; *obtin-eo*,
to obtain; *pertin-eo*, to belong; *retin-eo*, to de-
tain; and *sustin-eo*, to support, to maintain.

PEO.

stup-eo, ui, ere, to be astonished.

torp-eo, ui, ere, to be numb.

REO.

clar-eo, ui, ere, to be illustrious, or
known.

flor-eo, ui, ere, to flourish.

hær-eo, hæfi, hæsum, ere, to stick, to be fast; and
its compounds *adhær-eo*, to stick to, to adhere;
cohær-eo, to be joined to, to agree.

G g

horr-eo,

horr-eo, ui, ere, to dread, to tremble for fear;
 and its compound *abhorr-eo*, to detest, to abhor.
 torr-eo, ui, tostum, ere, to roast, to burn.
 vir-eo, ui, ere, to be green, to be strong.

SEO.

cens-eo, ui, um, ere, to think, to vote; and
 its compounds *accens-eo*, to reckon among; *re-*
cens-eo, to muster, to survey; and *succens-eo*, to
 be angry with one.

TEO.

nit-eo, ui, ere, to be neat, to shine.
 pat-eo, ui, ere, to be plain or manifest.
 put-eo, ui, ere, to be nauseous.
 feat-eo, ui, ere, to burst out.

UEO.

langu-eo, i, ere, to languish.
 liqu-eo, licui, ere, to melt.
 torqu-eo, torsi, torsum, ere, to twist, to rack; and
 its compounds *contorqu-eo*, to whirl about; *extor-*
qu-eo, to extort, to wrest from; and *retorqu-eo*, to
 retort, to reflect.

VEO.

av-eo, ere, to covet.
 cav-eo, cavi, cautum, ere, to take care; and its
 compound *præcav-eo*, to provide against.
 conniv-eo, i or xi, ere, to wink with the eyes.
 fav-eo, i, fautum, ere, to favour.
 ferv-eo,

ferv-eo, bui, ere, to be hot, to boil; and its compound *deferv-eo*, to grow cool.

fov-eo, i, fotum, ere, to keep warm,

mov-eo, i, motum, ere, to move; and its compounds *admov-eo*, to draw near; *amov-eo*, to go from; *commov-eo*, to trouble, to cause pity; *promov-eo*, to promote; and *remov-eo*, to remove,

pav-eo, i, ere, to be afraid.

vov-eo, i, votum, ere, to vow; and its compound *devov-eo*, to vow, to devote.

The verbs deponent of the second conjugation generally have their preterperfect in *itus sum* and their supine in *itum*; as

tu-eor, itus sum, itum, eri, to protect, &c.

The following are excepted.

fat-eor, fassus sum, fassum, eri, to own; and its compounds *confit-eor*, to confess; *diffit-eor*, to deny; *profit-eor*, to declare openly; they all make *fessus sum* and *fessum*.

med-eor, eri, to cure or heal.

miser-eor, tus sum, tum, eri, to take pity.

r-eor, atus sum, atum, eri, to suppose, to judge.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

The verbs of the third conjugation are very irregular in their *preterperfect* and *supine*. The following list will, it is hoped, remove many difficulties.

BO.

bib-o, i, itum, ere, to drink; and its compounds *combib-o*, to drink together; *ebib-o*, to drink up all; and *imbib-o*, to imbibe.

cub-o, is of the first conjugation, but its compounds, which take *m* before *bo*, are of the third, and preserve its *preterperfect* and *supine*; as *accumb-o*, *accubui*, *accubitum*, *ere*, to lie or sit down at meal; and the following *incumb-o*, to lean or lie upon; *occumb-o*, to fall upon, to die; *procumb-o*, to lie down flat; *recumb-o*, to lean, to loll upon; and *succumb-o*, to fall down, to yield.

glub-o, i, itum, ere, to pull off the bark or rind of a tree, to strip.

lamb-o, i, ere, to lick, to lap.

nub-o, nupsi, nuptum, ere, to marry, to be wedded,

scab-o, i, ere, to scratch.

scrib-o, scripsi, scriptum, ere, to write; and its compounds *adscrib-o*, to write unto, to attribute; *conscrib-o*, to set down in writing, to list or levy soldiers; *describ-o*, to describe; *exscrib-o*, to write out, to copy; *inscrib-o*, to inscribe, to intitle; *perscrib-o*, to register, to record; *proscrib-o*, to proscribe, to banish; *rescrib-o*, to write again; and *subscrib-o*, to subscribe.

CO.

crefc-o, crevi, cretum, ere, to grow; and its compounds *accrefc-o*, to increase; *concrefc-o*, to thicken, to congeal; *decrefc-o*, to decrease; and *excrefc-o*, to grow out, to rise.

dic-o'

dic-o, dixi, dictum, ere, to say; and its compounds *addic-o*, to approve, to ratify; *condic-o*, to declare, to promise; *edic-o*, to order, to give notice; *indic-o*, to denounce, to publish; *interdic-o*, to forbid; and *prædic-o*, to foretel.

disc-o, didici, ere, to learn; and its compounds *addisc-o*, to learn more; *dedisc-o*, to forget; *edisc-o*, to get by heart.

duc-o, duxi, ductum, ere, to lead, to conduct, to marry; and its compounds *abduc-o*, to lead or carry away; *adduc-o*, to bring; *conduc-o*, to conduct, to hire; *educ-o*, to lead forth, to bring up; *induc-o*, to bring in; *produc-o*, to produce; *seduc-o*, to lead aside, to seduce; and *subduc-o*, to take away, to remove.

ic-o, i, tum, ere, to touch, to strike.

nosc-o, novi, notum, ere, to know; and its compounds *agnosc-o*, to acknowledge; *cognosc-o*, to know, to be acquainted with; *dignosc-o*, to discern; *ignosc-o*, to forgive; and *prænosc-o*, to know before hand.

parc-o, { peperci parcitum } ere, to spare, to forgive.
 { or parsi, or parsum, }

comparc-o, parsi, parsum, ere, to save, to spare.

pasc-o, pavi, pastum, ere, to feed; and its compounds *depasc-o*, to feed, to browse; *compesc-o*, to mitigate; and *dispesc-o*, to separate, to divide: but the two last make in their preterperfect *pescui*, and have no supine.

posc-o,

posc-o, poposci, poscitum, ere, to ask; and its compounds *deposc-o*, *exposc-o*, to require, to demand; and *reposc-o*, to ask again.

quiesc-o, quievi, quietum, ere, to rest one's self; and its compounds *acquiesc-o*, to acquiesce; *conquiesc-o* and *requiesc-o*, to repose.

scisc-o, scivi, scitum, ere, to ordain, to decree; and its compounds *adscisc-o*, to call for, to admit; *conscisc-o*, to act, to commit; *descisc-o*, to revolt; *rescisc-o*, to hear, to learn.

suesc-o, fuevi, fuetum, ere, to be used; and its compounds *assuesc-o*, to use one's self; *consuesc-o*, to be accustomed; and *desuesc-o*, to disuse one's self.

vinc-o, vici, victum, ere, to overcome, to conquer; and its compounds *convinc-o*, to convince; *devinc-o* and *evinc-o*, to overcome, to vanquish.

abolesc-o, levi, litum, ere, to decay.

adolesc-o, levior lui, ere, to grow.

calesc-o, lui, ere, to grow warm

coalesc-o, coalui, coalitum, ere, to grow together.

concupisc-o, cupivi, cupitum, ere, to covet.

convalesc-o, valui, valitum, ere, to grow, to get strength.

erubesc-o, ubui, ere, to blush with shame.

excandesc-o, candui, ere, to be very angry.

exolesc-o, levior lui, letum, ere, to grow out of use.

extimesc-o, extimi, ere, to be greatly afraid.

fatisc-o,

fatisc-o, ere, to be weary.
horresc-o, *horrui*, ere, to shake for fear or
 cold; and its compounds *exhorresc-o*, *inhorresc-o*,
 to tremble for fear.

DO.

cad-o, *cecid*i, *casum*, ere, to fall; and its compounds, which make *cidi* in the preterperfect; *incid-o*, to fall into, to meet with; *occid-o*, to fall down, to die; *recid-o*, to fall again. The following have no supine, *accid-o*, to happen; *concid-o*, to fall down flat; *decid-o*, to fall down; and *excid-o*, to fall away, to escape.

cæd-o, *cecid*i, *cæsum*, ere, to beat; and its compounds, which make *cidi* in the preterperfect and *cisum* in their supine, *accid-o*, to weaken; *concid-o*, to cut in pieces; *decid-o*, to decide, to cut out; *excid-o*, to hew down; *incid-o*, to cut, to chop; *occid-o*, to kill; and *resid-o*, to take away.

accend-o, *cesi*, *cesum*, ere, to light; and its compounds *incend-o*, to inflame, to animate; and *succend-o*, to set on fire.

ced-o, *cessi*, *cessum*, ere, to yield, to retire; and its compounds *acced-o*, to draw near; *conced-o*, to grant; *deced-o*, to retire, to go; *disced-o*, to depart; *exced-o*, to go out, to exceed; *interced-o*, to intercede; *præced-o*, to go before; *proced-o*, to proceed; *reced-o*, to go back; *seced-o*, to withdraw; and *succed-o*, to succeed.

claud-o, *clausi*, *clausum*, ere, to shut; and its
 com-

compounds, which make *clusi* in their preterperfect and *clusum* in their supine; *conclud-o*, to conclude; *exclud-o*, to exclude; *includ-o*, to inclose; *præclud-o*, to shut out; and *reclud-o*, to open.

cud-o, *cusi*, *cusum*, ere, to hammer; and its compounds *excud-o*, to beat or strike; and *recud-o*, to beat again.

do, is of the first conjugation, but most part of its compounds belong to the third; as

abd-o, *idi*, *itum*, ere, to remove, to separate; and the following, *add-o*, to add; *cond-o*, to hide, to build; *recond-o*, to hide; *cred-o*, to believe; *concred-o*, to entrust; *ded-o*, to give; *ed-o*, to publish; *perd-o*, to lose; *prod-o*, to betray; *redd-o*, to give back; *trad-o*, to give up; *vend-o*, to sell; and *abscond-o*, which makes *abscondi* in its preterperfect, to hide.

ed-o, *i*, *esum*, ere, to eat; and its compounds *comed-o*, to eat; *exed-o*, to gnaw; and *pered-o*, to consume.

send-o, is no longer used, but its compounds; as *defend-o*, *i*, *fensum*, ere, to defend, to protect; and *offend-o*, to offend, to displease.

send-o, *fidi*, *fissum*, ere, to split.

fund-o, *fusi*, *fusum*, ere, to pour out, to shed; and its compounds *confund-o*, to confound, to mix; *diffund-o*, to spread; *effund-o*, to pour out; *infund-o*, to pour in; and *profund-o*, to squander away.

læd-o, *læsi*, *læsum*, ere, to hurt; and its compounds,

pounds, which make *lisi*, *lisum*; as *allid-o*, to dash against the ground; *collid-o*, to bruise; *elid-o*, to break; and *illid-o*, to dash against.

lud-o, *lusi*, *lusum*, ere, to play; and its compounds, *allud-o*, to jest, to scoff; *collud-o*, to play together; *delud-o*, to deceive; *elud-o*, to avoid; and *illud-o*, to mock.

mand-o, *mandi*, *mansum*, ere, to chew.

pand-o, *pandi*, *pansum* or *passum*, ere, to extend, to open; and its compounds *dispand-o* and *expand-o*, to unfold.

pend-o, *pendi*, *pensum*, ere, to weigh, to ponder; and its compounds, which only make *pendi*; as *expend-o*, to consider, to examine; *impend-o*, to spend; *perpend-o*, to weigh exactly; *repand-o*, to make amends; and *suspend-o*, to delay, to defer.

plaud-o, *plausi*, *plausum*, ere, to clap hands, to applaud; and its compounds *applaud-o*, *complaud-o*, to applaud. *Complod-o* and *explod-o*, to approve, make *plosi*, *plorum*.

prend-o, *i*, *prensum*, ere, } to take. The
prehend-o, *prehendi*, *prehensum*, ere, }

compounds of these verbs are formed as the latter. *Apprehend-o*, to lay hold of; *comprehend-o*, to understand; *deprehend-o*, to discover, to take unawares; and *reprehend-o*, to overtake, to reprove.

rad-o, *radi*, *radum*, ere, to shave, to scrape; and its compounds *abrad-o*, to scrape off; *corrad-o*, to rake together; and *erad-o*, to blot out.

rod-o, rofi, rofum, ere, to gnaw; and its compounds *arrod-o* and *corrod-o*, to gnaw.

rud-o, i, ere, to bray, to roar.

scand-o, scandi, scanfum, ere, to get up; and its compounds, which make *scendi*, *scensum*; *ascend-o*, to go up, to mount; *conscend-o*, to mount, to take ship; and *transcend-o*, to go over, to surmount.

scind-o, scidi, sciffum, ere, to cut, to tear; and its compounds *abscind-o*, to cut or rend off; *conscind-o*, to cut to pieces; *exscind-o*, to root out; and *rescind-o*, to break, to cut off.

fid-o, fidi, ere, to sink, to go the bottom; its compounds take their preterperfect and supine from *sed-co*, *sedi*, *sessum*; they are *persid-o*, to sink, to penetrate; *subsid-o*, to settle or sink down; *desid-o*, to fall down, to settle; and *resid-o*, to abide, to fix; the two last have no supine.

tend-o, tetendi, tensum or tentum, ere, to extend, to spread; and its compounds, which make *tendi*; *attend-o*, to give attention, to listen; *contend-o*, to strike, to dispute; *extend-o*, to stretch out; *intend-o*, to bend; *ostend-o*, to shew; *portend-o*, to forebode; and *retend-o*, to unbend.

trud-o, trufi, trufum, ere, to drive, to push; and its compounds *abstrud-o*, to conceal, to hide; *detrud-o*, to shove from; *extrud-o*, to drive out; and *intrud-o*, to thrust in, to intrude,

tund-o, tutudi, tufum or tunfum, ere, to beat, to smite; and its compounds, which make *tudi* and *tufum*; *contund-o*, to beat, to knock; *obtund-o*, to blunt

blunt the edge or point of a thing; and *retund-o*, to quell, to repress.

vad-o, *vafi*, *vasum*, *ere*, to go; and its compounds *evad-o*, to escape; *invad-o*, to invade.

GO and GUO.

ag-o, *egi*, *actum*, *ere*, to do, to act; and its compounds *abig-o*, to drive away; *adig-o*, to force, to compel; *cog-o*, to gather, to force; *exig-o*, to require; *perag-o*, to end, to perform; *redig-o*, to reduce; *subig-o*, to subdue; *transig-o*, to pass through. *Ambig-o*, to differ; *deg-o*, to lead, to pass; *prodig-o*, to lavish; and *satag-o*, to have enough to do. The four last have no *supine*.

cing-o, *cinxi*, *cinctum*, *ere*, to gird, to surround; and its compounds *accing-o*, to gird to, to prepare for; *discing-o*, to unguard, to undo; *præcing-o*, to begird, to inclose; and *succing-o*, to gird, to tuck.

fig-o, *fixi*, *fixum*, *ere*, to stick, to fix; and its compounds *affig-o*, to fix upon; *crucifig-o*, to crucify, to hang; *defig-o*, to put down, to plant; and *transfig-o*, to thrust through, to pierce.

fing-o, *finxi*, *fiçtum*, *ere*, to imagine, to feign; and its compound *confing-o*, to form, to make.

flig-o, *flixi*, *flictum*, *ere*, to beat, to vex; and its compounds *afflig-o*, to afflict; *config-o*, to fight; and *infig-o*, to beat, to inflict.

frang-o, *fregi*, *fractum*, *ere*, to break; and its compounds *effring-o*, to beat to pieces; and *perfring-o*, to dash to pieces.

frig-o, frixi, frixum or frictum, ere, to fry.

jung-o, junxi, junctum, ere, to join; and its compounds *injung-o*, to enjoin, to command; *disjung-o* and *rejung-o*, to part.

leg-o, i, lectum, ere, to read; and its compounds *perleg-o*, to read over, to survey thoroughly; *præleg-o*, to read before, to explain; *releg-o*, to read again; *collig-o*, to gather; *elig-o*, to chuse, to elect; *selig-o*, to pick, to lay aside. The three following make *lexi* instead of *legi*, in their preterperfect: *dilig-o*, to favour, to love dearly; *intellig-o*, to comprehend, to understand; and *neglig-o*, to neglect.

ling-o, linxi, linctum, ere, to lick.

merg-o, merxi, mersum, ere, to plunge, to immerse; and its compounds *emerg-o*, to swim, to come out; and *submerg-o*, to drown, to sink under water.

mung-o, munxi, munctum, ere, to wipe, to clean; and its compound *emung-o*, to blow one's nose.

ming-o, minxi, minctum, ere, to make water.

ning-o, ninxi, ere, to snow.

pang-o, panxi, pactum, ere, to strike, to plant, to covenant, to promise; and its compound *circumpang-o*, to set, to plant round; *depang-o*, to plant, to fasten; *repang-o*, to replant. *Comping-o*, to compact, to put together; and *imping-o*, to hit, to dash against; make *pegi* in their preterperfect.

ping-o, pinxi, pictum, ere, to paint; and its compound *deping-o*, to describe.

plang-o,

plang-o, planxi, planctum, ere, to lament, to bemoan.
 pung-o, punxi, punctum, ere, to prick, to sting; and
 its compounds *compung-o*, to vex, to torment; and
repung-o, to vex again.

reg-o, rexi, rectum, ere, to rule, to govern; and
 its compounds *arrig-o*, to lift up, to raise; *corrig-o*,
 to correct; *dirig-o*, to direct; *erig-o*, to erect; and
 the following, *perg-o*, to go on, to hasten; *porrig-o*,
 to extend, to reach; *furg-o*, to arise, to get up;
assurg-o, to rise up, to ascend; and *resurg-o*, to rise
 again.

sparg-o, sparsi, sparsum, ere, to strew, to spread;
 and its compounds, which make *sperfi*, *spersum*, as
asperg-o, to water; and *disperg-o*, to disperse.

stingu-o, stinxi, stinctum, ere, is no longer used, but
 its compounds, *distingu-o*, to distinguish; *extingu-o*
 and *reslingu-o*, to put out, to extinguish.

string-o, strinxi, strictum, ere, to grasp, to hold fast;
 and its compound *astring-o*, to tie, to bind.

sug-o, fuxi, suctum, ere, to suck, to imbibe.

tang-o, tetigi, tactum, ere, to touch; and its
 compounds, which make *tigi* in their preterperfect;
atting-o, to reach; and *conting-o*, to touch, to ar-
 rive at.

teg-o, texi, tectum, ere, to cover; and its com-
 pounds *proteg-o*, to protect; and *reteg-o*, to lay
 open, to reveal.

terg-o, terfi, tersum, ere, to wipe, to scour; and its
 compounds *absterg-o* and *deterg-o*, to wipe off.

ting-o,

ting-o, tinxi, tinctum, ere, to die, to colour; and its compound *inting-o*, to dip, to steep in.

verg-o, verfi, verfum, ere, to decline, to bend.

ung-o, unxi, unctum, ere, to anoint.

HO.

trah-o, traxi, tractum, ere, to draw, to drag; and its compounds *abstrah-o*, to draw away, to abstract; *attrah-o*, to attract, to draw to; and *contrah-o*, to contract, to bind.

veh-o, vexi, vectum, ere, to carry, to convey by land or water; and its compounds *adveh-o*, to import from beyond sea; and *eveh-o*, to carry out.

IO.

cap-io, cepi, captum, ere, to take; and its compounds *concip-io*, to conceive, to comprehend; *decip-io*, to deceive; *incip-io*, to begin; *præcip-io*, to command; *recip-io*, to receive; and *suscip-io*, to undertake.

cup-io, ivi, itum, ere, to wish, to long for.
fac-io, feci, factum, ere, to make.

N. B. The compounds of this verb, which are formed either with another verb, an adverb, or a noun, preserve the *a*; but those formed with a preposition change the *a* into *i* in the present tense, and into *e* in the supine; as

assuefac-io, feci, factum, ere, to use, to accustom;
benefac-io, to do good, to benefit; *calefac-io*, to make hot; *expergefac-io*, to awake; *labefac-io*, to loosen;

loosen ; *lucrifac-io*, to win, to gain ; *patefac-io*, to open, to discover ; *satisfac-io*, to please, to satisfy ; and

affic-io, *feci*, *fectum*, *ere*, to affect, to move ; thus *effic-io*, to effect, to fulfil ; *interfic-io*, to kill ; *offic-io*, to hinder, to obstruct ; *perfic-io*, to accomplish ; *præfic-io*, to set over ; *profic-io*, to profit ; *refic-io*, to repair ; and *suffic-io*, to suffice, to furnish with.

fod-io, *fodi*, *fossam*, *ere*, to dig, to mine ; and its compound *effod-io*, to dig out, to pull out.

fug-io, *i*, *itum*, *ere*, to run away ; and its compounds *aufug-io*, to flee from, to shun ; *profug-io*, to run away, to escape.

jac-io, *jeci*, *jectum*, *ere*, to cast, to throw. The following compounds make *jectum* in their supine, *adjic-io*, to add ; *conjic-io*, to cast together, to conjecture ; *subjic-io*, to submit ; and *rejic-io*, to reject.

illic-io, *ui*, *itum*, *ere*, to entice, to draw out. Its compounds make *lexi*, *lectum* ; they are *allic-o*, *illic-o*, and *pellic-o*, to allure, to entice, to draw on.

me-io or *ming-o*, *minxi*, *mixtum*, *ere*, to make water.

par-io, *peperi*, *partum*, *ere*, to bear, to produce. Its compounds belong to the fourth conjugation.

quat-io, *quassi*, *quassum*, *ere*, to shake, to move. Its compounds make *cussi*, *cussum* ; they are *concut-io*, to shake, to jog, to terrify ; *excute-io*, to shake, to shake off, to fetch out ; *percut-io*, to beat, to strike.

rap-io, *ui*, *tum*, *ere*, to carry away by force. Its compounds make *ripui*, *reptum* ; *arrip-io*, to take,

to seize on; *dirip-io*, to plunder, to take away; and *erip-io*, to snatch out, to rescue.

spec-io, *spexi*, *spectum*, ere, to behold, to view; and its compounds *aspic-io*, to see, to look; *despic-io*, to look down, to despise; *inspic-io*, to inspect, to examine into; *respic-io*, to look back, to respect, to favour; and *suspicio*, to look up, to admire, to suspect.

LO.

al-o, *ui*, *itum* or *tum*, ere, to feed, to maintain. *cell-o* is no longer used, but its compounds

antecell-o, *ui*, ere, to surpass; *excell-o*, to excel; *præcell-o*, to surmount, to preside over; these two make *celsum* in their supine. The two following make *culi*, *culsum*, *percell-o*, to strike, to beat; *procell-o*, to overthrow, to beat down; and *recell-o*, to push down, to fall back, has no supine.

col-o, *ui*, *cultum*, ere, to till, to serve; and its compounds *incol-o*, to inhabit; *occul-o*, to hide, to cover.

consul-o, *ui*, *tum*, ere, to advise, to provide for. *fall-o*, *fefelli* *falsum*, ere, to deceive; and its compound *refell-o*, *i*, —, to refute, to disprove.

mol-o, *ui*, *itum*, ere, to grind.

pell-o, *pepuli*, *pulsum*, ere, to drive, to remove; and its compounds, which make *puli*; *appell-o*, to drive, to force, to bring to land; *expell-o*, to drive out, to expel; *impell-o*, to push forward, to induce; and *repell-o*, to drive back, to repulse.

pfall-o,

psall-o, i, — ere, to sing.
 fall-o, falsi, falsum, ere, to salt.
 toll-o, sustuli, sublatum, ere, to take, to raise, to cut off; and its compounds, *attollo*, *attuli*, —, to raise up, to extol; *extollo*, *tuli*, *elatum*, to exalt, to praise, to elate; and *sustollo*, *sustuli*, *sublatum*, to lift up, to carry away, to bring up.
 vello, velli, & vulsi, vulsum, ere, to pluck, to tear up; and its compound *avello*, to pull out.

MO.

com-o, psi, ptum, ere, to deck the hair, to attire.
 dem-o, psi, ptum, ere, to take away, to tear off.
 em-o, emi, emptum, ere, to buy; and its compounds *adim-o*, to take away, to rescue; *dirim-o*, to break off, to determine; *exim-o*, to deliver, to exempt; *interim-o*, to kill; *perim-o*, to destroy, to slay; and *redim-o*, to redeem.

frem-o, ui, itum, ere, to roar, to found.

gem-o, ui, itum, ere, to groan.

prem-o, pressi, pressum, ere, to press, to tie up; and its compounds *deprim-o*, to depress, to lessen; *exprim-o*, to express; *imprim-o*, to imprint; *opprim-o*, to oppress; *reprim-o*, to repress, to restrain; and *supprim-o*, to suppress.

prom-o, psi, ptum, ere, to draw out; and its compound *exprom-o*, to bring out, to produce.

sum-o, psi, ptum, ere, to take; and its compounds *absum-o*, *consum-o*, to consume; *insum-o*, to employ, to take up; *præsumo*, to presume, to anticipate; and *resum-o*, to resume.

trem-o,	ui,	—	ere,	to tremble.
vom-o,	ui,	itum,	ere,	to vomit.

NO.

can-o, cecini, cantum, ere, to sing: its compounds make *ui*, *itum*; *concin-o*, to sing or play in a concert; and *præcin-o*, to sing before, to foretel.
 cern-o, crevi, cretum, ere, to see, to perceive; and its compounds *decern-o*, to decree; *discern-o*, to discern, to foresee; and *secern-o*, to separate.

gign-o, genui, genitum, ere, to beget, to produce.
 lin-o, levi, livi, lini, litum, ere, to anoint, to rub; and its compound *illin-o*, to besmear, to daub.

pon-o, posui, positum, ere, to put, to place; and its compounds *compon-o*, to compose, to put together; *depon-o*, to lay down, to put; *dispon-o*, to dispose; *expon-o*, to expose; *impon-o*, to impose; *oppon-o*, to oppose; *præpon-o*, to set before; *propon-o*, to propose; *sepon-o*, to lay or set apart; *suppon-o*, to suppose.

sin-o, fivi, situm, ere, to suffer or permit; and its compound *desin-o*, to cease, to leave off.

spurn-o, spreui, spretum, ere, to despise.

stern-o, stravi, stratum, ere, to spread, to harness; and its compound *prostern-o*, to lay flat, to prostrate.
 temn-o, psi, ptum, ere, and its compound *contemn-o*, to despise.

PO.

carp-o, si, tum, ere, to gather, to blame; and its compounds, which make *cerpsi*, *cerptum*; *decerp-o*,

cerp-o, to pluck; *discerp-o*, to pull, to tear in pieces;
and *excerp-o*, to pick, to take out.

clep-o, *fi*, *tum*, *ere*, to steal, to pilfer.

rep-o, *fi*, *tum*, *ere*, to creep, to travel gently.

rump-o, *rupi*, *ruptum*, *ere*, to break; and its compound *corrump-o*, to corrupt.

scalp-o, *fi*, *tum*, *ere*, to scratch, to scrape

sculp-o, *fi*, *tum*, *ere*, to carve, to engrave

serp-o, *fi*, *tum*, *ere*, to creep, to spread itself.

strep-o, *ui*, *itum*, *ere*, to make a noise; and its compound *obstrep-o*, to make a great noise, to resound.

QUO.

coqu-o, *coxi*, *coctum*, *ere*, to bake.

lingu-o, *liqui*, *lictum*, *ere*, to leave, to quit;
and its compounds *delinqu-o*, to omit, to fail in
duty; and *relinqu-o*, to forsake, to abandon.

RO.

curr-o, *curri* or *cucurri*, *cursum*, *ere*, to run; and
its compounds *accurr-o*, to run to; *concurr-o*, to
run, or join together; *decurr-o*, to run down or
along; *excurr-o*, to run out, to fall out: *præcurr-o*,
to run, or go before. The following can only
make *curri* in their *preterite*; *discurr-o*, to run
here and there; *occurr-o*, to occur, to appear;
recurr-o, to run back again, to have recourse; and
succurr-o, to succour, to help.

fur-o, — — — *ere*, to rave, to rage.

ger-o, gessi, gestum, ere, to bear or carry; and its compounds *conger-o*, to heap, to amass; *diger-o*, to digest, to dispose; *eger-o*, to carry out; *inger-o*, to throw or cast in or upon; and *sugger-o*, to suggest, to put in mind.

quær-o, quæsi, quæsitum, ere, to seek, to look for; and its compounds *acquir-o*, to acquire; *requir-o*, to look or inquire after.

ser-o, sevi, satum, ere, to sow, to plant; and its compounds *præser-o*, to sow before; *reser-o*, to sow again. *Affer-o*, to sow by or near, and the following, make *situm* in the supine; *conser-o*, to sow, or plant together; *differ-o*, to sow here and there, to transplant; and *infer-o*, to sow in or among, to graft.

ser-o, serui, sertum, ere, to plait, to knit or join; and its compounds *asser-o*, to assert, to claim; *conser-o*, to lay or put together; *deser-o*, to forsake, to desert; *differ-o*, to discourse, to reason; *infer-o*, to insert, to interpose; and *exer-o*, ui, tum, ere, to thrust or draw out.

ter-o, trivi, tritum, ere, to rub, to bruise.

verr-o, i, verum, ere, to sweep, to brush.

ur-o, ussi, ustum, ere, to burn.

SO.

accers-o, or } ivi, itum, ere, to send for.
arcess-o, }

capess-o, ivi, or ii, or i, itum, ere, to take in hand.

deps-o, ui, — ere, to knead, to mould or tan.

facefs-o,

faceſs-o,	ivi or ii, i,	itum,	ere, to execute, to accompliſh.
inceſs-o,	ivi, or i,	—	ere, to approach, to come.
laceſs-o,	ivi, or ii, or i,	itum,	ere, to attack, to provoke.
pins-o,	ui or i,	itum or um,	ere, to pound, to knead.
vis-o,	i,	um,	ere, to go or come to ſee; and its compounds <i>invis-o</i> , to view, to viſit; <i>revis-o</i> , to re-visit.

TO.

flect-o, flexi, flexum, ere, to bend; and its
compound *reflect-o*, to turn back, to reflect.

met-o, meſſui, meſſum, ere, to reap, to mow.

mitt-o, miſi, miſſum, ere, to ſend; and its
compounds *admitt-o*, to admit; *committ-o*, to com-
mit; *permitt-o*, to permit; *promitt-o*, to promiſe;
and *remitt-o*, to ſend back.

nect-o, nexui or nexi, nexum, ere, to tie, to faſten;
and its compound *connect-o*, to connect or tie toge-
ther.

pect-o, pexui or pexi, pexum, ere, to comb.

pet-o, ivi, itum, ere, to aſk; and
its compounds *appet-o*, to wiſh, to covet; *compet-o*,
to agree, to be a rival; *impet-o*, to invade, to
attack; *oppet-o*, to ſuffer, to die; and *repet-o*, to
aſk again, to repeat.

plect-o, plexui or plexi, plexum, ere, to plait, to fold.

ſiſt-o, ſiti, ſtatum, ere, to tarry, to ſtand
ſtill;

still; and its compounds, which make *stitum* in their supine; *confist-o*, to consist, to agree, to stop; *desist-o*, to desist, to cease; *exist-o*, to exist; *obfist-o*, *resist-o*, to resist, to oppose; *persist-o*, to persist; and *subfist-o*, to subsist.

stert-o, ui, ——— ere, to snore.

vert-o, versi, versum, ere, to turn; and its compounds *advert-o*, to turn to, to direct; *avert-o*, to avert, to turn away; *convert-o*, to change, to convert; *divert-o*, to turn aside, to differ; *evert-o*, to destroy, to upset; *pervert-o*, to pervert, to corrupt; *prævert-o*, to outrun, to anticipate; and *revert-o*, to return, to revive.

VO.

solv-o, i, solutum, ere, to pay, to untie; and its compounds *absolv-o*, to acquit, to discharge; *dissolv-o*, to dissolve, to loosen; *persolv-o*, to pay fully, to perform; and *resolv-o*, to unloose, to untie.

viv-o, vixi, victum, ere, to live; and its compound *conviv-o*, to live or eat together.

volv-o, volvi, volutum, ere, to roll, to turn; and its compounds *evolv-o*, to unfold, to extricate; *involv-o*, to involve, to wrap.

UO.

acu-o, i, tum, ere, to sharpen, to whet.

argu-o, i, tum, ere, to show, to prove, to argue; and its compound *redargu-o*, to confute, to blame.

exu-o, i, tum, ere, to strip, to divest; and *indu-o*, to clothe, to cover.

flu-o,

flu-o, xi, xum, ere, to flow; and its compounds
afflu-o, to flow upon, to abound; *efflu-o*, to flow, or
 run out.

gru-o, i, — ere, to crinkle; and its compounds
congru-o, to agree; *ingru-o*, to invade, to attack.
 imbu-o, i, tum, ere, to imbue, to stain.

lu-o, i, itum, ere, to pay, to atone; and its
 compounds *ablu-o*, to wash clean, to purify; *dilu-o*,
 to wash off, to dissolve; and *pollu-o*, to defile, to
 corrupt.

metu-o, i, — ere, to fear.

minu-o, i, tum, ere, to lessen; and its
 compound *diminu-o*, to diminish.

nu-o, i, tum, ere, to nod, to approve; and its
 compounds *abnu-o*, *renu-o*, to nod back, to refuse;
annu-o, *innu-o*, to nod, to consent.

plu-o, i, — ere, to rain.

ru-o, i, itum, ere, to rush on, to fall upon;
 and its compounds *corru-o*, to fall together, to
 decay; *diru-o*, to pull down, to destroy; *eru-o*, to
 pluck, to tear, to subvert; *irru-o*, to rush in; and
obru-o, to overrun, to overspread.

spu-o, i, tum, ere, to spit; and its compounds
expu-o, to spit out; *respu-o*, to spout upon, to refuse.

statu-o, i, tum, ere, to set, to appoint; and its
 compounds *constitu-o*, to establish, to constitute;
destitu-o, to leave destitute, to forsake; *institu-o*, to
 appoint, to settle; *prostitu-o*, to expose, to disgrace;
restitu-o, to restore, to re-establish.

sternu-o, i, tum, ere, to sneeze.

stru-o,

stru-o, xi, *ctum*, ere, to heap up, to pile, to build; and its compounds *constru-o*, to build, to construct; *destru-o*, to destroy; *extru-o*, to erect, to set up; *instru-o*, to instruct, to teach, to draw up; *obstru-o*, to stop, to shut, to block up.

fu-o, i, *tum*, ere, to slow.

tribu-o, i, *tum*, ere, to give, to bestow; and its compounds *attribu-o*, to ascribe, to attribute; *contribu-o*, to contribute; *distribu-o*, to distribute; *retribu-o*, to restore.

XO.

nex-o, ui, *um*, ere, to knot, to tie.

tex-o, ui, *tum*, ere, to weave, to knit; and its compound *prætex-o*, to cover, to border, to excuse.

VERBS DEPONENT OF THIS CONJUGATION.

BOR.

lab-or, *lapsus sum*, *lapsum*, i, to fall, to slide, to glide; and its compounds *dilab-or*, to slip aside; *elab-or*, to escape, *relab-or*, to fall again.

COR.

apisc-or, *aptus sum*, *aptum*, i, } to obtain,
adipisc-or, *adeptus sum*, *adeptum*, i, } to get.

expergisc-or, *perrectus sum*, *perrectum*, i, to awake.

irasc-or, *iratus sum*, *iratum*, i, to be angry.

minisc-or is no longer used, but only its compounds *comminisc-or*, *mentus sum*, *mentum*, i, to devise, to invent; and *reminisc-or*, —, —, i, to remember.

nancisc-or,

nancisc-or, nactus sum, nactum, i, to meet with, to
fall into.

nasc-or, natus sum, natum, i, to be born. It
makes in its participle future *nasciturus*.

oblivisc-or, oblitus sum, oblitum, i, to forget.

pacisc-or, pactus sum, pactum, i, to covenant,
to bargain.

profisc-or, profectus sum, profectum, i, to set out, to
depart.

vesc-or, pastus sum, — i, to live upon,
to eat.

ulcisc-or, ultus sum, ultum, i, to revenge,
and to be revenged.

GOR.

fung-or, functus sum, functum, i, to discharge, to
perform; and its compounds *defung-or*, to go
through with, to finish; to escape; *perfung-or*, to
discharge, to execute completely.

ring-or, rictus sum, — i, to grin, to fret.

IOR.

grad-ior, gressus sum, gressum, i, to march, to go;
and its compounds *aggred-ior*, to attack; *egred-ior*,
to go out; *ingred-ior*, to come in; *prograd-ior*, to
go forward.

mor-ior, mortuus sum, mortuum, i, to die. It
makes in its participle future *moriturus*.

pat-ior, passus sum, passum, i, } to suffer, to en-
perpet-ior, pessus sum, pessum, i, } dure.

QUOR.

liqu-or, — — i, to melt.

loqu-or, locutus sum, locutum, i, to speak; and its compounds *alloqu-or*, to speak to; *colloqu-or*, to speak together. N. B. *Locutus* is sometimes written *loquutus*.

sequ-or, secutus sum, secutum, i, to follow; and its compounds *assequ-or*, to overtake, to reach; *exsequ-or*, to execute; *obsequ-or*, to pursue, to flatter. N. B. *Secutus* is sometimes written *sequutus*.

ROR.

quer-or, questus sum, questum, i, to complain; and its compound *conquer-or*, to complain of, to bewail.

TOR.

amplect-or, plexus sum, plexum, i, } to embrace, to
complect-or, plexus sum, plexum, i, } contain, to
comprise.

divert-or, — — i, to lodge.

prævert-or, — — i, to outrun, to
anticipate.

revert-or, reversus sum, reversum, i, to return, to
come back.

nit-or, { nifus sum, nifum, i, } to endeavour,
{ nixus sum, nixum, i, } to strive; and

its compounds *adnit-or*, *enit-or*, to endeavour, to strain hard, to bring forth; *connit-or*, *obnit-or*, *renit-or*, and *subnit-or*, to lean against, to rely upon, to trust to.

ut-or, usus sum, usum, i, to use; and
abut-or, to abuse.

UOR.

fru-or, { fruitus sum fruitum } i, to enjoy.
{ or fructus sum, or fructum, }

FOURTH

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Verbs of the fourth conjugation generally make *ivi* in their *preterperfect*, and *itum* in their *supine*; as
 obed-io, *ivi*, *itum*, *ire*, to obey, &c.

The following are excepted.

CIO.

amic-io, { *amixi or*
amicui, } *amictum*, *ire*, to cover, to wrap.

farc-io, *farfi*, *fartum*, *ire*, to stuff, to cram;
 and its compounds *inferc-io*, *conferc-io*, and *referc-io*,
 to drive in, to gorge; which make *ferfi*, *fertum*.

fulc-io, *fulfi*, *fultum*, *ire*, to prop, to support.

rauc-io, *raufi*, *raufum*, *ire*, to be hoarse.

sanct-io, *sanxi*, *sanctum*, *ire*, to ordain, to enact.

N.B. This verb is also regular.

farc-io, *farfi*, *fartum*, *ire*, to sow, to mend; and
 its compound *resarc-io*, to patch, to mend, to make
 up.

vinc-io, *vinxi*, *vinctum*, *ire*, to bind, to tie; and
 its compounds *devinc-io* and *revinc-io*, to fast, to
 tie, to secure.

LIO.

sal-io, *falii or falui*, *faltum*, *ire*, to leap, to jump;
 and its compounds *assil-io* or *adfil-io*, to leap against,
 to assail; *desil-io*, to leap down, to alight; *exsil-io*
 or *exil-io*, to go out hastily, to start; *insil-io*, to
 leap in; *resil-io*, to leap back, to rebound.

sepel-io, *ivi*, *sepultum*, *ire*, to bury, to inter.

NIO.

ven-io, i, tum, ire, to come; and its compounds *adven-ia*, *even-io*, to come to, to arrive, to happen; *inven-io*, to find; *perven-io*, to arrive at, to reach; *præven-io*, to prevent, to come before; *proven-io*, to come forth, to proceed, to happen.

PIO.

sep-io, sepivi or sepsi, septum, ire, to hedge in; and its compound *consep-io*, to hedge in, to fence, to inclose.

RIO.

fer-io, percussi, — ire, to strike, to knock.
 haur-io, hausi, haustum, ire, to draw, to swallow up, to exhaust; and its compound *exhaur-io*, to empty, to draw out, to exhaust.
 aper-io, aperui, apertum, ire, to open; and *oper-io*, to cover; *comper-io*, to discover; *reper-io*, to find.

TIO.

sent-io, sensi, sensum, ire, to be sensible of, to perceive; and its compounds *assent-io* and *consent-io*, to consent; *dissent-io*, to dissent; *præsent-io*, to foresee, to guess.
 singult-io, ivi, singultum, ire, to sob.

The verbs deponent of this conjugation generally have their preterperfect in *itus sum*, and their supine in *itum*; as

bland-ior, itus sum, itum, iri, to flatter.

The

The following are excepted.

ord-ior, orsus sum, orsum, iri, to begin, to ordain;
and its compound *exord-ior*, to begin.

exper-ior, tus sum, tum, iri, to experience, to try.

opper-ior, tus sum, tum, iri, to wait.

or-ior, ortus sum, ortum, iri, to rise, to arise, to begin; and its compounds *abor-ior*, to be born before the time, to die, to fail; *ador-ior*, to attack, to assault; *coori-or*, *exor-ior*, *obor-ior*, to rise, to spring up, to appear, to be born. N.B. *Orior*, and its compounds, are more frequently of the third conjugation in the present indicative; as *orior*, *oreris* or *orere*, *oritur*, and have in the participle future *oriturus*.

assent-ior, sensus sum, sensum, iri, to assent, to agree.

met-ior, mensus sum, mensum, iri, to measure; and its compounds *dimet-ior*, *emet-ior*, to measure, to reckon, to travel, to end.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

It has already been generally observed, that all verbs active, or having an active signification, govern an accusative case of the noun which comes next to them; as—*time Deum*, fear God; *nosce te ipsum*, know thyself; &c.

Several deponent verbs have the force of active verbs, and govern the accusative; as—*miramur virtutem*, we admire virtue; *revere parentes*, honour your parents.

Neuter

Neuter verbs will sometimes admit of an accusative case, of their own or the like signification; as—*longinquum iter profectus est*, he is gone a long journey; *pugnavit multa prælia*, he fought many battles.

NOMINATIVE AFTER THE VERB.

The verbs *sum*, *forem*, *fio*, *existo*; verbs of naming, in the passive voice, as *appellor*, *nominor*, *nuncupor*, *dicar*, *vocor*; and the like, such as *existimor*, *habeor*, *videor*, *appareo*; those that express *position* or *gesture*, as *maneo*, *cubo*, *jaceo*, *venio*, *eo*, *dormio*, *sedeo*, &c. require the same case after them as they have before; as—*philosophia est cultura animi*, philosophy is the instruction of the mind; *nominor leo*, I am called lion; *nascuntur poetæ*, they are born poets; *mortuus est pauper*, he died poor; *sol apparet pallidus*, the sun appears pale; *doctus habetur*, he passes for a learned man; *solus ambulabam*, I was walking alone; *non datur omnibus esse doctis* or *doctos*, every one is not allowed to be learned.

GENITIVE AFTER THE VERB.

Misereor, *miseresco*, and *satago*, govern the *genitive*; as—*miserere pauperum*, take pity on the poor; *misere-scite civium vestrorum*, take pity on your countrymen; *is rerum suarum satagit*, he takes care of his own affairs.

N. B. *Recordor*, *reminiscor*, *memini*, and *obliviscor*, govern a *genitive* or *accusative*; as—*recordor beneficiorum* or *beneficia*, *sed obliviscor contumelias* or *contum-*

tumeliarum, I remember kindnesses, but I forget reproaches; *memini diei & horæ*, I mind the day and hour; *vivorum memini, nec possum oblivisci mortuorum*, I remember the living, neither can I forget the dead.

When *memini* signifies to *make mention of*, it takes the genitive or the ablative with the preposition *de*.

DATIVE AFTER THE VERB.

Most of the neuter verbs, as well as their compounds, but more especially those signifying *advantage* or *disadvantage*, *profit*, or *hurt*, as *proficio*, *commodo*, *incommodo*, *noceo*, &c. *favour* or *help*, as *faveo*, *auxilior*, &c. *commanding*, *obeying*, *serving*, and *resisting*, as *impero*, *obedio*, *servio*, *obsto*, &c. *threatening* or *being angry with*, and *trusting*, as *misceor*, *irascor*, *fido*, *confido*, &c. in short, all those expressing *acquisition* or *taking from*, as well as those compounded with *bene*, *male*, and *satis*, and those compounded with these twelve prepositions, *ad*, (often changed into *ac*) *ante*, *con*, (often changed into *col*) *de*, *in*, (often changed into *il*) *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *præ*, *pro*, *sub*, (often changed into *sup*) and *super*, govern a *dative case*; as—*studeo grammaticæ*, I study grammar; *favemus nobilitatis*, we favour the nobility; *magna calamitas imminet nobis*, a great misfortune threatens us; *vitæ filii sui metuebat*, he feared for the life of his son; *sapientes imperant cupiditabus suis*, wise men command their passions; *stulti fidunt somnis*, fools trust to dreams; *satisfecit præceptori*, he has satisfied his master; *pacem anteponimus bello*, we prefer peace to war;

præfer

præfer virtutem divitiis, prefer virtue to riches; *homo irascitur mihi*, that man is angry with me; *minatur tibi*, he threatens you.

ABLATIVE AFTER THE VERB.

Verbs expressing *plenty*, *want*, or *privation*, and their *compounds*; also *utor*, *abutor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*, *glorior*, *nitor*, *lætor*; those that express the *care* or *uneasiness* of the mind; and the like, whatever English prepositions may be after them, govern an *ablative case*; as—*abundat divitiis*, he abounds in riches; *egemus pecuniâ*, we want money; *caret omni culpâ*, he is free from every fault; *gaudent felicitate alienâ*, they rejoice at other people's happiness; *potitur urbe*, he is master of the town; *vescor pane*, I live on bread; *nitimur spe*, we rely on hope; *discrucior animo*, I am tormented in my mind.

N. B. *Egeo* and *indigeo* sometimes take the genitive.

PRAXIS ON THE ABOVE RULES.

N. B. Every verb, henceforth, will only be marked 1, 2, 3, 4, according to its conjugation.

Riches and idleness are the pests of virtue and the
oti-um, i n. pest-is, is f.

cause of all evils. Carthage was the rival
mal-um, i n. Carthag-o, inis f. emul-a, æ

of the Roman empire. My lord, I am that
imperi-um, i m. domin-us, i m.

woman, who stood here before you acc.
mulier, is f. sto, v. i. hic. adv. ceram, p.

Patience

Patience often offended becomes fury;
 fæpe, adv. *læs us, a, um* adj. *fio*, v. irr. *furor*, *is* m.
 fraud in childhood will become knavery in
fallaci-a, æ f. *pueriti-a*, æ f. *frau-s*, *dis* f.
 manhood. Nero, at the beginning *abl.*
viril-is, *e*, *æta-s*, *tis* f. *Nero*, *nis* m. *initi-um*, *i* n.
 of his reign, was a good emperor, but
 regn-um, *i* n. *imperator*, *is* m.
 afterwards a most cruel tyrant. Since
postea, adv. *fæv-us*, *a, um* adj. *tyrann-us*, *i* m. *cum*, c.
 a magistrate is the guardian of the public
 exist-o, v. 3. *custo-s*, *dis* com.
 safety, he deserves honour. What, among
salu-s, *tis* f. *mer-eor*, v. 2. *apud*, p.
 private men is called anger, in magistrates
privat-us, *i* m. *dic-o*, v. 3. *iracundi-a*, æ f.
 is denominated pride and cruelty.
 appell-o, v. 1. *superbi-a*, æ f. *crudelita-s*, *tis* f.
 The giving away of other men's property is called
 largitio, *nis* f. *alien-um*, *i* n. *voc-o*, v. 1.
 liberality, villainy perpetrated
liberalita-s, *tis* f. *scel-us*, *eris* n. *commis-us*, *a, um* adj.
 with boldness is stiled bravery.
 audacter, adv. *nomin-o*, v. 1. *fortitud-o*, *inis* f.
 Socrates was accounted a great philosopher;
Socrat-es, *is* m. *hab-eo*, v. 2. *philosoph-us*, *i* m.
 he was thought the wisest man of his
 existim-o, v. 1. *fapi-ens*, *entis* adj.
 age. Xantippe, Socrates' wife, was busy
æt-as, *atis* f. *uxor*, *is* f. *fatag-o*, v. 3.
 during the day and night *acc.* in womanship
per, p. *no-x*, *etis* f. *muliebr-is*, *e* adj.
 quarrels and brawlings. He is not a free man
ir-a, æ f. *rix-a*, æ f. *liber*, *a, um* adj.
 who obeys his passions. Cæsar admonished
 obed-io, v. 4. *cupidit-as*, *atis* f. *admon-eo*, v. 2.

the ambassadors lest they should boast too much
 legat-*us*, *i* m. ne, c. glori-*or*, v. 1. nimis, adv.
 of that kindness. When you shall begin the
 benefici-*um*, *i* n. cum, c. in-*eo*, v. irr.
 battle, remember the riches, glory, and liberty,
 præli-*um*, *i* n. memini, def.
 which await you. Can I go to
 expect-*o*, v. 1. ad-*eo*, v. irr.
 any place where there are not
 ull-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. loc-*us*, *i* m. ubi, adv.
 many hostile monuments
 plurim-*us*, *a*, *um* adj. hostil-*is*, *e* adj. monument-*um*, *i* n.
 of my ancestors? Cato was born for his
 major-*es*, *um* com. nasc-*or*, v. 3.
 country. Bocchus pitied the misfortunes
 patri-*a*, *æ* f. miser-*eor*, v. 2. infortuni-*um*, *i* n.
 of Jugurtha, remembered their relationship,
 Jugurth-*a*, *æ* m. record-*or*, v. 1. cognatio, *nis* f.
 did not forget former kindnesſes
 oblivisc-*or*, v. 3. prior, *is* adj. benefici-*um*, *i* n.
 and pitied his children. In that war many
 misereſc-*o*, v. 3. liber-*i*, *orum* m.
 favoured Marcellus. Cæſar exhorted
 fav-*eo*, v. 2. Marcell-*us*, *i* m. exhort-*or*, v. 1.
 the Æduans to forget their diſputes
 Ædu-*i*, *orum* m. oblivisc-*or*, v. 1. controverſi-*a*, *æ* f.
 and quarrels; and then returned to his
 diſſentio, *nis* f. tunc, adv. red-*eo*, v. irr. ad, p.
 camp. They remembered his advices
 caſtr-*a*, *orum* n. conſili-*um*, *i* n.
 afterwards. Clemency does not only help
 poſtea, adv. tantum, adv. ſuccurr-*o*, v. 3.
 innocence but often virtue. A generous
 innocent-*i*, *a*, *æ* f. ſæpe, adv. generoſ-*us*, *a*, *um* adj.
 man aſſiſts the poor, aids
 auxili-*or*, v. 1. pauper, *is*, com. ſubven-*io*, v. 4.
 the

the needy, succours the distressed,
 inop-*s*, *is* adj. succurr-*o*, v. 3. miser, *a, um* adj.
 heals their wounds, patronises the
 med-*eor*, v. 2. vuln-*us, eris*, n. patrocín-*or*, v. 1.
 children destitute of parents, helps his
 orb-*us, a, um* adj. opitul-*or*, v. 1.
 countrymen, studies their advantage, and
 civ-*is, is* com. stud-*eo*, v. 2. commod-*um, i* n.
 prays to God that he would second his
 supplic-*o*, v. 1. ut, c. annu-*o*, v. 3.
 endeavours. Remember the advice which I gave,
 aus-*um, i* n. memini, v. def. d-*o*, v. 1.
 call to mind the grief which vice
 reminisc-*or*, v. 3. dolor, *is* m. viti-*um, i* n.
 brings with it. Wicked men flatter
 affer-*o*, v. irr. scelerat-*us, a, um* adj. adul-*or*, v. 1.
 the rich. Egefaretus, a man of
 div-*es, itis* adj. Egefaret-*us, i* m. vir, *i* m.
 ancient power, favoured Pompey's
 vet-*us, eris* adj. potenti-*a, æ* f. stud-*eo*, v. Pompei-*us, i* m.
 party. We often trust unknown
 r-*es, erum* f. pl. confid-*o*, v. 3. incognit-*us, a, um* adj.
 things. Let a magistrate consult not his own, but
 consul-*o*, v. 3.
 his citizens interests. As the laws are above
 commod-*um, i* n. ut, c. præsum, v.
 the magistrates, so the magistrates are above the
 sic, adv.
 people. The citizens ought to obey and be
 popul-*us, i*.
 subject to them, and they who oppose
 obtempero, v. 1. advers-*or*, v. 1.
 the magistrates, displease God and hurt the
 displic-*eo*, v. 2. noc-*eo*, v. 2.
 public interest. You humour
 public-*us, a, um* adj. utilit-*as, atis* f. indulg-*eo*, v. 2.
 L 1 2 that

that child too much. We do not easily resist
nimium, adv. facile, adv. resist-o, v. 3.
the allurements of pleasure. A good man will
blanditi-æ, arum f.

adhere to justice and honesty,
 adhæresc. o, v. 3. justiti-a, æ f. honest-as, atis f.
 (whl not lay snares) for the innocent,
 infidi-or, v. 1. innoc-ens, entis adj.

(will not be a slave) to his passions, nor
serv-*io*, v. 4. cupidit-*as*, *atis* f. nec, c.

flatter the rich. He favours the good,
adul-*or*, v. 1. div-*es*, *itis* adj. fav-*eo*, v. 2.

afflicts the wretched, pardons his
succurr-*o*, v. 3. miser, *a*, *um* adj. ignosc-*o*, v. 3.

enemies, envies no one and pleases
invid-*eo*, v. 2. nem-*o*, *inis* do. plac-*eo*, v. 2.

every one. God will bless those who obey his
omn-is, *e* adj. benefac-io, *v.* 3.

laws. The least accomplishment of the
parv-us, *a, um* adj. præstanti-a, *a f.*

foul excels all the good things of the
anim-*us*, *i* m. ante-*eo*, v. irr.

body. He who is to command others, let him
corp-us, oris n. imper-o, v. i.

learn to govern his tongue, to resist
disc-o, v. 3. moder-or, v. 1. resist-o, v. 3.

pleasures, to struggle against and oppose the
 lust-or, v. i. obst-o, v. i.

beginnings of anger. The barbarians
principi-um, i n. *ir-a, æ f.* *barbar-us, a, um adj.*

possess a great number of cattle, of
 pot-ior, v. 4. numer-us, i m. pec-us, oris n.

which they are very desirous. Virginius
 cupid-us, a, um adj.

begged that they would pity him and his
 or-o, v. 1. ut, c. miser-eor, v. 2.

daughter

daughter. Pity, said he to them, such great
 tant-us, *a, um* adj.
 hardships, take pity on this unfortunate
 labor, *is* m. miserefc-o, v. 3. infeli-x, *cis* adj.
 king, who never hurt the least
 nunquam, adv. noc-eo, v. 2. parv-us, *a, um* adj.
 of his subjects. He threatened him with death, *acc.*
 civ-is, *is* m. min-or, v. 1.
 unless he would marry his daughter, who excelled all
 ni, c. nub-o, v. 3.
 the girls of the East. She complied
 puell-a, *æ* f. Ori-ens, *entis* m. obsecund-o, v. 1.
 with the will of her parents, served
 volunt-as, *atis* f. famul-or, v. 1.
 and waited on them, and daily
 ministr-o, v. 1. quotidie, adv.
 prayed to God, that he would not be angry
 supplic-o, v. 1. ne, c. irasc-or, v. 3.
 with the sins of the world. He that resists
 peccat-um, *i* n. repugn-o, v. 1.
 his evil inclinations, obeys God, and
 mal-us, *a, um* adj. affect-us, *ûs* m.
 deserves greater praises than the general who
 mer-eor, v. 2. lau-s, *dis* f. du-x, *cis* com.
 vanquishes mighty armies and takes
 fund-o, v. 3. magn-us, *a, um* adj. expugn-o, v. 1.
 the strongest towns, but serves his
 munit-us, *a, um* adj. urb-s, *is* f. serv-io, v. 4.
 passions, which he cannot govern. Be not angry with
 us, we take care of our affairs. Your brother was
 fatag-o, v. 3. r-es, *ei* f.
 overwhelmed with grief. The old man
 confic-io, v. 3. mæror, *is* m. sen-ex, *is* m
 discharged all the honours and offices of the
 perfung-or, v. 3. mun-us, *eris* n.
 common-

commonwealth. They envied him for the
 respublic-*a, æ f.* propter, *p.*
 glory *acc.* of his actions. Mars was the god that
 actio, *nis f.*
 presided over arms. You ought not to be
 præsid-*eo, v. 2.* arm-*a, orum n.*
 angry with this young man. He durst not
 adolesc-*ens, entis com.* aud-*eo, v. irr.*
 trust the bravery of his soldiers, he
 confid-*o, v. 3.* virt-*us, utis f.* mil-*es, itis m.*
 resolved to retreat and trust to the night and
 statu-*o, v. 3.* reced-*o, v. 3.* fid-*o, v. 3.*
 darkness: he believed the reports that were
 tenebr-*æ, arum f.* cred-*o, v. 3.* rumor, *is m.*
 spread about and began to mistrust his
 spars-*us, a, um adj.* cœpi, *v. irr.* diffid-*o, v. 3.*
 affairs, and despair of safety. Cæsar's army
 desper-*o, v. 1.* fal-*us, utis f.*
 enjoyed very good health and very great
 ut-*or, v. 3.* valetud-*o, inis f.* summ-*us, a, um*
 plenty of water, and abounded in every
 copi-*a, æ f.* abund-*o, v. 1.* omn-*is, e adj.*
 kind of provision except
 gen-*us, eris n.* com meat-*us, ūs m.* præter, *p.*
 corn *acc.* The enemies' army also wanted
 frument-*um, i n.* etiam, *adv.* car-*eo, v. 2.*
 corn, but they fed upon milk and venison.
 fed, *c.* vesc-*or, v. 3.* lac, *tis n.* ferin-*a, æ f.*
 I have satisfied my creditors, and done
 satisfac-*io, v. 3.* creditor, *is*
 good to the state. (I have done harm)
 benefac-*io, v. 3.* respublic-*a, æ f.* malefac-*io, v. 3.*
 to no one, therefore God blessed me and
 nem-*o, inis m.* igitur, *adv.* benedic-*o, v. 3.*
 cursed my enemies. We ought (to depend upon)
 maledic-*o, v. 3.* nit-*or, v. 3.*
 virtue

virtue rather than blood ; (let us take pleasure
 potiùs, adv. sanguis, *nis* m. gaud-eo, v. irr.
 in) justice, and delight in the hope of
 æquit-as, *atis* f. delect-or, v. 1.
 eternal felicity : then, if
 ætern-us, *a, um* adj. felicit-as, *atis* f. tunc, adv.
 (we labour under) any disease, we shall not be
 labor-o, v. 1. morb-us, *i* m.
 destitute of comfort. Nature wants
 destitu-o, v. 3. solati-um, *i* n. eg-eo, v. 2.
 few things ; the rich indeed
 pauc-us, *a, um* adj. div-es, *itis* adj. quidem, adv.
 feed on dainty things, but the
 epul-or, v. 1. opim-us, *a, um* adj. dap-es, *ium* f.
 poor live on barley bread.
 pauper, *is* adj. victit-o, v. 1. hordace-us, *a, um* adj.
 He that is free from fault wants
 vac-o, v. 1. culp-a, *æ* f. indig-eo, v. 2.
 no excuse, he depends upon his
 null-us, *a, um* excusatio, *nis* f. innit-or, v. 3.
 innocence. Fortune favoured our first attempt.
 innocenti-a, *æ* f. aspir-o, v. 1. labor, *is* m.
 Our soldiers rode up to the city.
 mil-es, *itis* m. adequit-o, v. 1. urb-s, *is* f.
 When they approached the wall, the enemies
 cum, c. acced-o, v. 3. mur-us, *i* m.
 threw themselves into the river acc. and
 projec-to, v. 3. in, p. flum-en, *inis* n.
 endeavoured to swim to land. Flatterers
 con-or, v. 1. adn-o, v. 1. terr-a, *æ* f. adulator, *is* m.
 were not wanting to Alexander, who were preferred
 desum, v. præfer-o, v. irr.
 by the king before his true friends.
 ver-us, *a, um* adj.
 Lycurgus forbade the Lacedemonians
 Lycurg-us, *i* m. interdic-o, v. 3. Lacedemoni-us, *i* m.
 the

the use of gold and silver. A
 us-us, *ūs* m. aur-um, *i* n. argent-um, *i* n.
 brave man yields not to any
 fort-is, *e* adj. vir, *i*, m. succumb-o, v. 3. null-us, *a, um* adj.
 perturbation of mind or fortune; he does
 perturbatio, *nis* f. anim-us, *i* m. fortun-a, *a* f.
 not offer himself to dangers without
 offer-o, v. irr. pericul-um, *i* n. sine, p.
 reason; he assists his country in
 caus-a, *a* f. subven-io, v. 4. patri-a, *a* f.
 danger and if necessity require, he
 periclit-ans, *antis* adj. postul-o, v. 1.
 prefers death to slavery and baseness.
 antepon-o, v. 3. servit-us, *utis* f. turpitud-o, *inis* f.
 Boys delight to play with their equals,
 gaud-eo, v. irr. collud-o, v. 3. par, *is* do.
 with whom they live. Play is
 conviv-o, v. 3. lus-us, *ūs* m.
 agreeable to their disposition. They who
 conson-o, v. 1. ingeni-um, *i* n.
 gape after gain will never
 inhi-o, v. 1. lucr-um, *i* n. nunquam, adv.
 perform the duty of a friend; the love
 fung-or, v. 3. offici-um, *i* n. amor, *is* m.
 of money is fixed in their souls and
 pecuni-a, *a* f. inhær-eo, v. 2. anim-us, *i* m.
 the neglect of their interest does not
 neglect-us, *ūs* m. commod-um, *i* n.
 suit their manners. He congratulated the
 conven-io, v. mo-s, *ris* m. gratul-or, v. 1.
 general, because he had spared the conquered.
 imperator, *is* m. quòd, c. parc-o, v. 3. vict-us, *i* m.
 Africa is full of wild beasts, abounds in
 Afric-a, *a* f. scat-eo, v. 2. fer-a, *a* f. exuber-o, v. 1.
 fruits, and overflows with gold and silver.
 fruct-us, *ūs* m. circumflû-o, v. 3.

VERBS HAVING TWO REGIMENS.

When an active verb has two regimens, that is, governs two cases, the one is called the *direct* or *proper* regimen of the verb, and the other the *indirect* regimen.

The *direct* or *proper* regimen of the verb active is always the *accusative*.

The *indirect* regimen is always preceded in English by some of the prepositions, *to, for, of, with, from, in, on, upon, &c.*

I. All verbs active which signify *acquiring, comparing, confessing, declaring*, as *quæro, acquiro, comparo, declaro, dico, &c;* *denying, giving, promising*, as *nego, inficio, promitto, polliceor, &c;* or *relating, restoring, taking away, threatening*, as *narro, reddo, retribuo, aufero, eripio, miror, &c;* besides many others expressing the like, govern the *accusative* of the thing done and the *dative* of the person or thing to or for whom or which that thing is done; as—*do panem pauperi*, I give bread to the poor; *amas tibi soli divitias*, you love riches for you alone; *Deus vitam æternam justo promittit*, God promises eternal life to the just; *eripuit fratrem tuum morti*, he rescued your brother from death; *minatus est mortem mihi*, he threatened me with death.

But if that active verb express any kind of motion, as, *to call to, to excite or encourage to*, as *voco, incito, animo*; *to engage to, to exhort to, to invite to, to lead to*, as *provoco, hortor, invito, stimulo*,

and the like; that indirect regimen is put in the *accusative* with the preposition *ad*; as—*vocavit me ad se*, he called me to him; *te hortor ad laborem*, I exhort you to work; *hæc via ducit ad virtutem*, this way leads to virtue.

N. B. After the verbs to write, *scribo*; to send, *mitto*; and to carry, *fero*; the *dative* only or the *accusative* with *ad* may be indifferently used; as—*scribo tibi* or *ad te epistolam*, I write you a letter; *mitte mihi* or *ad me servum tuum*, send me your servant.

II. Verbs signifying *teaching*, *asking*, *entreating*, *concealing*, *warning*, such as *doceo*, *rogo*, *oro*, *obsecro*, *moneo*, and a few others, govern *two accusatives*, the one of the person, and the other of the thing; as—*doceo pueros grammaticam*, I teach the boys grammar; *posce Deum veniam*, ask pardon of God; *unum me rogavit*, he desired one thing of me; *pacem te poscimus omnes*, we all ask thee for peace; *hanc rem te monemus*, we warn you of this thing; *celavit me hanc rem*, he concealed this thing from me.

Some of the above verbs, instead of the *accusative* of the thing, sometimes take the *dative* of the person and sometimes the *ablative* of the thing with the preposition *de*; as—*celavit mihi hanc rem*, or *de hac re*, he concealed this thing from me; *monemus te hanc rem*, or *de hac re*, we warn you of this thing.

Sometimes the verbs of *asking* change the *accusative* of the person into the *ablative* with the preposition *a* or *ab*.

N. B. Those

N. B. Those verbs which govern two accusatives in the active form, still preserve the *accusative* of the thing in the *passive* voice; as—*pueri docentur grammaticam*, the boys are taught grammar; *monemur officium*, we are warned of our duty.

III. Verbs expressing *abstaining*, taking away or removing, such as *abstineo*, *aufero*, *removeo*, &c; *borrowing*, *buying*, as *mutuo*, *emo*, &c; *receiving*, *obtaining*, as *accipio*, *impetro*; some of *asking*, as *peto*, *posco*; *enquiring*, as *sciscitor*; *desiring*, *entreating*, as *percontor*, *oro*; *freeing*, *redeeming*, *delivering*, *dismissing*, *banishing from*, as *libero*, *redimo*, &c; *ceasing*, *desisting*, as *cesso*, *desisto*; *expecting*, *hoping*, as *expecto*, *spero*, &c; *hearing of or from*, as *audio*; those expressing *distance*, *difference*, or *dissention*, as *disto*, *differo*, *dissentio*, &c, besides others of the same signification, govern the *accusative* of the *thing* and the *ablative* with the preposition *a* or *ab* of the *person* from whom the thing is bought, received, expected, obtained, &c. as—*ab alio expectes*, *alteri quod feceris*, expect from another what you have done to another; *accepi literas a patre meo*, *qui petivit a me librum*, I received letters from my father, who asked me for a book; *hoc a sorore tuâ didici*, I have learned this from your sister; *Christus redemit hominem a morte*, Christ redeemed man from death; *hoc audivit mater mea ex or a fratre tuo*, my mother heard this from your brother; *ex literis tuis cognovi*, I have known by your letters.

N. B. The preposition *e* or *ex* is more generally

used after verbs expressing *knowing, perceiving*, as
cognosco, intelligo.

PRAXIS ON THE ABOVE RULES.

The law of nature forbids to do injury to another.
 prohib-*eo*, 2. fac-*io*, 3. alter, *a, um*.
 We provide food for our children, and the
 par-*o*, 1. vict-*us*, *us m.* liber-*i*, *orum, m.*
 masters of family provide food not only for them-
 pater familias folum, adv.
 selves, but also for their wives and children.
 etiam, adv. conju-*x*, *gis f.*
 We all easily give right counsels to the
 facile, adv. d-*o*, 1. rect-*us*, *a, um*
 sick, when we are well. If any one would
 æg-*er, ra, rum* cum, c. val-*eo*, 2. quis, &c.
 have made a discovery of the conspiracy, which
 indic-*o*, 1. de, p. conjuratio, *nis f.*
 had been formed against the republic, the senate
 fio, irr. contra, p.
 decreed as a reward to a slave, liberty,
 decern-*o*, 3. præmi-*um*, *i n.* serv-*us*, *i m.* libert-*as*, *atis f.*
 to a freeman, impunity and a great sum
 liber, *i m.* impunit-*as*, *atis f.* summ-*a*, *a f.*
 of money. Many preferred these rewards
 complur-*es*, *ium* antepo-*o*, 3.
 to the advantages which Cataline had promised
 commod-*um*, *i n.* promitt-*o*, 3.
 them. As Trajan may be compared with Romulus,
 Trajan-*us*, *i m.* æqu-*o*, 1.
 so Antoninus with Numa. We also
 sic, adv. Num-*a*, *a m.* etiam, adv.
 compare Virgil with Homer, but the learned
 compar-*o*, 1. Homer-*us*, *i m.* doct-*us*, *a, um*
 prefer

prefer ancient authors to
 præpon-o, 3. antiqu-us, a, um auctor, is m.
 modern. A covetous man lays up riches
 recentior, is com. avar-us, i m. par-o, 1.
 for others, not for himself, he denies himself
 ali-us, a, um deneg-o, 1.
 necessities, extorts money from the
 necessari-us, a, um — extorqu-eo, 2.
 poor, is unwilling to give assistance to
 pauper, is com. fer-o, irr. auxili-um, i n.
 the miserable, and wrests the estates from
 miser, a, um erip-io, 3. bon-um, i n.
 widows and orphans. They asked aid
 vidu-a, æ f. pupill-us, i m. pet-o, 3. auxili-um, i n.
 of Cæsar, and he procured tranquillity for the city.
 par-io, 3. oti-um, i n. civit-as, atis f.
 The custom of our ancestors requires it of
 mo-s, ris m. major-es, um m. postul-o, 1.
 me. I have heard all from the beginning. He has
 aud-io, 4. principi-um, i n.
 paid me part of the money which he owed
 solv-o, 3. par-s, tis f. deb-eo, 2.
 my father; he promises me the whole debt.
 tot-us, a, um debit-um, i n.
 I threaten him with prison. They had given great
 min-or, 1. vincul-um, i n. affer-o, irr.
 assistance to their countrymen. My brother gave
 adjument-um, i n. civ-is, is com.
 me a penknife. He was unwilling to conform
 scalpell-um, i n. conform-o, 1.
 himself to his brother's inclination, which provoked
 volunt-as, atis f. laceß-o, 3.
 him to anger; he therefore challenged him to a
 ir-a, æ f. igitur, adv. provoc-o, 1.
 combat: he spirited up others to revolt
 certam-en, inis n. anim-o, 1. defectio, nis f.
 and

and spurred them on to arms. The love of
 stimul-o, 1. arm-a, orum n. amor, is m.
 money prompts men to villainous practices, allures
 instig-o, 1. mal-us, a, um ar-s, tis f. allic-io, 3.
 them to wickedness, and drives them to
 nequiti-a, æ f. impell-o, 3. in, p.
 cheating acc; but the love of praise rouses men
 frau-s, dis f. lau-s, dis f. fuscit-o, 1.
 to their duty, disposes their minds to
 offici-um, i n. inclin-o, 1. anim-us, i m.
 industry, and incites them to glorious
 diligenti-a, æ f. incit-o, 1. præclar-us, a, um
 actions. He invited the young woman to a
 facin-us, oris n. invit-o, 1. virg-o, inis f.
 feast and enticed her to dishonesty, but she
 epul-æ, arum f. pellic-io, 3. stupr-um, i n.
 escaped from his hands, and fled to her father.
 evad-o, 3. e, p. confug-io, 3.
 Socrates politely admitted his friends to his
 comiter, adv. admitt-o, 3. in, p.
 conversation and advice, and thus formed
 fermo, nis m. consili-um, i n. ita, adv. form-o, 1.
 them to the likeness of his own manners. He
 similitud-o, inis f. mo-s, ris m.
 often invited them to supper, and exhorted
 sæpe, adv. voc-o, 1. cæn-a, æ f. hort-or, 1.
 them to the love of wisdom. Alexander
 studi-um, i n. sapienti-a, æ f.
 sent from Arabia much frankincense to
 mitt-o, 3. ex, p. mult-us, a, um thu-s, ris n.
 his preceptor Leonidas, who had
 pædagog-us, i m. Leonid-as, æ m.
 reprimanded him, because, being as yet a boy, he
 incus-o, 1. quia, c. adhuc, adv.
 threw frankincense into the fire acc. with both
 injic-io, 3. in, p. ign-is, is m. amb-o, &c.
 hands.

hands. He wrote a letter to his mother, and sent two

of his friends *abl.* who should carry jewels
ex, p. fer-o, irr. gemm-a, æ f.

and costly garments to his sister. Solomon
pretios-us, a, um vest-is, is f.

asked wisdom of God, and God said to him, "because
rog-o, 1.

"thou hast asked this thing, and hast not asked of
posc-o, 3. or-o, 1.

"me long life nor riches, nor the life of thy
long-us, a, um nec, c.

enemies, I have granted thy request.

"inimic-us, i m. annu-o, 3. petitio, nis f.

"Behold I have given thee a wife and
ecce, adv. do, 1. sapi-ens, entis

"understanding heart. I have also bestowed what
intellig-ens, entis cor, dis n. larg-ior, 4.

"thou didst not ask of me, riches and honour." A
pet-o, 3. glori-a, æ f.

wife father will teach his daughters chastity and
doc-eo, 2. fili-a, æ f. pudiciti-a, æ f.

complaissance to their husbands *acc.* He will teach
obsequi-um, i n. in, p. vir, i m.

his sons justice, frugality, tempe-
fili-us, i m. justiti-a, æ f. frugalit-as, atis f. tempe-

rance, and fortitude; and this he will
ranti-a, æ f. fortitud-o, inis f.

chiefly beg of his masters that he
presertim, adv. or-o, 1. præceptor, is m. ut, c.

may be taught the liberal arts. We are often
erud-io, 4. liberal-is, e ar-s, tis f.

asked for money by those who are not in want.
rog-o, 1. eg-eo, 2.

For a long time he concealed his poverty
diu, adv. cel-o, 1. paupert-as, atis f.

from

from his friend, who, after he had been made
postquam, c. fio, irr.

acquainted with his misfortune, clothed him
certior, is adj. de, p. calamit-as, atis f. indu-o, 3.

with precious garments, and gave him a large
larg-ior, 4. magn-us, a, um

sum of money. Alexander, we all beg peace
summ-a, æ f. posc-o, 3.

of you, we demand of you our liberty, we require
reposc-o, 3. flagit-o, 1.

of your friends the public money, which they have

spent on their pleasures and lusts acc. What
profund-o, 3. in, p. libid-o, inis f.

their friends dare not admonish kings of, that they
aud-co, irr. mon-co, 2.

will be admonished of in books, if they read. They
admon-co, 2. leg-o, 3.

complained of the avarice of the magistrates, from
quer-or, 3. de, p. avariti-a, æ f.

whom they expected no remedy
expect-o, 1. null-us, a, um remedi-um, i n.

to their miseries. They had received many
miseri-a, æ f. accip-io, 3. plu-s, ris adj.

favours from Cæsar, and became enemies to the
benefici-um, i n. fio, irr.

senate from whom they could not obtain their
senat-us, us m. impetr-o, 1.

pay. Enough has been said of justice,
stipendi-um, i n. fatis, ind. dic-o, 3.

we will next speak of beneficence and of
deinceps, adv. dic-o, 3. benefici-um, a, æ f.

liberality. Some people are taught temperance by
nonnull-us, a, um

want. Many mindful of Sulla's
egest-as, atis f. memor, is Sull-a, æ m.

successes,

successes, who saw common
 success-*us, ūs m.* vid-*eo, 2.* gregari-*us, a, um*
 soldiers made senators, hoped the
 mil-*es, itis m.* fact-*us, a, um* senator, *is m.* sper-*o, 1.*
 same reward from victory.
 idem, eadem, &c. præmi-*um, i n.* victori-*a, æ f.*
 Aristippus, being asked in what a wise man
 interrog-*o, 1.*
 differed from a fool, answered, send
 differ-*o, irr.* insipi-*ens, entis* respond-*eo, 2.*
 them both to strangers, and you will
 uterque, utraque, &c. ignot-*us, a, um*
 know. The wise man will be received with the
 disc-*o, 3.* accip-*io, 3.*
 greatest honours, the fool will be despised. He
 contemn-*o, 3.*
 bought horses of the merchants with the money which
 em-*o, 3.* mercator, *is m.*
 he had borrowed from Cæsar, afterwards he begged of
 mutu-*or, 1.* postea, adv. pet-*o, 3.*
 him that he would free this country from
 ut, c. liber-*o, 1.* patri-*a, æ f.*
 slavery. The greatness of the money
 servit-*us, utis f.* magnitud-*o, inis f.*
 withdrew him from honesty to wickedness.
 abstrah-*o, 3.* honest-*um, i n.* in, p. prav-*um, i n.*
 He demanded of the senate that the nobility
 postul-*o, 1.* nobil-*es, ium pl.*
 should be removed from offices.
 amov-*eo, 2.* magistrat-*us, ūs m.*

Condemning, accusing, delivering, &c.

Verbs expressing *condemning*, as *arguo, accuso, defero*, &c; *acquitting*, as *absolvo, libero*, and the like, govern the *accusative* of the *person* and the *genitive* or *ablative* of the *crime* or thing; but more generally the *genitive*, an *ablative* being understood; as—*te hujus furti*, or *hoc furto, non arguo*, I do not accuse you of that crime; *illum homicidio* or *homicidii absolverunt*, they acquitted him of manslaughter.

Buying, selling, &c.

Verbs of *valuing, buying, selling*, such as *æstimo, emo, vendo*, and the like, generally govern the *ablative* for the price; except the following adjectives, which are put in the *genitive*, when they are used without a substantive; *tanti, quanti, pluris, majoris, minoris*, and *magni, parvi, multi, maximi, plurimi, hujus*. The five first can only be used with verbs expressing *buying* and *selling*; whereas they all may be used with verbs of *valuing*; as—*senatus æstimavit quaternis sestertiis, tritici modium*, the senate valued the measure of corn, at four sesterces; *vendidit hic auro patriam*, he sold his country for gold; *magis illa juvant, quæ pluris emuntur*, the things which cost more, please the more; *non pluris vendo quam cæteri, fortasse etiam minoris*, I do not sell dearer than others, perhaps even cheaper; *æstimo patrem tuum magni, sed tu parvi pendis illum*, I value your father much, but you little regard him.

Filling,

Filling, loading.

Verbs expressing *filling, loading and unloading*, such as *impleo, onero, exonero*; *binding, unbinding or loosening, hindering, depriving, clothing*, such as *astringo, impedio, solvo, expedio, privo, nudo, induo*, and the like, govern the *accusative* with the *ablative*, without any preposition; as—*implevit dolium vino*, he filled the cask with wine; *cumulavit sororem meam beneficiis*, he loaded my sister with kindnesses; *nudaverunt regem auxilio*, they deprived the king of assistance.

N. B. All nouns expressing the *instrument* used in doing any thing, the *cause* for which it is done, the *manner* in which it is done, as well as the name of the *part*, are put in the *ablative* without any preposition; as—

Instrument.

Percussit eum gladio, he struck him with a sword; *id aptissimo calamo delineavisti*, you wrote that with a good pen.

Cause.

Hoc feci amore virtutis, I did this for the sake of virtue.

Manner.

Superabit te frater tuus labore et diligentia, your brother will surpass you in work and diligence.

Part.

Lupum auribus teneo, I hold the wolf by the ears.

Sum, habeo, do, verto, tribuo, and dico, when they signify to *bring, to cause*, govern *two datives*, the one

of the *person* and the other of the *thing*, both in the active and passive voice; as—*hoc tibi dolori erit*, this will cause you some grief; *rex Romanis auxilio fuit*, the king brought aid to the Romans; *do tibi hoc pignori*, I give you this as a pledge; &c.

Interdico, to *forbid*, governs the *dative* of the *person* and the *ablative* of the *thing*; as—*interdico tibi domo meâ*, I forbid you my house.

PRAXIS ON THE ABOVE RULES.

The senate neither cleared the king of the fault,
liber-o, 1. culp-a, æ f.
nor accused him of it. Because the nobles accuse
argu-o, 3. quoniam, c. accus-o, 1.
you of injustice, who have bestowed the highest
injustiti-a, æ f. impon-o, 3. summ-us, a, um
honour upon me, they condemn themselves of
condemn-o, 1.
idleness and sloth. If you be an unjust
sordidi-a, æ f. ignavi-a, æ f. iniqu-us, a, um
judge against me, acc. I will condemn you for
jud-ex, icis com. in, p.
the same fault. The Gauls
idem, eadem, &c. crim-en, inis n. Gall-i, orum m.
and Belgæ differ among themselves in language,
inter, p. lingu-a, æ f.
customs, and laws. When an oracle had
institut-um, i n. cum, c. oracul-um, i n.
admonished *pot.* Mycerinus, king of Egypt of the
admon-eo, 2. Ægypt-us, i f.
shortness of life, he thought of this method,
brevit-as, atis f. excogit-o, 1. mod-us, i m.
by

by which he convicted the oracle of falsehood;
convinc-o, 3. mendaci-um, i n.

he indulged sleep as little as he could.
indulg-eo, 2. somn-us, i m. quam minimè, adv.

The judges absolved him from the crimes of
absolv-o, 3. crim-en, inis n.

which he was accused, after he had cleared *pot.*
accus-o, 1. postquam, c. purg-o, 1.

himself of all the things, that had been alledged by his
affer-o, irr.

enemies. The judge acquitted the man of murder, but
liber-o, 1. cæd-es, is f.

he was accused of theft, of which he was condemned.
argu-o, 3. furt-um, i n.

Virtue is valued at a great price. We ought to
æstim-o, 1. preti-um, i n.

esteem virtue at a great price; it is to be bought
æstim-o, 1. em-o, 3.

neither for gold nor silver. Men esteem
aur-um, i n. argent-um, i n.

riches more than learning, which is valued
plu-s, ris n. doctrin-a, æ f. pend-o, 3.

at a low rate. They esteem pleasure at a
parv-us, a, um duc-o, 3.

very great rate, though it be often bought with
plurim-us, a um quamvis, c.

pain. They sold arms to the Gauls at a
dolor, is m. vend-o, 3. Gall-us, i m.

great price, who were so terrible to the
adeo, adv. terribil-is, e

neighbouring kings, that they purchased *pot.* peace
finitim-us, a, um ut, c. merc-or, 1. pa-x, cis f.

with a large sum. You will be esteemed
ing-ens, entis pecuni-a, æ f. hab-eor, 2.

by others as much as you (shall) be *pot.* by
ali-us, a, um tant-um, i, n.

yourself.

yourself. After he had plundered *pot.* the allies
spoli-o, 1. *foci-us, i m.*
of all their fortune, he loaded his ships with
fortun-a, æ f. *oner-o, 1.* *nav-is, is f.*
booty, then he filled the city with
præd-a, æ f. *tunc, adv.* *repl-eo, 2.*
blood and slaughter and satiated himself with
fangui-s, nis m. *cæd-es, is f.* *fati-o, 1.*
revenge. You have freed my mind from
ultio, nis f. *liber-o, 1.* *anim-us, i m.*
care, you have loaded me with presents,
cur-a, æ f. *cumul-o, 1.* *don-um, i n.*
you have admitted me to your table, I do not
communic-o, 1. *haud, adv.*
think myself worthy of such honour. Jugurtha
dign-or, 1. *tal-is, e* *Jugurth-a, æ m.*
loads his old friends with promises,
oner-o, 1. *vet-us, eris* *promiss-um, i n.*
fills new ones with presents, and
expl-eo, 2. *nov-us, a, um* *mun-us, eris n.*
obliges the senators by kindnesses and
devinc-io, 4. *benefici-um, i n.*
complaisance, then he deprives his brothers of their life
obsequi-um, i n. *priv-o, 1.*
and kingdom, cheats their friends of their possessions,
fraud-o, 1. *possessio, nis f.*
and with their spoils enriches his associates.
spoli-um, i n. *dit-o, 1.* *foci-us, i m.*
A glutton overloads himself with meat and
gulos-us, i m. *ingurgit-o, 1.* *cib-us, i m.*
drink, but a wise man is unwilling to oppress
pot-us, us m. *opprim-o, 3.*
his stomach with dainties, because
stomach-us, i m. *dap-es, ium* *fopim-us, a um*
intemperance deprives men of the right
intemperanti-a, æ f. *orb-o, 1.* *rect-us, a, um*
use

use of reason. The Germans do not
 us-*us*, *ūs* m. ratio, *nis* f. German-*us*, *i* m.
 mind agriculture, and the greater part
 stud-*eo*, 2. agricultur-*a*, *æ* f. par-*s*, *tis* f.
 of their food consists in milk, cheefe,
 vict-*us*, *ūs* m. consist-*o*, 3. lac, *tis* n. case-*us*, *i* m.
 and flesh; nor has any one a
 car-*o*, *nis* f. neque, c. hab-*eo*, 2. quisquam
 certain portion of land or
 cert-*us*, *a*, *um* mod-*us*, *i* m. ag-*er*, *ri* m. aut, c.
 distinct boundaries, left, taken by the
 propri-*us*, *a*, *um* fin-*is*, *is* com. ne, c. capt-*us*, *a*, *um*
 pleasantness of fields, they should exchange
 amæniti-*as*, *atis* f. ag-*er*, *ri* m. commut-*o*, *i*.
 the study of war for agriculture. Two brothers, kings
 of Thrace, chose Philip king of
 Thraci-*a*, *æ* f. elig-*o*, 3. Philipp-*us*, *i* m.
 Macedonia umpire of their differences; but
 arbit-*er*, *ri* m. discordi-*a*, *æ* f.
 Philip at first filled their minds with
 primò, adv. repl-*eo*, 2.
 vain hopes, at last he bound both
 van-*us*, *a*, *um* postremo, adv. conjic-*io*, 3.
 princes with chains acc. robbed them of their
 in, p. vincul-*um*, *i* n. fraud-*o*, *i*.
 kingdom, and stripped them of all their possessions.
 spoli-*o*, *i*. possessio, *nis* f.
 Scotland is a barren country, but the inhabitants
 Scoti-*a*, *æ* f. steril-*is*, *e* regio, *nis* f. incol-*a*, *æ* com.
 overcome that barrenness of the soil by
 vinc-*o*, 3. sterilit-*as*, *atis* f. sol-*um*, *i* n.
 care and cultivation. Cynegirus, an Athenian
 cur-*a*, *æ* f. cult-*us*, *ūs* m.
 soldier, at the battle of Marathon,
 in, p. pugn-*a*, *æ* f. Marathoni-*us*, *a*, *um*
 when

when he had driven *pot.* the Persians to their
 cum, c. ag-o, 3. Pers-a, æ m. in, p.
 ships, *acc.* held a loaded ship with his
 ten-eo, 2. onust-us, a, um
 right hand; his right hand being cut off *abl.*
 dext-er, ra, rum amputat-us, a, um
 he seized it with his left, which
 comprehend-o, 3. sinist-er, ra, rum
 when he had also lost, *pot.* he at last
 etiam, c. amitt-o, 3. ad postremum
 held the ship with his teeth. Codrus
 detin-eo, 2. den-s, tis m.
 fought death by the same means by which
 quær-o, 3. idem, eadem, &c. ar-s, tis f.
 cowards use to seek life. When Attica was
 ignav-us, i m. soleo, irr.
 ravaged with fire and sword by the
 vast-o, i. ign-is, is m. ferr-um, i n.
 Dorians, he, informed by the oracle,
 Doriens-is, is com. admon-eo, 2. oracul-um, i n.
 exposed himself to a troop of the enemy,
 objic-io, 3. glob-us, i m.
 forced one of them, *abl.* whom he had struck
 compell-o, 3. ex, p. percut-io, 3.
 with his hook, to kill him. Thus the Athenians,
 fal-x, cis f. ita, adv.
 by the bravery of their leader, were freed
 virt-us, utis f. du-x, cis m. liber-o, i.
 from war. Micipsa sent Jugurtha with horse
 cum, p. equ-es, itis m.
 and foot to the assistance of the Romans,
 ped-es, itis m. auxili-um, i n.
 thinking his courage would be *inf. fut.* an honour
 existim-o, i. virt-us, utis f. glori-a, æ f.
 to his kingdom. The tribunes principally
 tribun-us, i m. maximè, adv.
 alledged

alleged as a crime to Coriolanus, that he held *inf.* the
do, 1. hab-*eo*, 2.

people in contempt. He looked upon such
pleb-*s*, *is* f. despiciat-*us*, *us* m. duc-*o*, 3. tal-*is*, *e*

an accusation as a glory to him. The
criminatio, *nis* f. lau-*s*, *dis*. f.

girl was left as a pledge to this
puell-*a*, *æ* f. relinquo, 3. pign-*us*, *oris* n.

woman for the money *abl.* and it is charged
mulier, *is* f. pro, p. argent-*um*, *i* n. vert-*o*, 3.

to you as a fault, that you took her away
viti-*um*, *i* n. quod, c. rap-*io*, 3.

by force. You ought to be ashamed of your crimes,
v-*is*, *is* f.

they will be handed down to memory to posterity.
trad-*o*, 3. poster-*i*, *orum* m.

Scaurus forbade his son his fight, because,
interdic-*o*, 3. conspect-*us*, *us* m. quod, c.

in a battle against the Cimbri, *acc.* being
præli-*um*, *i* n. adversus, p. Cimbr-*i*, *orum* m.

seized with a sudden fear, he had
corrip-*io*, 3. subit-*us*, *a, um* terror, *is* m.

deserted *pot.* his general. Metellus was forbidden fire
defer-*o*, 3. du-*x*, *cis* m.

and water, because he opposed a law *dat.* which Satur-
quia, c. obfist-*o*, 3.

ninus was to pass.
fer-*o*, irr.

OF A VERB FOLLOWED BY ANOTHER.

I. When two verbs come together in a sentence,
and the first does not express any motion, the follow-
ing, having no *nominative* case expressed or under-
stood, must be put in the infinitive mood, whether

O o

the

the sign *to* be prefixed or not ; as—*volo legere*, I will read ; *improbus est homo, qui beneficium scit sumere, & reddere nescit*, he is a base man, who knows how to accept of a kindness and knows not how to return it ; *solebat dicere*, he used to say.

II. But if the first verb expresses *motion*, the second must be put in the supine in *um* ; and that supine governs the same case as the verb itself ; as—*eo lusum*, I am going to play ; *veniunt spectatum ludos*, they come to see the games ; *pars exercitus missa est depopulatum agros Romanos, & tentatum urbem ipsam*, part of the army was sent to lay waste the Roman territories, and to attempt the city itself.

III. If the second verb have no supine, the gerund in *dum* must be used with the preposition *ad* before it ; as—*venio ad studendum*, I come to study. Or it may be turned by the potential mood with the conjunction *ut* ; as—*venio ut studeam*, I come to study, i. e. that I may study.

IV. When an infinitive mood is preceded by an adjective, such as *facilis*, *credibilis*, *difficilis*, *dulcis*, *memorabilis*, *mirabilis*, *incredibilis*, *necessarius*, *terribilis*, *turpis*, *utilis*, and the like, besides the nouns substantive *fas*, *nefas*, *opus*, that infinitive mood must be made by the supine in *u* ; as—*cibus concoctu facilis*, meat easy to digest ; *mirabile dictu*, wonderful to tell or to be told.

N. B. The supine in *u*, after these adjectives, is used as an ablative case expressing the *manner*, and cannot govern any case.

GERUNDS.

GERUNDS.

I. The gerunds govern the case of their verbs.

The gerund in *di* is used as a *genitive* after the nouns substantive or adjective, which govern that case; as—*sapientia est ars vivendi*, wisdom is the art of living; *cupidus discendi*, desirous of learning.

II. The gerund in *do* is used as a *dative* or *ablative* after the words which govern these cases, and is generally preceded by one of the following prepositions, *a* or *ab*, *de*, *e* or *ex*, *in*; but if it expresses the *cause* or *manner* of a thing, the preposition is suppressed; as—*redeo ab ambulando*, I return from walking; *ex defendendo major gloria, quam ex accusando paratur*, more glory is acquired by defending, than by accusing; *in judicundo criminosa est celeritas*, haste in judging is criminal; *charta utilis scribendo*, paper useful for writing; *defessi sunt ambulando*, they are weary with walking; *consumit tempus legendo*, he spends his time in reading; *homines, nihil agendo, malè agere discunt*, men, by doing nothing, learn to do ill.

III. The gerund in *dum* is used as an *accusative* case, and governed by another *verb* or *adjective*, with some of the following prepositions, *ad* or *inter*, *ante*, *circa* or *ob*; but especially after verbs signifying a motion towards some place, or an inclination towards something, such as *to exhort to*, *to excite to*, &c. &c. It generally expresses the *design*, the *end*, and then the particle *to* may be changed by *in order to*, *to the*

end to, or for to, before the English verb in the infinitive mood; as—*te hortor ad legendum, ad discendum*, I exhort you to read, to learn; *idoneus ad administrandam rempublicam*, fit to govern the commonwealth; *pecuniam accipere ob solvendum*, to receive money, on purpose to pay; *paratus ad agendum*, ready to act; *ante cubandum*, before going to bed; *inter ambulandum*, in the time of walking.

IV. Gerunds of verbs governing the accusative are elegantly turned into the participles in *dus*, which agree with their substantives in *gender* and *number*, but both preserving the cases of the gerunds; as—*cupidus discendæ philosophiæ*, desirous of learning philosophy; *virga utilis est corrigendis pueris*, the rod is useful for correcting boys; *consumit tempus in legendâ historiâ, et recognoscendis auctoribus*, he spends his time in reading history, and repassing his authors; *te hortor ad legendam historiam*, I exhort you to read history; *dedit mihi libros legendos*, he gave me some books to read.

V. After several verbs, such as *to exhort, to persuade, to warn, to beg, hortor, suadeo, moneo, oro, rogo*, and the like, the English infinitive is much more elegantly rendered by the potential, with the conjunction *ut*; as—*ego hortor vos ut anteponatis amicitiam omnibus rebus humanis*, I exhort you to prefer friendship before all human things; *rogo ut ad me venias*, I beg of you to come to me.

But if the above verbs be followed by a negation, they take *ne* with the potential mood; as—*oro ne id facias*,

facias, I beg of you not to do that; *cave ne dixeris*, take care not to say.

PARTICIPLES.

I. Participles govern the cases of their own verbs; as—*docens pueros*, teaching the boys; *docturus sapientiam*, about to teach wisdom; *doctus a præceptore*, taught by the master; *inſimulatus furti*, being accused of theft; *obsecutus parenti*, having obeyed his father; *functus officio*, having discharged his duty; *locus caſtris ponendis idoneus*, a place fit to fix a camp.

II. The *English infinitive* of a verb is often turned into Latin by a participle present, eſpecially after the verbs, *to hear*, *to ſee*, *to feel*, *to admire*, *audio*, *video*, *miror*, &c. and agrees with the ſubſtantive or pronoun in *gender*, *number*, and *caſe*; as—*vidi eum ingredientem*, I ſaw him come or coming in; *illum loquentem audies*, you will hear him ſpeak; *vidit illam cadentem*, he ſaw her fall.

III. When a participle, joined to a noun or pronoun, comes between two commas, and does not depend upon any other word, it is put, as well as the noun or pronoun, in the ablative, which is called the *ablative absolute*; as—*oppreſſâ libertate patriæ, nihil eſt quod amplius ſperemus*, the liberty of the country being oppreſſed, we have nothing more to hope; *Cicerone conſule, detecta fuit conjuratio*, Cicero being conſul, the conſpiracy was diſcovered; *partibus factis, ſic locutus eſt leo*, the parts being made, the lion ſpoke thus.

IV. This

IV. This ablative is generally governed by one of the following prepositions, *sub*, *cum*, *a* or *ab*, and *being*, *having*, or *after*, *when*, *whilst*, are usually the signs of it; for the above sentences may easily be turned in the following ways; *when* or *whilst* the liberty of the country is oppressed, &c. *whilst* or *when* Cicero was consul, &c.

V. The participle of a verb deponent agrees much more elegantly with the noun before it, in the nominative case; as—*Cæsar, cohortatus suos, commisit prælium*, Cæsar, having encouraged his men, began the battle.

VI. That participle is sometimes much better rendered by the *preterimperfect* or *preterpluperfect* potential agreeably to the sense of the sentence, with the following conjunctions, *cum*, *dum*, *quamvis*, *si*, *postquam*, or *ubi*; and when the verb has no passive voice, that participle cannot be rendered otherwise; as—*cum Cicero esset consul, detecta fuit conjuratio*, when or whilst Cicero was consul, the conspiracy was discovered; *Cicero, postquam fuisset consul, tamen in exilium actus est*, Cicero, having been consul, was however sent into exile—*turn*, Cicero, after he had been consul, &c; *centuriones, cum intellexissent quid ageretur, districtis gladiis, occupaverunt portas*, the centurions, having understood, that is, after they had understood, what was doing, having drawn their swords, seized the gates; *huc cum venisset, difficultate magnâ afficiebatur*, being come thither, he laboured under a great difficulty.

VII. On

VII. On the contrary, the participle, belonging to the nominative of a verb, agrees with that nominative in gender and number; as—*gallus quærens escam, margaritam reperit*, a cock, looking for food, found a pearl; as—*puer interrogatus, respondit*, the boy having been questioned, answered; *interrogandus, timebat*, being about to be questioned, he feared; *Cicero orationem habiturus, dixit amicis*, Cicero, being about to pronounce a discourse, said to his friends.

VIII. But if the participle belongs to the regimen of the verb, that participle agrees with that regimen in gender, number, and case; this regimen is generally one of the personal pronouns of the third person; *him, her, it, or them*; as—*urbem captam, hostis diripuit*, the town having been taken, the enemy plundered it—*turn*, the enemy plundered the town being taken; *civibus ferro necandis, victor pepercit*, the citizens being about to be put to the sword, the conqueror forgave them—*turn*, the conqueror forgave the citizens being about to be put to the sword.

PRAXIS ON THE ABOVE RULES.

The art of writing is acquired by writing The
scrib-o, 3. acquir-o, 3.

Germans sent ambassadors to Cæsar, to beg
German-us, i m. mitt-o legat-us, i m. or-o, i.

that he would not reckon them in the number of
ne, c. duc-o, 3. numer-us, i m.

his enemies. The mind of man is always ac-
anim-us, i m.

quiring

quiring or doing something by thinking, and is
 aut, c. ag-o, 3. cogit-o, 1.
 led by the pleasure of seeing and hearing. The
 duc-o, 3. vid-eo, 2. aud-io, 4.
 cities which had been admitted to Cæsar's
 civit-as, atis f. acced-o
 friendship could neither convey corn,
 amicitia, æ f. nec, c. support-o, 1. frument-um, in.
 nor those, who had advanced farther to
 nec, c. progred-ior, 3. longiùs, adv.
 forage, return. Cato, when he was going pot. to
 pabul-or, 1. revert-or, 3. eo, irr.
 sleep, took a sword privately into his
 dorm-io, 4. fero, irr. ferr-um, i n. clam, adv.
 chamber and stabbed himself. When Cæsar
 cubicul-um, i n. transjic-io, 3.
 had reached pot. Hispalis, ambassadors came to beg
 contendo, 3. Hispal-is, is f.
 his pardon. My friend's wife has brought forth a
 deprec-or, 1. uxor, is f. par-io, 3.
 son, let us go to visit the lying-in woman and wish
 vid-eo, 2. puerper-a, æ f.
 joy to the father. Alexander went to
 congratul-or, 1. perg-o, 3.
 Jupiter Hammon to consult him
 Jupiter, Jovis m. Hammon, is m. consul-o, 3.
 about his own origin, abl. and about the event
 de, p. orig-o, inis f. event-us, us m.
 of the war. Among the ancient Romans, some
 apud, p. vet-us, eris
 matron of approved manners was
 matron-a, æ f. probat-us, a, um mo-s, ris m.
 chosen, to whom all the offspring of the family was
 elig-o, 3. sopol-es, is f.
 entrusted, before whom abl. it was neither
 committ-o, 3. coram, p. neque, c.
 allowable

allowable to speak what appeared shameful to be
 fas, *ind.* dic-o, 3. vid-eor, 2. turp-is, *e*
 said, nor to do what was indecent to be done.
 dic-o, 3. fac-io, 3. inhonest-us, *a, um*
 Men desire riches, that they may have ability
 cup-io, 3. ut, *c.* hab-eo, 2. facult-as, *atis f.*
 to gratify their friends. He goes with
 gratific-o, 1. proced-o, 3. cum, *p.*
 a few friends to a hill very
 pauc-i, *æ, a* in, *p.* tumult-us, *i m.*
 easy to be seen by those lying in wait.
 facil-is, *e* vid-eo, 2. infidi-ans, *antis.*
 Many, who had gone out of the
 mult-us, *a, um* proced-o, 3. ex, *p.*
 camp *abl.* for the sake *abl.* of seeing or plundering,
 castr-a, *orum n.* grati-a, *æ f.* vis-o, 3. spoli-o, 1.
 found the dead bodies of their friends. The
 reper-io, 4. cadaver, *is n.*
 shortness of your letters makes me
 brev-it-as, *atis f.* liter-æ, *arum f.* fac-io, 3.
 shorter in writing. These men inflamed the mind
 brev-is, *e* accend-o, 3.
 of Jugurtha by promising him the kingdom of Numi-
 pollicit-o, 1. Numi-
 dia, if king Micipsa should die. Whatever
 di-a, *æ f.* mor-ior, 3. qui, &c.
 place each one, when alive, had taken
 loc-us, *i m.* quisque, &c. viv-us, *a, um* cap-io, 3.
 for fighting, that he covered with his body when
 pugn-o, 1. teg-o, 3. corp-us, *oris n.*
 dead. Nature has given to animals
 mortu-us, *a, um* do, 1. anim-ans, *antis n.*
 one time to act, another to rest.
 ali-us, *a, um* ag-o, 3. ali-us, *a, &c.* quiesc-o, 3.
 There are two kinds of liberality, one of bestowin
 gen-us, *eris n.* do, 1.
 P p a kindne

a kindness, the other of returning it. Wife
 benefici-um, i n. alter, a, um. redd-o, 3.
 fathers order their sons to be roused early
 jub-eo, 2. excit-o, i. maturè, adv.
 to perform their studies, but their mothers wish to
 ob-eo, irr. vol-o, irr.
 cherish them in their bosoms, by which it happens
 fov-eo, 2. sin-us, us m. fio, irr.
 that they are *pot.* unfit to bear fatigues.
 ut, c. impar, is sub-eo, irr. labor, is m.
 During their walk, Socrates and Alcibiades were
 inter, p. ambul-o, i.
 discoursing about the duty of a good citizen
 confabul-or, i. de, p. offici-um, i n. civ-is, is com.
 Among other things, Socrates said this:
 inter, p. ali-us, a, um loqu-or, 3.
 " No one ought to receive a reward for
 nem-o, inis accip-io, 3. præmi-um, i n. ob, p.
 " accusing." The Germans were fond of
 accus-o, i. studios-us, a, um
 hunting, skilful in carrying on war, capable of
 ven-or, i. perit-us, a, um ger-o, 3. par, is
 bearing the greatest burdens, but ignorant of the
 fer-o, irr. on-us, eris n. rud-is, e
 art of besieging towns. Caius Memmius exhorted
 oppugn-o, i. urb-s, is f. hort-or, i.
 the people to revenge the injury, he advised not
 vindic-o, i. admon-eo, 2. ne, c.
 to abandon the commonwealth and their liberty, and
 deser-o, 3. respublic-a, æ f.
 to inflame the mind of the common people, he
 ut, c. pleb-s, is f.
 displayed to them the many, haughty and
 ostend-o, 3. mult-us, a, um superb-us, a, um
 cruel actions of the nobility. They
 crudel-is, e facin-us, oris n. nobilit-as, atis
 persuade

persuade Atherbal to deliver up himself and the
 suad-eo, 2. Atherbal, *is m.* trad-o, 3.
 town to Jugurtha. He begs of Jugurtha to
 oppid-um, *i n.* rog-o, 1.
 spare the citizens, who also beseech Atherbal not
 parc-o, 3. obsecr-o, 1.
 to trust himself to his enemy. Virginius, holding
 cred-o, 3. tend-o, 3.
 up his hands to heaven, begged of the gods to
 ad, p. cœl-um, *i n.*
 revenge the death of his daughter: then,
 ulcisc-or, 3. tunc, adv.
 turning to the people, he exhorts them to shake off
 vers-us, *a, um* excut-io, 3.
 the tyranny of the decemviri. When the
 dominatio, *nis f.* decemvir, *i m.*
 ambassadors of the Macedonians came to Rome to
 Macedoni-us, *i m.*
 complain of Silanus the son of Manlius, the
 conquer-or, 3. de, p.
 father, mindful of his ancestors' severity,
 record-ans, *antis* avit-us, *a, um* severit-as, *atis f.*
 caused his son to be condemned. Being informed
 cur-o, 1. condemn-o, 1. edoct-us, *a, um*
 of every thing by him, he returns to Bocchus,
 cunct-us, *a, um* red-eo, irr.
 who considering a long time with himself the discourse
 volv-o, 3. diu, adv. sermo, *nis m.*
 of Sylla, at last promises to deliver up Jugurtha.
 tandem, adv. promitt-o, 3.
 Catulus was inflamed with hatred, because, having
 incend-o, 3. odi-um, *i n.* quòd, c.
 enjoyed the greatest honours, he had in his old
 ut-or, 3. extrem-us, *a, um*
 age been conquered by Cæsar a
 æt-as, *atis* vict-us, *a, um* disced-o, 3.

young man. Eteocles having finished
 adolescentul-us, i m. Eteocl-es, is m. perfung-or, 3.
 his year, forgetting the agreement, would not
 ann-us, i m. oblivisc-or, 3. fœd-us, eris n.
 resign the kingdom to his brother, who betaking
 redd-o, 3. recip-io, 3.
 himself to Adrastus, took his daughter for a wife.
 duc-o, 3. uxor, is f.
 The senate recalled Cæsar, the Roman people
 revoc-o, 1.
 agreeing with one voice. Coriolanus, after having
 consent-io, 4. vo-x, cis f.
 performed many noble exploits, being con-
 ger-o, 3. præclar-us, a, um re-s, i f. con-
 demned by the judgment of the people, went
 demn-o, 1. judici-um, i n. ab-eo, irr.
 to live in exile among the Volsci, threatening
 exul-o, 1. in, p. Volsc-i, orum minit-o, 1.
 his country, and even then having a hostile
 patri-a, æ f. jam, adv. tum, adv. ger o, 3. hostil-is, e
 disposition. Such rewards being offered, civil
 spirit-us, is m. tal-is, e propon-o, 3. civil-is, e
 wars will never be wanting. Veturius and
 nunquam, adv. desum, irr.
 Posthumius being consul, Pontius having shut up
 consul, is m. claud-o, 3.
 the Romans in the Caudian forks,
 Caudin-us, a, um furcul-a, æ f.
 thought they ought all either to be dismissed
 cens-eo, 2. vel, c. dimitt-o, 3.
 untouched or killed to a man.
 inviolat-us, a, um vel, c. interfic-io, 3. ad, p. un-us, a, um
 Peace being made, the king recalled his troops.
 pa-x, cis f. fio, irr. copi-a, æ f.
 When this battle was told beyond the
 præli-um, i n. nunci-o, 1. trans, p.
 Rhine,

Rhine, the Suevi began to return
 Rhen-*us*, *i* m. Suev-*i*, *orum* m. cœpi, irr. red-*eo*, irr.
 home. Peace being made, the king signed it.
 dom-*us*, *us* f. obfign-*o*, *i*.
 The old Romans, having received an injury, chose
 accip-*io*, *3*.
 rather to forgive than to revenge: and they
 malo, irr. ignosc-*o*, *3*. perfequ-*or*, *3*.
 increased their empire almost more by sparing
 aug-*eo*, *2*. imperi-*um*, *i* n. pene, adv. parc-*o*, *3*.
 the conquered than by conquering. Valeria being
 vict-*us*, *a, um* vinc-*o*, *3*.
 asked why, after having lost her husband
 interrog-*o*, *i*. cur, adv. amitt-*o*, *3*. marit-*us*, *i* m.
 Servius, she would marry nobody else, said,
 volo, irr. nub-*o*, *3*. null-*us*, *a, um*. inquo, irr.
 "because my husband Servius is always alive to me."
 quoniam, c. viv-*o*, *3*.
 Arria, to encourage her husband Pœtus to meet
 excit-*o*, *i*. oppet-*o*, *3*.
 death with a manly soul, having stabbed
 viril-*is*, *e* anim-*us*, *i* m. perfod-*io*, *3*.
 herself in the breast, presenting to her husband
 pect-*us*, *oris* n. porrig-*o*, *3*.
 the dagger torn out of the wound, uttered
 pugio, *nis* m. extrah-*o*, *3*. vuln-*us*, *eris* n. ed-*o*, *3*.
 these immortal words, "Pœtus, it does not pain."
 immortal-*is*, *e* vo-*x*, *cis* f. dol-*eo*, *2*.
 The Romans having made many attempts
 conat-*us*, *us* m.
 in vain to fally forth, being forced by
 frustra, adv. erump-*o*, *3*. vict-*us*, *a, um*
 necessity, ask for peace. Ariovistus, having
 necessit-*as*, *atis* f. pet-*o*, *3*.
 gotten a boat fastened to the bank,
 nancisc-*or*, *3*. navicul-*a*, *e* f. delig-*o*, *i*. ad, p. rip-*a*, *e* f.
 fled

fled in it: our horsemen having overtaken
 profugi-o, 3. equ-es, itis m. consequ-or, 3.
 all the rest slew them.
 reliqu-us, a, um interfic-io, 3.

OF THE VERB WITH THE NAMES OF PLACES.

I. Verbs, which express no change of place, govern the *ablative* of the names of places with the preposition *in*; except the names of *cities* and *towns*; as—*vivit in Britannia*, he lives in Great Britain; *natus est in Gallia*, he is born in France; *habitas in urbe*, you dwell in town; *sunt in cubiculo*, they are in bed.

II. Verbs expressing no change of place, govern the *genitive* of the names of *cities* or *towns* of the *first* and *second* declension and *singular* number; or the *ablative* without any preposition, if those names of cities or towns be of the *third* declension or have no *singular*; as—*Romæ omnia veneunt pecuniâ*, at Rome every thing is sold for money; *magnificum Dianæ templum erat Ephesi*, the famous temple of Diana was at Ephesus; *Alexander magnus mortuus est Babylone*, Alexander the Great died at Babylon; *Apollo oracula reddebat Delphis*, Apollo gave his oracles at Delphi.

III. Verbs, which signify *motion towards* the place, govern the *accusative* of the names of places with the preposition *in*; except the names of *cities* and *towns*; as—*copias duxit in Germaniam*, he carried his troops to Germany; *bellum in Siciliam translatum fuit*, they transferred

transferred the war into Sicily; *venit in urbem*, he came into the town; *ascendit in calum*, he ascended into heaven.

IV. Verbs signifying *motion towards* the place, govern the *accusative* of the names of cities or towns without any preposition; as—*ivit Londinum*, he went to London; *Regulus Carthaginem rediit*, Regulus went back to Carthage; *legatos Syracusas misit*, he sent ambassadors to Syracuse; *Athenas petit*, he goes to Athens.

V. Verbs, which express *motion through* the place, govern the *accusative* of the names of places with the preposition *per*; except the names of cities or towns; as—*Italiam petebat per Hispaniam & Galliam*, he was going to Italy through Spain and France; *per campos fugere cepit*, he began to run through the fields.

VI. Verbs signifying *motion through* the place, govern the *ablative* of the names of cities or towns, without any preposition; as—*iter Laodiceâ faciebam*, I was going through Laodicea.

VII. Verbs, which express *motion from* the place, govern the *ablative* of the names of places with the preposition *e* or *ex*; except the names of cities or towns; as—*redeo ex Italiâ*, I come back from Italy; *egressus est e cubiculo*, he is gone out of his room.

VIII. Verbs expressing *motion from* the place, govern the *ablative* of the names of cities or towns without any preposition; as—*Româ accepi fasciculum literarum*, I received a packet of letters from Rome; *Epheſo Laodiceam revertit*, he came back from Ephesus

fus to Laodicea; *venit Carthagine, Athenis*, he comes from Carthage, from Athens.

N. B. When these verbs expressing motion are followed by the name of a *person* or any *other object*, except a country, province, town, or city, that name must be put in the *ablative* with the preposition *a* or *ab*; as—*venit a patre*, he comes from his father's; *redeo a judice*, I return from the judge's.

IX. *Domus* and *rus* follow the construction of the names of *cities* or *towns*; as—*sum domi*, I am at home; *eo domum*, I am going home; *venio domo*, I come from home; *eram ruri*, I was in the country; *ibat rus*, he was going into the country; *redeo rure*, I come back from the country.

VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH A PREPOSITION.

Verbs compounded with a preposition preserve the same case as the preposition, but it is sometimes understood and sometimes expressed; as—*adire aliquem*, or *ad aliquem*, to go to somebody; *abstinere vino*, or *a vino*, to abstain from wine.

PRAXIS ON THE ABOVE RULES.

Cæsar, having performed these things in Spain, returns
ger-o, 3. red-eq, irr.
to Marseilles, whither Domitius had arrived from
Massili-a, æ f. quò, adv. perven-io, 4.
Italy. The consul went to Capua and
proficisc-or, 3. Capu-a, æ f.
thence

to Tarentum, Timoleon being sent by the
 Tarent-um, *i* n. Timoleon, *tis* m.
 Corinthians to Syracuse, drove Diony-
 Corinth-ius, *i* m. Syracus-æ, arum f. depell-o, 3.
 fuis out of Sicily, who, after he had reigned *pot.*
 Sicili-a, æ f. cum, c. regn-o, 1.
 many years *acc.* at Syracuse, was forced to teach
 cog-or, 3. doc-eo, 2.
 children the first rudiments of learning at
 rudiment-um, *i* n. liter-æ, arum f.
 Corinth in Greece. At the time
 Corinth-us, *i* f. Græci-a, æ f. qui, quæ, &c. temp-us, *oris* n.
 that *abl.* Philip was an hostage at
 Philipp-us, *i* m. obs-es, *idis* com.
 Thebes, one Philo bestowed
 Theb-æ, arum f. quidam, &c. Philo, *nis* m. affic-io, 3.
 many kindneses on him. When he, invited by
 benefici-um, *i* n. cum, c. voc-o, 1.
 Philip into Macedonia, was unwilling to accept
 Macedoni-a, æ f. accip-io, 3.
 of any present from the king, I beg
 qui, quæ, &c. mun-us, *eris* n. or-o, 1.
 of you, said Philip, do not deprive me of this
 inquo, irr. nolo, irr. priv-o, 1.
 glory, which I chiefly seek for, to be con-
 maxime, adv. quær-o, 3. ut, c.
 quered *pot.* by nobody by kindneses. Alexander
 nem-o, *inis* n.
 staid at Babylon longer than any where else,
 const-o, 1. Babylon, *is* f. diutiùs, adv. usquam, adv.
 nor was any place more prejudicial
 nec, c. ull-us, a, um loc-us, *i* m. magis, adv. noc-eo, 2.
 to military discipline. From Lacedemon
 militar-is, e disciplin-a, æ f. Lacedæmon, *is* f.
 Alcibiades returned to Athens; thence he
 revert-or, 3. Athen-æ, arum f. inde, adv.

failed to Asia. He travelled through
 navig-o, 1. Asi-a, æ f. fac-io, 3. it-er, ineris n.
 Ephesus, that he might arrive at Miletus
 Ephes-us, i f. ut, c. perven-io, 4. Milet-us, i f.
 before the coming acc. of the Lacedemonians.
 ante, p. advent-us, ūs m. Lacedæmoni-us, i m.
 It is my dat. intention abl. to relate in a
 ego, pr. in, p. anim-us, i m. differ-o, 3.
 few words the customs of our ancestors
 pauc-a, orum n. institut-um, i n. major-es, um m.
 at home and in war. All whom crimes
 dom-us, i f. militi-a, æ f. flagiti-um, i n.
 had driven ^{pot.} from home, flocked to Rome (as it were)
 expell-o, 3. conflu-o, 3. sicuti, adv.
 to a sink. A life spent in the country
 in, p. sentin-a, æ f. act-us, a, um ru-s, is n.
 is nearest, and (as it were) a relation
 proxim-us, a, um quasi, adv. consanguine-us, a, um
 to wisdom: it is the mistress of œconomy,
 magistr-a, æ f. parsimoni-a, æ f.
 diligence, and justice. In cities, luxury,
 urb-s, is f. luxuri-a, æ f.
 avarice, and all crimes (take their rise.)
 avariti-a, æ f. scel-us, eris n. gign-o, 3.
 Among the ancient Romans, the senators commonly
 senator, is m. plerumque, adv.
 lived in the country, from the country they were
 viv-o, 3.
 sent for to the senate acc. I will flee from the
 arcefs-o, 3. in, p. avol-o, 1. ex, p.
 city, (as it were,) from prison into the
 urb-s, is f. tanquam, adv. vincul-um, i n.
 country. A Lacedemonian woman delivering a
 Lacæn-a, æ f. mulier, is f. trad-o, 3.
 shield to her son, said, either bring back home
 scut-um, i n. dic-o, 3. aut, c. refer-o, irr.

this

this shield from battle, or may you yourself be
 pugn-a, æ f. ipse, &c.
 brought back home, lying on it *abl.* Cæsar,
 report-o, 1. jac-eo, 2. in, p.
 before he departed *pot.* from town, went
 antequam, c. disced-o, 3. oppid-um, i n. ad-eo, irr.
 to the magistrates and told them he *acc.* would not *inf.*
 fui, pro. nolo, irr.
 desist from his undertaking, that he *acc.* would
 abst-o, 3. incept-um, i n. fui, pro. volo, irr.
 transport the inhabitants to Alexandria. Severus
 traduc-o, 3. incol-a, æ f. Alexandri-a, æ f. Sever-us, i m.
 visited almost all the tents,
 circumeo, irr. pene, adv. cunct-us, a, um tentori-um, i n.
 and suffered no one to be absent from his
 pat-i-or, 3. nem-o, inis m. absum, irr.
 colours. He rode round the camp
 sign-um, i n. circumveh-o, 3. equo castr-a, orum n.
 every night and examined the out posts.
 singul-us, a, um no-x, etis f. explor-o, 1. statio, nis f.
 The Germans dared pass the broadest
 aud-eo, irr. transeo, irr. lat-us, a, um
 rivers, climb up the steepest banks, and
 flum-en, inis n. ascend-o, 3. alt-us, a, um rip-a, æ f.
 advance into the most disadvantageous places.
 sub-eo, irr. iniqu-us, a, um loc-us, i m.

TIME.

I. Nouns that express *time* or *part of time* are put
 in the *ablative* without any preposition, when the
 question is, or may be, made by *when?* *quando?* or
at what time? *quo tempore?* as—*veniet die dominicâ,*
menſe proximo, he will come on Sunday, next month.

II. When the answer is made by the English cardinal number, *one, two, three, &c.* it must be rendered in Latin by the *ordinal, primus, secundus, tertius, &c.* as—*advenit horâ tertiâ*, he came at three o'clock; *horâ ipsâ prima*, precisely at one o'clock.

III. Sometimes the prepositions *ante, post*, are used with an ablative, but in this case only, when they are taken as adverbs, or their regimen is understood; as—*paucis ante diebus*, a few days before; *paucis post annis*, a few years after; *tertio is ante anno consul fuerat*, he had been a consul three years before.

IV. In the following phrases, *id temporis, hoc* or *id ætatis, id diei*, and the like, the prepositions *per, circa, or ad*, are understood.

V. Nouns expressing a *continual term of time* are put in the *ablative* or *accusative* without any preposition; but oftener in the *accusative*, when the question is, or may be, made by *how long? quamdiu?* then the cardinal numbers *unus, duo, tres, &c.* are used; as—*regnavit tres annos* or *tribus annis*, he reigned three years; *noctes atque dies patet atri janua ditis*, black Pluto's gate is open night and day; *annos sexaginta natus es*, you are sixty years old.

In the above sentences, both the *ablative* and *accusative* are governed by a preposition understood, which is often expressed; as—*vixit per tres annos*, he lived (during) three years.

VI. Nouns of time, expressing *how long a thing has been, or will be, doing*, are put in the *accusative* with the preposition *intra*; as—*id fecit intra tres dies*,

dies, he did it in three days; *intra quatuor dies Londinum petivit*, he went to London in four days.

The English preposition *in* is sometimes rendered by *post*, especially when it can be turned by *after*; when the noun of time is likewise put in the *accusative*; as—*post tres dies proficiscar*, I shall set out in three days, i. e. after three days.

VII. Nouns of time expressing *how long a thing has been or will be lasting*, are put in the *accusative* without any preposition, or in the *ablative* with *a* or *ab*; as—*tertium annum regnat*, or *a tribus annis regnat*, he has been reigning three years; *multos annos utor familiariter patre tuo*, I have been many years intimate with your father.

VIII. If the time be elapsed and consequently last no longer, the noun of time must be put in the *ablative* or *accusative* with *abhinc*; as—*viginti abhinc annis* or *viginti abhinc annos mortuus est*, he has been dead these twenty years.

In the above sentence the preposition *a* is understood before the *ablative*, and *ante* before the *accusative*.

More than or *above*, before nouns of time, are rendered by *ante* or *amplius* with the *accusative*; as—*ante hos sex menses malè dixisti mihi*, thou didst speak ill of me above six months ago; *tertium amplius annum regnat*, he has been reigning more than three years.

MEASURE, SPACE, DISTANCE.

I. Nouns expressing the *measure* of things, or the *space* or *distances* of places, are put, both after adjectives and verbs, in the *accusative* and sometimes in the *ablative* without any preposition; as—*villula hæc distat a Londino viginti passus* or *viginti passibus*, that little farm is twenty paces distant from London; *a te pedem non discedam*, I will not stir a foot from you.

II. The *precise place* where any thing has happened is put in the *ablative* without any preposition, or in the *accusative* with *ad*, when the ordinal number must be used; as—*interfectus est vigesimo ab urbe passu*, he was killed at twenty paces from the town; *cecidit ad decimum abhinc passum*, he fell down ten paces hence.

PRAXIS ON THE ABOVE RULES.

Tarquin	reigned	twenty five years.	At
Tarquini-us, i m.	regn-o, i.		
the same		time, there was a noble	
idem, eadem, &c.		nobil-is, e	
youth	one	Piso	of
adolesc-ens, entis com.	quidam, &c.	Piso, nis m.	
great	audacity,	poor,	
summ-us, a, um	audaci-a, æ f.	eg-ens, entis	
factionous,	whom poverty	and wicked	
factios-us, a, um	inopi-a, æ f.	mal-us, a, um	
manners	excited to disturb	the state.	
mo-s, ris m.	stimul-o, i.	perturb-o, i.	respublic-a, æ f.
			The

The territories of the Helvetii extend two
fin-is, is m or f. Helveti-i, orum m. pat-co, 2.

hundred and eighty (miles.) When Dionysius
(millia passuum) cum, c.

the tyrant of Sicily came into the
tyrann-us, i m. Sicili-a, æ f. ven-io, 4.

temple of Jupiter, he took from him an
fan-um, i n. Jupiter, Jovis m. detrah-o, 3.

embroidered cloak, with which he had been
aure-us, a, um amicul-um, i n.

adorned by Gelo, saying that an embroidered
exorn-o, i. Gelo, nis m.

cloak acc. was infin. heavy in summer and
grav-is, e æst-as, atis f.

cold in winter. We ought not to depart
frigid-us, a, um hiem-s, is f. disced-o, 3.

a nail's breadth from a good
ungu-is, is m. transvers-us, a, um rect-us, a, um

conscience. A long while after,
conscienti-a, æ f. long-us, a, um temp-us, oris n.

Pleminius plundered the treasures of Proserpine,
dirip-io, 3. thesaur-us, i m. Proserpin-a, æ f.

which Pyrrhus had formerly plundered when he was
olim, adv. spoli-o, i. cum, c.

failing pot. with a fleet by Locri.
præterveh-or, 3. class-is, is f. Locri-i, orum n.

In the clearest day light, Diogenes carrying
clar-us, a, um lu-x, cis f. circumfer-o, irr.

about a lighted lamp, walked in the
accens-us, a, um lucern-a, æ f. ambul-o, i.

market. To those who asked what he was doing,
for-um, i n. rog-o, i. ag-o, 3.

he said, I am looking for a man. Already for five
quær-o, 3. jam, adv.

months, I the ally and friend of the Roman
mens-is, is m. foci-us, i m.

people

people are kept besieged by arms. The
 ten-*eo*, 2. obfideo, 2. arm-*a*, *orum* n.
 Vaccensians rejoiced in their perfidy
 Vaccens-*es*, *ium* m. læt-*or*, 1. ex, p. perfidi-*a*, *æ* f.
 only two days; for this great and
 modò, adv. bidu-*um*, *i* n. enim, c.
 opulent city was plundered and levelled to the
 opul-*ens*, *entis* æqu-*o*, 1.
 ground. Catiline, being accused of
 fol-*um*, *i* n. Catilin-*a*, *æ* m. accus-*o*, 1.
 extortion, had been hindered from setting up
 repetund-*æ*, *arum* f. prohib-*eo*, 2. pet-*o*, 3.
 for the consulship, because he could not make
 consulat-*us*, *ûs* m. quod, c. nequ-*eo*, irr. fac-*io*, 3.
 his defence within the days appointed
 defensio, *nis* f. intra, p. legitim-*us*, *a*, *um*
 by law. Cæsar was hindered by the river, the
 imped-*io*, 4. flum-*en*, *inis* n.
 greater part of the summer. Micipsa died
 par-*s*, *tis* f. mor-*ior*, 3.
 a few days after, worn out with sickness and
 confic-*io*, 3. morb-*us*, *i* m.
 age. Maximus the consul dying on the last
 æt-*as*, *atis* f. ultim-*us*, *a*, *um*
 day of December, Cæsar, at the seventh hour,
 Decemb-*er*, *ris* m. hor-*a*, *æ* f.
 had declared Caninius consul for the remaining
 renunc-*io*, 1. in, p. reliqu-*us*, *a*, *um*
 part acc. of the day. Metellus, who, three years ago,
 was sent into exile, now is restored to his
 ag-*o*, 3. nunc, adv. redd-*o*, 3.
 country with great glory. You shall perceive what
 patri-*a*, *æ* f. intellig-*o*, 3.
 the invincible Germans can do by their
 invict-*us*, *a*, *um* German-*us*, *i* m.
 bravery,

bravery, who for fourteen years have not gone
 virt-us, utis f. intra, p. sub-eo, irr.
 under a roof. Petreius, a military man, who
 tect-um, i n. milit-aris, e
 for more than thirteen years had been in the army
 in, p. exercit-us, us m.
 with great glory abl. knew the greatest part of
 cum, p. nosc-o, 3. plerique, &c.
 the soldiers, and by relating their brave
 commemor-o, 1. fort-is, e
 actions, roused their courage. At length
 fact-um, i n. accend-o, 3. anim-us, i m. tandem, adv.
 the Germans pass the river Rhine, but
 trans-eo, irr. Rhen-us, i m.
 Cæsar had conquered the Treviri above four
 vinc-o, 3. Trevir-i, orum m.
 months before. He forbade his soldiers to advance
 mens-is, is m. vet-o, 1. proced-o, 3.
 four feet from the standards. Ovid
 pe-s, dis m. sign-um, i n. Ovidi-us, i m.
 lived many years in banishment. Metellus informed
 viv-o, 3. exili-um, i n. edoc-eo, 2.
 his soldiers, tired with the length of the
 fess-us, a, um magnitud-o, inis f.
 march, that the town of Vacca acc.
 it-er, ineris n. oppid-um, i n. Vacc-a, æ f.
 was inf. no more than six miles off. All the
 absum, irr. millia passuum
 mountains which are round about, are elevated to
 mon-s, tis m. circum, p. præmin-eo, 2.
 the height of two miles. The Gauls, having
 altitud-o, inis f. Gall-us, i m.
 conquered the Romans near the river Allia, eleven
 vinc-o, 3. apud, p.
 miles from the city of Rome, also took
 milliari-um, i n. etiam, adv.
 R r possession

possession of the city itself. Severus, that he
 occup-o, i. ips-e, a, &c. ut, c.
 might place Britain in perfect security,
 mun-io, 4. Britanni-a, æ f. omn-is, e securit-as, atis f.
 built a rampart from sea to sea
 deduc-o, 3. vall-um, i n. a, p. mar-e, is n. ad, p.
 for the space of thirty two miles. Nero killed
 per, p. interfic-io, 3.
 himself in the country-house of his freed-man four
 vill-a, æ f. libert-us, i m.
 miles from the city.

INDECLINABLE PARTS OF SPEECH.

ADVERBS.

THE adverb, as has been said before, is sometimes joined to the *noun* or *participle*, but more frequently to the *verb*, whence it derives its name. The use of the adverb is to determine the signification or circumstance of the noun, participle, or verb, to which it is joined.

There are several species of adverbs.

Some express *time*; as

hodiè,	to-day.	
cràs,	to-morrow.	
heri,	yesterday.	
pridiè,	the day before.	
perendiè,	after to-morrow.	
postridiè,	the day after.	
		quotidiè,

quotidiè,	every day.
cum <i>or</i> quum,	when.
nunquam,	never.
unquam,	ever, &c.

Some exprefs quantity; as	
multum,	much.
parum,	little.
tantulum,	a little.
minimum,	the least, &c.

Adverbs of places.

<i>Quò</i> or <i>quònam</i> ?	where, whither?
hic,	here.
istùc, illùc,	there.
eò, illò,	there, thither.
aliò,	elsewhere.
aliquò,	in some place.
neutrò,	neither way.
quòcunque,	wherever.
quòquo, quòvis,	whithersoever.
eòdem,	at <i>or</i> to the same place.
intrò,	within.
foràs,	without.
nusquam,	no where.
ultrò citròque,	to and fro.
<i>Unde</i> ?	whence?
hinc,	thence.
illìnc, istìnc, indè,	thence.
aliundè,	from another place <i>or</i> person.
alicundè,	from some place <i>or</i> somebody.
	R r 2 undecunquè,

undecunquē,	from what place.
indidem,	thence, from that place.
foris,	from abroad <i>or</i> without.
intus,	from home <i>or</i> within.
peregrè,	from home <i>or</i> abroad.
Quà?	where? which way?
hàc,	this way.
istàc, illàc, età,	that way.
aliquà,	by <i>or</i> through some place.
quàcunque,	which way soever.
Ubi?	where?
hic,	here.
isthic, illic, ibi,	there.
alibi,	elsewhere.
alicubi, uspiam,	somewhere.
ubicunque ubivis,	} wheresoever, any where.
ubi-ubi,	
ibidem,	there, in the same place.
nullibi, nusquam,	no where.
foris,	abroad <i>or</i> without.

Adverbs of likeness.

ità,	thus.
quasi, tanquam,	as if.
quem admodum,	like, as.
instar,	} as it were.
ergò,	
sic, sicut, sicuti, velut,	} as, the same as, &c.
veluti, ut, uti,	
tam—quam,	so, <i>or</i> as—as.

Adverbs of affirmation.

etiàm, ità,	yes.
certè, fanè, quidem,	} assuredly, certainly.
profectò,	
(quidem, can only be used after another word.)	
equidèm,	verily indeed. (It is only used for
ego quidem unquam,	ever, &c.

Adverbs of negation.

non, haud,*	not.
ne,	not.
minime,	not at all.
nequaquàm,	} by no means, not at all.
neutiquàm,	
nunquam,	never.

Adverbs of interrogation.

cur, quare, quamobrem,	} why or wherefore?
quid ità?	
quorsum?	to what purpose?
an? anne? num?	whether? whether or no? &c.

Adverbs of doubt.

an, utrum, (before the word)	} whether?
ne, (after the word)	
forsàn, forsitan, fortasè,	perhaps, may be.
fortè,	by chance, &c.

Adverbs of union.

simul, unà,	together.
	paritèr,

* Observe that *two negations* are equal to an *affirmation*; as *nemo nescit puerum qui studet, amari*, every one knows that a child who studies, is loved.

paritèr,	equally, likewise.
conjunctim,	conjointly.
universim,	generally.
obviàm,	in the way, to meet, &c.

Adverbs of separation.

alioquin, (before a vowel)	} were it not so, other-
alioqui, (before a consonant)	
privatim, seorsim,	afide, in private, &c.

Adverbs of indication.

en,	behold, here is.
ecce,	behold, there is.

To exhort.

eia, euge,	courage, well done.
age, agedum, (in the singular)	} come on, well, &c.
agite, agitedum, (in the plural)	

Adverbs of wish.

utinam,	oh that! I wish!
O si,	oh if! oh that!

Adverbs of manner.

doctè,	learnedly.
pulchrè,	handsomely.
fortiter,	courageously, &c. &c.

Adverbs expressing the *manner*, generally have, like the adjectives from which they are derived, the three degrees of comparison. The *positive* generally ending in *è*, *èr*, or *ò*; the *comparative* in *ius*; and the *superlative* in *imè*; as

doctè,

positive.	comparative.	superlative.
doctè,	doctiùs,	doctissimè.
learnedly,	more learnedly,	most learnedly.
citò,	citiùs,	citissimè.
quickly,	more quickly.	most quickly.
diligentèr,	diligentiùs,	diligentissimè.
carefully,	more carefully,	most carefully.

Adverbs which are formed from adjectives, whose comparatives and superlatives are irregular, undergo the same irregularities in the same degrees of comparison; as

positive.	comparative.	superlative.
benè,	meliùs,	optimè.
well,	better,	best.
malè,	pejùs,	peffimè.
badly,	worse,	worst.
multùm,	magis,	maximè.
much,	more,	very much.
parùm,	minùs,	minimè.
little,	less,	the least, or very little.

Some do not come from any noun and admit of the degrees of comparison; as

fæpè,	fæpiùs,	fæpissimè.
often,	oftener,	oftenest.
propè,	propiùs,	proximè.
near,	nearer,	very near.

N. B. *Propè*, *propiùs*, and *proximè*, are more commonly used as *prepositions*, when they govern an *accusative*.

These

These two have no superlative.

ferò,	seriùs.	N. B. <i>Serissimè</i> is
late,	too late <i>or</i> later.	found in some good
fatis,	fatiùs.	authors.
enough,	better.	

The following have no comparatives.

nuper,	—	nuperrimè.
lately,	—	very lately.

The three following have no positives.

—	ociùs,	ocissimè.
	fooner <i>or</i> more speedily,	most speedily.
—	potiùs,	potissimè <i>or</i> potissimum.
	rather,	chiefly, especially.
—	priùs,	primùm.
	before,	first <i>and</i> foremost.

N. B. Some nouns repeated with some of the following prepositions, *by, for, from, to, &c.* may be more elegantly rendered in Latin by an adverb in *im*; as—*viritim*, man by man; *paulatim, sensim*, by little and little; *verbatim*, word for word; *ostiatim*, from door to door, &c.

REMARKS ON SOME ADVERBS.

I. Adverbs derived from nouns or verbs, generally follow the construction of their primitives; as—*similiter huic vestitus erat*, he was dressed like him; *congruenter convenienterque naturæ vivere pulchrum est*, it is a fine thing to live suitably and agreeably to nature.

II. Some

II. Some adverbs of *quantity, time, and place*, as well as *instar* and *ergò*, both taken adverbially, govern a genitive case; as—*sat habet fautorum, qui rectè facit*, he that acts rightly, has partisans enough; *tunc temporis*, at that time; *pridiè & postridiè hujus diei*, the day before and the day after that day; *instar montis equum ædificant*, they build a horse as a mountain; *illius ergò venimus*, we came for his sake; *nusquam gentium*, no where, in no place of the world; *ubi terrarum? ubi gentium?* in what place of the world?

III. The adverbs of indication, *en, ecce*, take the *nominative* or *accusative*; but it merely depends on the verb which is supposed to be understood; for if it be the verb *sum*, it must then be the *nominative*; but if the verb *video*, it must be the *accusative*; as—*en crimen, en causa*, here is the crime, there is the cause; *ecce nova turba*, there is a new trouble; *en obductas fores*, behold the gates shut; *ecce miserum hominem*, behold an unhappy man.

IV. Adverbs of quantity ending in *o*, are used with the comparative degree; as—*quò plures sunt discipuli, eò major est labor*, the more scholars there are, the more work there is; *quo diutius abest, tanto magis cupio*, the longer he is absent, the more I wish for him.

N. B. *Tantò, quantò, multò, and longè*, are sometimes used with a superlative.

V. The adverb of time, *quum* or *cum*, when, is sometimes joined to an *indicative*, and sometimes to a *potential*; as—*me invisit cum ægrotabam, or cum ægro-*

tarem, he came to see me when I was ill; *ambulabat cum studuerat* or *studuisset*, he walked when he had studied.

VI. Adverbs of *interrogation*, being used interrogatively, require a verb in the *indicative*; but when used to express a *doubt*, an *uncertainty*, or to make an *inquiry*, they require the verb to be put in the *potential*; as—*an* or *num est domi*? is she at home? *viso an* or *num sit domi*, I am going to see whether he be at home; *cur non venisti*? why did you not come? *dic mihi, cur non veneris*, tell me why you did not come; *quomodo valet pater tuus*? how does your father do? *quære quomodo valeat pater tuus*, inquire how your father does; *utrum hodie, an cras id facies*? will you do that to-day or to-morrow? *scire velim, utrum hodie an cras id facturum sis*, I would wish to know whether you will do it to-day or to-morrow; *an* or *num veniet frater tuus*? will your brother come? *nescio an venturus sit*, I know not whether he will come; *nesciebam an venturus esset*, I knew not whether he would come.

VII. Adverbs of *likeness*, *quasi*, *ac si*, require the following verb to be put in the *potential mood*; as—*quasi non nos norimus inter nos*, as if we did not know one another; *id est, ac si diceremus*, it is the same thing as if we said.

VIII. The adverb of *prohibition* or *negation*, *ne*, is used with the *imperative* or *potential only*; as—*ne jura, satis credo*, do not swear, I believe it; *ne collaudes te*, do not praise thyself.

IX. *Utinam*

IX. *Utinam* is only joined to the optative mood ;
i. e. the potential.

X. *Obviam* governs the dative.

PRAXIS ON THE ABOVE RULES.

When Vercingetorix heard of Cæsar's
Vercingetori-*x, gis* m. cognosc-*o, 3.* de, p.
arrival, *abl.* he desisted from the siege and
advent-*us, ūs* m. desist-*o, 3.* oppugnatio, *nis* f.
went to meet Cæsar. The Ubii, who
proficisc-*or, 3.* Ubi-*i, orum* m.
inhabit very near the Rhine, pursuing them,
incol-*o, 3.* Rhen-*us, i* m. insequ-*or, 3.*
killed a great number of them. Cæsar, having
occid-*o, 3.* numer-*us, i* m.
in one summer ended two important
æst-*as, atis* f. confic-*io, 3.* maxim-*us, a, um*
wars, led his army into winter-quarters a little
deduc-*o, 3.* hibern-*a, orum* n. paulo, *adv.*
sooner than usual. As a horse was made
maturè, *adv.* solit-*um, i* n. nasc-*or, 3.*
for running *acc.* an ox for ploughing, so man
ad, p. curs-*us, ūs* m. bo-*s, vis* ar-*o, 1.*
was born for these two things, to understand and
nasc-*or, 3.* intellig-*o, 3.*
act agreeably to nature, that is, reason. Where will
ag-*o, 3.*
you find a man, that would act like Demo-
inveni-*o, 4.* fac-*io, 3.* Demo-
critus, who deprived himself of sight that
crit-*us, i* m. priv-*o, 1.* ocul-*us, i* m. ut, c.
his mind might (as little as possible) be withdrawn from
quam minimè, *adv.* abduc-*o, 3.* a, p.
thinking. Cæsar, having placed guards
cogitatio, *nis* f. dispon-*o, 3.* præfidi-*um, i* n.
S s 2 upon

upon the mountains *abl.* and (having) cut off all
in, p. *mon-s, tis m.* *interclud-o, 3.*

access to the Ebro, fortifies his
it-er, ineris n. ad, p. *Iber-us, i m.* *communi-o, 4.*

camp (as near) to the enemies'
castr-a, orum n. (*quam proximè, adv.*)

camp (as he can). I do not think the republic is
existim-o, 1.

covered *infin.* with so much darkness, that
offund-o, 3. *tant-us, a, um* *tenebr-æ, arum f.* *ut, c.*

it might come (to such a pitch) of indignity.
veni-o, 4. *ed, adv.* *indignit-as, atis f.*

They that cannot conceal their friends' secrets
cel-o, 1. *arcan-um, i n.*

from those that ask them, but disclose what is
rog-o, 1. *effuti-o, 4.*

committed to their trust, act not only
committ-o, 3. *fid-es, ei f.* *ag-o, 3.* *solum, adv.*

unfaithfully to their friends, but hurtfully to
infideliter, adv. *incommodè, adv.*

themselves. A little is enough to nature, nothing is
fatis, adv.

enough to covetousness. Epaminondas,
cupidit-as, atis f. *Epaminond-as, æ f.*

general of the Thebans, (as often as) he sent
du-x, cis m. *Theban-us, i m.* *quoties, adv.*

his coat to the fuller was forced to stay
vest-is, is f. *fullo, nis m.* *cogo, 3.* *contin-eo, 2.*

at home in the mean time, because he had *pot.* no
interea, adv. *quòd, c.*

other coat. How much more beautiful she
quantò, adv. *formos-us, a, um*

seems now than lately! We learn sooner,
vid-eor, 2. *dudum, adv.* *disc-o, 3.* *cito, adv.*

and remember more willingly that which we despise,
memini, irr. *libenter, adv.* *derid-eo, 2.*

than

than that which we approve and reverence. The longer
 prob-o, 1. vener-or, 1.

my son is absent the more I desire him. Boys,
 absum, irr. cup-io, 3.

believe me, study diligently that you may be an
 cred-o, 3. stud-eo, 2. ut, c.

honour to yourselves, a benefit to your friends,
 utilit-as, atis f.

and an advantage to the commonwealth. Nothing
 emolument-um, i n.

can be a greater advantage and honour to you
 fruct-us, ūs m. glori-a, æ f.

than to deserve well of many. If we
 mer-eor, 2. de, p. plurim-us, a, um fi, c.

conquer we shall have plenty of provisions,
 vinc-o, 3. abundè, adv. commeat-us, ūs m.

every where our name will be famous. They,
 nom-en, inis n. clar-us, a, um

who have been many years abroad, earnestly with
 proficisc-or, 3. valde, adv. cup-io, 3.

to return home. Nothing is so agreeable to nature, so
 apt-us, a, um

fit for prosperity plur. or
 conveni-ens, entis ad, p. r-es, ei f. secund-us, a, um vel, c.

adversity plur. acc. as friendship. Perhaps we shall
 advers-us, a, um

seem to be eased of our care and fear
 vid-eor, 2. relev-o, 1. cur-a, æ f. met-us, ūs m.

for a short time. Will you be at home to morrow?
 ad brev-is, e

When he found himself to be put off longer, he
 intellig-o, 3. duc-o, 3.

called together the princes, and accused them
 convoc-o, 1. accus-o, 1.

heavily. Do you not see how Nestor in
 graviter, adv. vid-eo, 2. ut, c. apud, p.
 Homer

Homer *acc.* very often boasts *pot.* of his own virtues,
 Homer-*us*, *i m.* prædic-*o*, *i. de, p.*
 for he now was living the third age of
 enim, *c.* viv-*o*, *3.* æt-*as*, *atis f.*
 men; from his tongue flowed discourse sweeter
 e, *p.* lingu-*a*, *æ f.* flu-*o*, *3.* oratio, *nis f.* dulc-*is*, *e*
 than honey, for which sweetness he needed
 mel, *lis n.* ad, *p.* suavit-*as*, *atis f.* eg-*eo*, *2.*
 no strength of body. They being induced
 null-*us*, *a, um* vir-*es*, *ium f.* impell-*o*, *3.*
 by this opportunity, begin to form designs
 occasio, *nis f.* incip-*io*, *3.* in-*eo*, *irr.* consili-*um*, *i n.*
 concerning war *abl.* more freely and more
 de, *p.* liberè, *adv.*
 boldly. I know not, either whence I come,
 audaciter, *adv.* nesc-*io*, *4.* neque, *c.* ven-*io*, *4.*
 or where I am going. He himself now will
 neque, *c.* eo, *irr.* jam, *adv.*
 shew wherefore he left Carbo. In
 ostend-*o*, *3.* relinqu-*o*, *3.* Carbo, *nis m.*
 the mean while Metellus sent the deserters
 loc-*us*, *i m.* transfug-*a*, *æ m.*
 to examine where Jugurtha was. At that time he was
 explor-*o*, *1.*
 raising an army. Neither we, nor any one
 cog-*o*, *3.* nec, *c.* nec, *c.* quisquam, *pro.*
 else *gen.* ever had friends enough; as a wall they will
 omn-*is*, *e*
 protect us, they will suffer death for our
 defend-*o*, *3.* sub-*eo*, *irr.* ego, *pro.*
 sakes. Behold that liberty which you have often wished
 opt-*o*, *1.*
 for, it is now placed before your eyes *abl.*
 jam, *adv.* sit-*us*, *a, um* in, *p.* ocul-*us*, *i m.*
 Behold the enemy of your happiness. I am
 felicit-*as*, *atis f.*
 uncertain

uncertain whether I am more pressed by the
 incert-*us, a, um* acriùs, adv. urg-*eo, 2.*
 sword or by hunger. As if to do an
 ferr-*um, i n.* an, adv. fam-*es, is f.* fac-*io, 3.*
 injury, was to use command properly: as if
 ut-*or, 3.* imperi-*um, i n.* rectè, adv.
 the pretorship, the consulship, and all other
 prætur-*a, æ f.* consulat-*us, ùs m.*
 offices of that kind were noble
 honor, *is m.* is, ea, id, pro. mod-*us, i m.* clar-*us, a, um*
 and magnificent of themselves. Oh that Jupiter
 magnific-*us, a, um* per, p.
 may restore me my former years!
 refer-*o, irr.* præterit-*us, a, um* ann-*us, i m.*

PREPOSITIONS.

A PREPOSITION is a part of speech set before another word, which is its complement, and which it governs. Hence prepositions have always a regimen expressed or understood.

The following thirty prepositions govern the *accusative*.

ad,	to, at, or for.
adversùs, or adversum,	} against, towards, facing to.
ante,	before, above.
apud,	at, near, with one in a place.
circa, circum, or circiter,	} about, nigh, among, round.
cis, cìtra,	on this side, before, without.
	contra,

contra,	against, contrary to, towards.
erga,	towards, against, to.
extra,	without, besides, beyond, except.
infra,	beneath, below.
inter,	between, among, during, in.
intra,	within, in the space of.
juxta,	near, beside, nigh to, hard by, according to.
ob,	for, because of, upon the account of.
penes,	in the power of, <i>or</i> keeping of, with, in.
per,	by, through, by means of, in.
pone,	behind, after.
post,	after, behind, since.
præter,	except, beside, contrary to, above.
prope,	near to, nigh to.
propter,	for, because of, by reason of, near.
secundum,	according to, next after.
secus,	by, along, close by.
supra,	above, over, besides.
trans,	on the other, <i>or</i> farther side, beyond, over.
versus,	towards.
ultra,	beyond, further than.
usque, <i>or</i>	} until, to, as far as.
usque ad,	

The following twelve govern the *ablative*.

a, ab, abs,*	from, by, after, of, &c.
absque, <i>or</i> sine,	without, but for, were it not for.
clam,	unknown to, secretly.
coram,	before, in presence of.

cum,

* *A* is to be used before a word beginning with a consonant, *ab* or *abs* before a vowel.

eum,	with, together with.
de,	of, from, about, concerning.
e, ex,*	of, out of, from.
palam,	openly, with the knowledge of.
præ,	before, in comparison of, above, &c.
pro,	for, instead of, according to.
tenus,	up to, as far as.

The four following prepositions, *in*, *in*, *into*, *to*, upon, for, towards; *sub*, *subter*, under, below; *super*, upon, above; govern the *accusative* when used with verbs expressing *motion*; and the *ablative*, when joined to verbs signifying *rest*; as—*tendit in scholam*, he goes to school; *discit in scholâ*, he learns in school; *mittere sub jugum*, to pass under the yoke; *esse sub jugo*, to be under the yoke; *sol obtinet subter mediam regionem*, the sun has his place under the middle region; *subter aquâ*, under the water; *super lapidem*, upon a stone; *super viridi fronde*, upon a green bough; *Belgium spectat in septentrionem*, Belgium looks towards the north; *Germani fecerunt impetum in hostes*, the Germans made an onset upon the enemies; *duxit exercitum in Bellovacos*, he led his army against the Bellovaci.

N. B. I. Some of these prepositions are often understood in a sentence, though they always are the true cause of the regimen; as—*refecerunt veteres naves magnâ spe & fiduciâ*, they refitted the old ships with great hope and confidence.

II. Four of the prepositions are put after their regi-

T t

men;

* E before a consonant, ex before a vowel.

men; viz. *cum*, (with) after the personal pronouns, *ego*, *tu*, *fui*, *nos*, *vos*, &c; and after the relative, *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*; as—*mecum*, with me; *nobiscum*, with us; *quocum*, *quâcum*, *quibuscum*, with whom or which.

III. *Tenûs*, (up to, as far as) which requires the *ablative*, when its regimen is *singular*; and the *genitive*, when it is *plural*; as—*portâ tenûs*, as far as the gate; *aurium tenûs*, up to the ears.

IV. *Versûs*, (towards); as—*Londinum versûs*, towards London.

V. *Inter*, (between) is also placed after its regimen, especially when it can be between two accusatives; as—*quid discriminis patrem inter & matrem?* what a difference between the father and mother?

OBSERVATIONS ON SOME OF THE PREPOSITIONS.

Against, among, between.

Against, after *to shut*, *to offend*, *to sin*; *among*, after *to distribute*, or *divide*; *between*, after *to appoint*, if it refer to more parties than one, are not expressed; but the following noun is put in the *dative*; as—*si quid peccat, mihi peccat*, if he offend in any thing, he offends against me; *sumit equos a tribunis, & distribuit Germanis*, he takes horses from the tribunes and distributes them among the Germans, &c.

At.

When the preposition *at* precedes any *appointed time*, or when it signifies *by* or *near* a place, it is made by *ad*, if that place be not positively specified; and
by

by *apud*, if that place be precisely afcertained; as—*decedemus ad constitutum diem*, we will depart at the appointed day; *constituit castella ad extremas fossas*, he erected castles at the end of the ditches; *petierunt ut capti apud Granicum amnem redderentur*, they desired that those taken at the river Granicus might be restored.

At is sometimes made by *a* or *ab*, when expressing a distance; by *cum*, when expressing a thing begun, when another was beginning; by *sub*, when expressing the moment of an event; and lastly by *in*, *inter*, *sub*, or *super*, when it signifies *during*; as—*quò tanta machinatio instructa est, a tanto spatio?* to what purpose was so great a machine prepared at so great a distance? *abiit cum diluculo*, he went away at break of day; *vel heri in convivio, quàm immodestus fuisti!* no longer since than yesterday at the feast, how immodest wast thou! *si hoc tibi accidisset inter cœnam*, if that had happened to you at supper, &c.

By.

This preposition is made by *per*, when it precedes the *instrumental cause*, or when it signifies *by the means of*; as also after verbs of *swearing*, *beseeking*, and the like; as—*legio decima egit gratias Cæsari per tribunos*, the tenth legion returned thanks to Cæsar by the tribunes; *egit cum Cæsare de pace per filium*, he treated with Cæsar about a peace by his son, &c.

By, signifying *through*, *because of*, or *by reason of*, is made by *propter*; as—*Germani nonnulli propter propinquitatem, sunt Gallicis moribus assuefacti*, some

Germans, by their neighbourhood, are accustomed to the Gallic fashions; *vidit se fore magno periculo, propter avaritiam Cretensium*, he saw that he would be in great danger, by the covetousness of the Cretans.

By, signifying *from*, or *according to*, is made by *e* or *ex* or *de*; as—*ceperis conjecturam hujusce rei, Servi, e studio tuo*, you may have made a conjecture of this thing, Servius, by your own study; *scivi ex templo rem gestam esse de pacto*, I presently knew that the thing was done by agreement.

By is to be made by *ad*, *apud*, *juxta*, *prope*, *propter*, *secundum*, or *secus*, when it signifies *nigh*, or *near to*, or *by the side of*; as—*habet hortos ad Tiberim*, he has gardens hard by the Tiber; *apud eum sedebat Sulpicius*, by him sat Sulpicius, &c.

For.

For, signifying the *purpose*, *fitness*, *end*, or *use*, of any thing, is made by *ad*; as—*divitiæ expetuntur ad usus vitæ necessarios*, riches are desired for the necessary occasions of life; *ego feci illud ad meam utilitatem*, I did that thing for my own improvement, &c.

For, signifying *on account of*, *because of*, *by reason of*, is made by *ob* or *propter*; as—*dimisit eos ab exercitu ob negligentiam*, he dismissed them from the army for their negligence; *erat gratus Dionysio priori, nec minus propter mores, quam propter affinitatem*, he was acceptable to the former Dionysius, not less for his behaviour, than for his affinity.

For, signifying *instead of*, *in behalf of*, or *in exchange*

change or *reward* of any thing, is made by *pro*; as—*ego pro te molam*, I will grind for thee; *patres poscuntur pretium pro sepulturâ filiorum*, the fathers are asked a price for the burial of their sons.

For, signifying *about*, before the cause of any passion or matter of contention, is made by *de*; as—*extimescebam de fortunis communibus*, I was greatly concerned for our common fortunes; *a Romanis dimicabatur cum Pyrrho de imperio*, the Romans fought with Pyrrhus for empire.

For, when joined to the words *fake*, *reason*, is not expressed at all, but the above nouns are put in Latin, in the *ablative case*; as—*multi mentiuntur consuetudinis causâ*, many men lie for the sake of custom.

Sometimes *for* is made by *ob*, *propter* or *pro*, when the words *fake*, *reason*, are not expressed, but the following noun put in the case of the preposition which precedes it; or *ergò* with the genitive case; as—*me piget te incidisse in tantas ærumnas propter me*, I am sorry that you have fallen into such great troubles for me or for my sake; *neglexit periculum capitis sui pro meâ salute*, he disregarded the danger of his own life for my welfare; *si quid factum est contra alias leges, fit ergò hujus legis*, if any thing has been done contrary to other laws, it is done for the sake of this law.

For, before a word of time, is made by *in* with an *accusative case*; and when it signifies *during*, it is rendered by *ad* or *per*. Sometimes the following noun is put in the accusative, the preposition being understood. But when it signifies *against*, it is made by

by *ad*; as—*videbis in singulos dies*, you will take care for each day; *Videbimur fortasse relevari curâ & metu ad breve tempus*, perhaps we shall seem relieved from our care and fear in a short time; *deinde senatores imperaverunt Romæ per quinos dies*, afterwards the senators governed at Rome for five days; *nullum facinus jam multos annos extitit nisi per te*, there has been no wickedness now for so many years but by thee; *Cæsar comparabat subsidia ad omnes casus*, Cæsar provided helps for all mischances.

For, when expressing hinderance in an action, is made by *præ*; if not, by *per*; as—*præ lacrimis non poterat loqui*, he could not speak for tears; *tibi licet hoc facere per me*, you may do this for me.

For, when joined with either part or side in a controversy, is made by *a* or *ab*; as—*quis non mavult stare a se, quam ab adversariis?* who does not chuse to stand for himself, than for his adversaries?

In.

In, signifying *during*, is sometimes rendered by *per* with an *accusative*; and sometimes by *de* with an *ablative*; as—*fecit per ipsum tempus induciarum*, he did it in the very time of truce; *latrones surgunt de nocte*, thieves rise in the night.

Of.

Of, before nouns expressing the parts or the matter with which any thing is made or consists of, is rendered by *e* or *ex*; as—*vas ex auro*, a vase of gold, or
a golden

a golden vase; *statua ex marmore perpolito*, a statue of polished marble.

Of, signifying about or concerning, as also after *mereor*, is made by *de*; as—*simulant agere de pace*, they pretend to treat of peace; *optimè meritus est de republicâ*, he has deserved well of the commonwealth.

On or upon.

On, relating to *part* or *side*, or after verbs signifying to *depend*, is made by *a* or *ab*, or *e* or *ex*; as—*statuebat dua tigna juncta ad eundem modum, ab inferiore parte pontis*, he set up two rafters joined after the same manner, on the lower part of the bridge; *Cæsar jubet castra muniri vallo altiore ex omnibus partibus*, Cæsar orders the camp to be fortified with an higher wall on all sides; *pendemus ab uno casu*, we depend on one chance.

On, before a word expressing the *position*, *place*, or *situation* of any thing, is made by *in*, with an accusative, if there be motion, or an ablative if the contrary; as—*lapides cæpti sunt jaci in murum*, stones began to be thrown on the wall; *habebat annulum in digito*, he had a ring on his finger.

To.

To is made by *apud*, after words signifying *to accuse*, *to complain*, *to condemn* or *to speak*, if the speech mention, or be addressed to, a person having authority, or a multitude; if, on the contrary, the person mentioned, or addressed to, be an inferior, it is made
by

by *cum*; as—*querere de istâ re apud patrem tuum*, complain of that thing to your father; *Cæsar, cum venit ad Brundisium, concionatus est apud milites*, Cæsar, when he came to Brundisium, made a speech to the soldiers; *num communicabis gloriam victoriæ tuæ cum altero?* will you impart the glory of your victory to another? &c.

To, when signifying *towards*, and when preceding a word of time expressing delay, is made by *in*, with the *accusative*; as—*perspicio eum esse mirifico studio in nos*, I perceive that he is a man of wonderful affection to us; *non patiar rem deduci in aliud tempus*, I shall not suffer the business to be put off to another time.

With.

With, when applied to a person having authority, or a multitude, is made by *apud*; as—*Conon versatus est apud præfectos regis*, Conon continued with the king's governors; *Cæsar sensit hostes consecutos esse magnam auctoritatem apud Gallos uno prælio*, Cæsar perceived that the enemies had obtained great reputation with the Gauls by one battle.

N. B. More observations might be made on the prepositions, but the reading of good authors, and a little practice, will soon remove every apparent difficulty.

PRAXIS ON THE ABOVE PREPOSITIONS.

This is the place whence my grandfather and father together drove
av-us, i m.

Syphax and the Carthaginians,
expell-o, 3. Sypha-x, cis m.

who waged war with you for many years. Why, said
ger-o, 3.

he, should I suffer those foldiers to be wounded, who
pat-ior, 3. vulner-o, i.

have deserved very well of the country? Neither does
mer-eor, 2.

the purple flower of the rose, nor
purpure-us, a, um flo-s, ris m. ros-a, æ f.

barrels drunk to the very dregs, become
cad-us, i m. pot-us, a, um fæ-x, cis f.

you, an old woman. Annibal, being sent into
vetul-a, æ f. mitt-o, 3.

Spain, turned all the army to him presently,
Hispani-a, æ f. convert-o, 3.

at his first coming. The Germans, after the
advent-us, ūs m.

flight of their own people, betook themselves
fug-a, æ f. fu-us, a, um recip-io, 3.

beyond the Rhine. The Romans made peace
Rhen-us, i m. fac-io, 3. pa-x, cis f.

with the Carthaginians, who, for that reason
Carthaginiens-es, ium re-s, i f.

presented the senate and people with a golden
don-o, i. aure-us, a, um

crown. The arrow was driven through his
coron-a, æ f. sagitt-a, æ f. ag-o, 3.

neck up to the feathers. After that Anthony
jugul-um, i n. penn-a, æ f.

had approached with his army, Catiline began
advent-o, i. Catilin-a, æ m. cœpi, irr.

to march over the mountains, to move
 it-er, *ineris* n. fac-io, 3. mon-s, *tis* m. mov-eo, 2.
 his camp, sometimes towards the city, sometimes
 modò, adv. urb-s, *is* f.
 towards Gaul. The Belgæ settled on
 Galli-a, æ f. Belg-æ, *arum* m. confid-o, 3.
 this side the Rhine, on account of the fertility
 fertilit-as, *atis* f.
 of the place. I wish (to put an end to) a quarrel
 volo, irr. compon-o, 3. li-s, *tis* f.
 between my father and brother. If you will make
 volo, irr.
 a treaty with me, I will send you all safe
 foed-us, *eris* n. mitt-o, 3. incolum-is, æ
 under the yoke, at the day appointed; ye
 jug-um, *i* n. constitut-us, *a, um*
 shall depart from Numidia. The pillars
 deced-o, 3.. column-a, æ f.
 were made of marble, and they provided them-
 fio, irr. marmor, *is* n. par-o, 1.
 selves with all things necessary. The scholars often
 play unknown to the master. They drew up
 lusit-o, 1. instru-o, 3.
 the army at the bottom of the mountain. He
 radi-x, *cis* f. mon-s, *tis* m.
 did not cease to strive against the truth,
 omitt-o, 3. nit-or, 3. ver-um, *i* n.
 till he perceived the detestation to be
 priusquam, c. animadvert-o, 3. invidi-a, æ f.
 above his interest and money. Later or
 grati-a, æ f. pecuni-a, æ f. serò, adv. aut, c.
 sooner, we all hasten to one place. They accused
 citò, adv. proper-o, 1. accus-o, 1.
 some matrons of dishonesty to the people. The
 matron-a, æ f. probr-um, *i* n.

Greeks

Greeks pitched their camp under the walls
 Græc-us, *i m.* loc-o, 1. mœni-a, *um n.*
 of Troy, about the distance of two miles.
 Troj-a, æ f. intervall-um, *i n.* milliapas-us, *ûs*
 They were accused to the Amphyctiones, that is,
 Amphyction-es, *um m.*
 to the assembly of the principal men of
 convent-us, *ûs m.* princ-eps, *ipis m.*
 Greece. Sylla, at sun rise, was
 Greci-a, æ f. sol, *is m.* ort-us, *ûs m.*
 measuring out his camp, when he knew by his
 met-or, 1. cognosc-o, 3.
 scouts that Jugurtha was *inf.* not far
 speculator, *is m.* Jugurth-a, æ m. absum, *i r.*
 off. They both wept, not each for his own
 uterque, &c. fl-eo, 2.
 punishment, but the father for the death of the son,
 supplici-um, *i n.*
 and the son for the father's death. Nothing is harder
 difficil-is, *e*
 than to find what is perfect in its kind
 reperi-o, 4. perfect-us, *a, um* gen-us, *eris n.*
 in all respects. Caius Gracchus, born from a
 par-s, *tis f.* nasc-or, 3.
 most famous father, was slain for some
 clar-us, *a, um* interfic-io, 3. quidem, &c.
 suspicions of sedition. Most men
 suspicio, *nis f.* feditio, *nis f.* plerique, &c. mortal-is, *e*
 are in want of that most beautiful and most natural
 car-eo, 2. natural-is, *e*
 friendship, which is sought after by itself and on account
 expet-o, 3.
 of itself. The pillars of the temple were made
 column-a, æ f. fio, irr.
 of marble. For all these things which I have done,
 marmor, *is n.*

I require the remembrance of my consulship.

postul-o, 1. memori-a, æ f. consulat-us, ūs m.

Damon and Pythias had formed so faithful a friend-
jung-o, 3. fidel-is, e

ship between themselves, that they were ready

ut, c. parat-us, a, um

to die the one for the other. Many men

mor-ior, 3. alter, a, um

lie for the sake of custom. Alex-

menti-or, 4. caus-a, æ f. consuetud-o, inis f.

ander being asked where he kept his treasures,

interrog-o, 1. hab-eo, 2. thesaur-us, is m.

answered, among my friends. Orestes is more
respond-eo, 2.

famous on account of his friend Pylades, than

not-us, a, um Pylad-es, is m.

his father Agamemnon. He endeavoured to

Agamemnon, is m. con-or, 1.

discover the place and people by the scouts.

cognosc-o, 3. explorator, is m.

He kept two regiments with him, for the sake of

retin-eo, 2. cohor-s, tis f.

defending the town. Phocion would not accept

tu-eor, 2. oppid-um, i n. accip-io, 3.

of two hundred talents offered to him by his

talent-um, i n. offer-o, irr.

friends, saying, I do not accept of these, on account of
dic-o, 3.

which I may be forced perhaps to grant something

cog-o, 3. conced-o, 3.

contrary to justice, if I have a mind to appear

vol-o, irr. vid-eor, 2.

grateful, and if I grant nothing, I may be

grat-us, a, um gratific-or, 1.

accounted ungrateful. The common fleet

vid-eor, 2. ingratus, a, um commun-is, e class-is, is f.

of

of Greece engaged with (the king's fleet)
 config-o, 3. (classiari-us, a, um regi-us, a, um)
 at Artimesium betwixt Eubea and the
 Artimesi-um, i n. Eube-a, æ f.
 continent. He received a wound
 contin-ens, entis, terr-a, æ f. accip-io, 3. vuln-us, eris n.
 in his head, by the ear. Cæsar, having placed
 aur-is, is f. dispon-o, 3.
 all his army on both sides of the fortifications,
 uterque, &c. par-s, tis f. munitio, nis f.
 orders the battle to be fought. If any
 jub-eo, 2. præli-um, i n. committ-o, 3.
 wise man has a mind to preserve friendship, he will
 sapi-ens, entis tu-eor, 2.
 be affected in the same manner
 affect-us, a, um idem, eadem, &c. mod-us, i m.
 towards his friend, as towards himself, and will
 undergo the same labours for his sake that he would
 suscip-io, 3. suscip-io, 3.
 for himself. At the coming of the Roman præ-
 advent-us, ūs m. præ-
 tor, Hannibal departed from the country of
 tor, is m. exced-o, 3. ag-er, ri m.
 Nola. The air is nearer the earth than the
 Nolan-us, a, um aer, is m.
 fire; but the water is placed nearest to the earth,
 colloc-o, 1.
 because those two elements compose but one
 quia, c. element-um, i n. compon-o, 3.
 body. The ships watched at the
 corp-us, oris n. nav-is, is f. excub-o, 1.
 harbour by the command of Brutus according
 port-us, ūs m. juss-us, ūs m. Brut-us, i m.
 to daily custom. The first night,
 quotidian-us, a, um no-x, ætis f.
 no

no one goes out of the camp for the sake of
 nem-o, *inis* m. egred-ior, 3.
 watering; the next day, they bring out all their
 aqu-o, 1. proxim-us, *a, um* educ-o, 3.
 forces. Behold the great folly of
 copi-a, *æ* f. egregi-us, *a, um* stultiti-a, *æ* f.
 youth, that love play before
 juven-is, *is* com. dilig-o, 3 lus-us, *us* m.
 learning, and account him the best
 liter-a, *arum* f. bon-us, *a, um* existim-o, 1.
 master, that gives them ofteneft leave to
 conced-o, 3. veni-a, *æ* f.
 play. Alexander named four cities out of which
 lud-o 3. nomin-o, 1. urb-s, *is* f.
 Phocion might choofe at pleafure, whose revenue
 elig-o, 3. arbitri-um, *i* n. redit-us, *us* m.
 he might enjoy. Every one ought to contribute
 fru-or, 3. quifque, &c. confer-o, irr.
 in proportion to his riches to relieve the
 facult-as, *atis* f. fublev-o, 1.
 poverty of others. Whatever gold
 paupert-as, *aris* f. quifquis, &c aur-um, *i* n.
 there is above or below the earth is of no
 null-us, *a, um*
 value, if it be compared with virtue. For the
 preti-um, *i* n. compar-o, 1.
 correction of the wicked, there is no
 coercitio, *nis* f. fcclerat-us, *a, um*
 need of an angry chaftifer; he never
 op-us, ind. irat-us, *a, um* caftigator, *is* m.
 will preferve that moderation, which is between
 ten-eo, 2. mediocrit-as, *atis* f.
 too much and too little.

CONJUNCTIONS.

A CONJUNCTION serves to connect the several members of a sentence, and shews their dependance on each other.

Conjunctions, like adverbs, may be divided into several species; the following are the principal.

I. *Copulatives* are, *et, ac, que, atque*, and; *etiam, quoque, item*, also; *cùm, tùm*, not only, but yet, and, &c.

II. *Disjunctives* are, *nec, neque, neu, neve*, neither, nor, lest, and not; *aut, ve, vel, seu, sive*, either, or, whether, &c.

III. *Concessives* are, *etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, licèt, quamquam, quamvis, cum, ut*, though, although, tho', albeit; &c.

IV. *Distributives* or *adversatives* are, *sed, verum, verò, autem, at, ast, atque*, but, however; *tamen, attamen, veruntamen, enim vero*, yet, notwithstanding, nevertheless; *immò, immoverò, quin, quinimo, quin etiam, quin potius*, yea, ay, and more than that, and what is more, but that; *deinde*, hereafter, henceforward; *denique*, lastly, finally; *cæterum*, moreover, but however; &c.

V. *Rationals* are, *nam, namque, enim*, for; *quoniam, quia, quippe, quòd, propterea quod*, because; *ergo, idèd, idcirco, itaque*, therefore; *proinde*, wherefore; *cum, quum*, seeing, since; *ut, uti*, that, to the end that, in order that; *ita, ut, sicut*, so that, as; *quandoquidem*, for as much as; *ne*, lest, for fear that; &c.

VI. Con-

VI. *Conditionals* are, *si*, if; *sin*, but if, if not; *dum*, *modò*, *dummodo*, provided, upon condition that, in case that; *si quidem*, if indeed; &c.

VII. *Exceptives* or *restrictives* are, *ni*, *nisi*, unless, except, if not; &c.

VIII. *Declaratives* are, *videlicet*, *scilicet*, *nempe*, *nimirum*, to wit, namely; &c.

OBSERVATIONS.

I. Some conjunctions, according to their natural order, stand first in a sentence, or member of a sentence, such as, *ac*, *ast*, *at*, *atque*, *aut*, *et*, *nam*, *neque*, *neu*, *ni*, *nisi*, *quamobrem*, *quapropter*, *quare*, *quin*, *quocirca*, *sed*, *seu*, *sin*, *sive*, *vel*, *verum*. Some, contrary to their natural order, stand in the second and sometimes third place; such as, *autem*, *enim*, *quidem*, *quoque*, *verò*. *Enim*, *etenim*, *verò*, are often placed after a *pause*, or *stop*, in discourse or writing. The others may be indifferently placed according to the euphony of the sentence.

II. *Que*, *ne*, *ve*, may be called inseparable conjunctions, as they always require to be placed at the end of such words as in sense they ought to precede.

Some of the above conjunctions govern the *subjunctive* or *potential*; others, sometimes the *indicative* and sometimes the *subjunctive*.

I. The following govern the *potential*; *ut*, *quò*, *quin*, *ne*, *cùm*, *modo*, *dum*, and *dummodo*.

N. B. *Cum* and *dum* sometimes have an *indicative*; as—*nihil tam facile est, quin difficile fiat, si invitus feceris,*

feceris, nothing is so easy, but will become difficult, if you do it against your inclination; *tanti te facio, ut nihil tibi denegare possim*, I esteem you so much, that I cannot deny you any thing. *Quò* is generally used instead of *ut*, when it precedes a comparative; as—*adjuta me, quò facilius id fiat*, help me that this become more easy.

II. *Si, sin, ni, nisi, quòd, quia*, are used both with the indicative and potential; as—*si illud verum sit*, if that be true; *mirum, ni domi est*, it is a wonder, if he be not at home; *fac illud, si me amas*, do that, if you love me; *nisi me animus fallit*, or *nisi quid me fefellerit*, if I do not mistake; *fecisti mihi pergratum, quòd librum ad me misisti* or *miseris*, you did me a great kindness, to have sent me a book; *ea urbs, quia postremo ædificata est, Neapolis nominatur*, that town is called Naples, because it was newly built.

III. *Quanquam, etsi, tametsi*, are often used with an indicative; and *quamvis, etiamsi, licet*, generally with a potential; as—*etsi mihi nunquam dubium fuit*, though I never doubted; *etiamsi tu neges, certò scio*, although you deny it, I know it certainly.

IV. All adverbs and conjunctions require a subjunctive or potential mood after them, whenever they express the smallest sign of *contingence* or *uncertainty*.

REMARKS ON SOME ENGLISH PREPOSITIONS
MADE BY LATIN CONJUNCTIONS.*After.*

After is made by *postquam*, *cum* or *quum*, or *ubi*, when it precedes an *English* participle active, and can be turned by *after that* or *when*; as—*puer ludit, postquam, cum* or *ubi studuit*, the boy plays after studying, or having studied, i. e. after that or when he has studied; *ludet postquam studuerit*, he will play after having studied, i. e. after that or when he shall have studied.

Before.

Before, joined to a verb or participle active, is no longer a preposition, but must be rendered by *antequam* or *priusquam*, with the verb in the potential mood; as—*Deum ora, antequam opus incipias*, pray God, before you begin or beginning your work; *studebit antequam ludat*, he will study before he plays.

But.

But is made by *non nisi*, or the adverbs *tantum* or *solum*, when it can be turned by *only*; as—*non nisi rarò studet*, or *tantum rarò studet*, he studies but seldom; *non nisi tuo functus es officio*, or *tantum functus es officio*, you have done but your duty, or you have only done your duty.

For, although.

For, when it can be turned by *because*, or *since*, is made in Latin by *quòd*, *cum* or *quavis*, with the following

following verb in the potential; as—*laudatus fuit, quòd id fecerit*, he was praised for having done that, i. e. because he had done that; *parum profecit, cùm* or *quamvis tamdiu studuerit*, he has little improved for having studied so long, i. e. although he has studied, &c.

Instead of.

Instead of, preceding a participle active, is made by *cum* with the potential of *debeo* or *possum*; as—*scholasticus ludit, cùm studere debet*, the scholar plays instead of studying, i. e. when he should study; *sed studet, cum ludere posset*, but he studies instead of playing, i. e. when he might play.

Without.

Without, preceding a participle active, after a negation, is made by *quin* or *nisi*; and after an affirmation, by *nec*, *nec tamen*, or *quamvis non*: and both after a negation or an affirmation, it is likewise made by *priusquam*, or *antequam*, with the verb in the same mood as governed by the above conjunctions; as—*non fies doctus, nisi studeas*, you will not become learned, without studying, i. e. unless you study, or without study; *nihil suscipit, quin me consulat*, or *antequam me consuluerit*, he undertakes nothing without consulting me, or but that he consults me, or before he has consulted me.

PRAXIS ON THE ABOVE RULES.

What need have you of riches, which
 opus, *ind.* sum, *irr.* diviti-æ, *arum* f.
 force you to thirst, so that the more you have, the
 cog-o, 3.
 more ardently you wish for what you have not. Sylla
 acriter, *adv.*
 suffered his soldiers to live in luxury and
 pat-ior, 3. mil-es, *itis* m. luxuriosè, *adv.*
 licentiousness, contrary to the custom of our
 nimis liberaliter, *adv.* mo-s, *ris* m.
 ancestors, that he might make them faithful to him.
 major-es, *um* fac-io, 3. fid-us, *a, um*
 The Nervii are strong in (infantry),
 val-eo, 2. (pedestr-is, *e* copi-æ, *arum*)
 that they may the more easily harrafs the
 facilè, *adv.* imped-io, 4.
 cavalry of their neighbours, if they should come
 equitat-us, *us* m. finitim-us, *i* m.
 to them for the sake of plundering. There is no
 prædor, 1.
 doubt but that the Helvetii (are the most powerful)
 dubi-um, *i* n. (val-eo, 2. plurimùm, *adv.*)
 of all Gaul. (We must take particular care) that
 Galli-a, *æ* f. (provid-eo, 2. imprimis, *adv.*)
 our conversation does not shew any
 fermo, *nis* m. indic-o, 1. aliquis, &c.
 vice to exist in our manners. We must
 viti-um, *i* n. infum, *irr.* mo-s, *ris* m.
 practise liberality, provided we have riches. Although
 exerc-eo, 2.
 equal glory by no means attends the writer
 par, *is* nequaquam, *adv.* sequ-or, 3. scriptor, *is* m.
 and performer of actions, yet it seems to me
 actor, *is* m. r-es, *ei* f. vid-eor, 2.
 difficult

difficult to write past actions. Cati-
 ardu-*us, a, um* scrib-*o, 3.* gest-*us, a um* Cati-
 line (did not care) provided he obtained
 lin-*a, æ m.* (hab-*eo, 2.* nihil pensi) par-*o, 1.*
 the kingdom for himself, by what means he
 mod-*us, i m.*
 obtained it. Nor did pride hinder
 assequ-*or, 3.* superbi-*a, æ f.* obst-*o, 1.*
 from imitating foreign customs,
 quò minùs imit-*or, 1.* alien-*us, a, um* institut-*um, i n.*
 provided they were good. Let them be liberal
 prob-*us, a, um.* liberal-*is, æ*
 to the plunderers of the treasury; let them not
 fur, *is m.* ærari-*um, i n.*
 give away our blood, and whilst they spare
 larg-*ior, 4.* sangui-*s, nis m.* parc-*o, 3.*
 a few villains, go about to destroy all good
 pauc-*i, æ, a* scelerat-*us, i d.* eo, irr. perd-*o, 3.*
 men. But if in so universal a fear, Cæsar
 tant-*us, a, um* met-*us, us m.*
 alone does not fear, so much the more necessary
 sol-*us, a, um* tim-*eo, 2.* refert, *imp.*
 it is for me to fear for you and myself. If the Roman
 people would make peace with the Helvetii,
 fac-*io, 3.* pa-*x, cis f.* Helveti-*i, orum*
 they would go wherever Cæsar should appoint; but if
 statu-*o, 3.*
 he should continue to pursue them in war, he
 persever-*o, 1.* persequ-*or, 3.*
 should recollect the ancient bravery of the
 reminisc-*or, 3.* vet-*us, eris* virt-*us, utis f.*
 Helvetii. Moreover bad designs
 prav-*us, a, um* consili-*um, i n.*
 oftener turn out prosperously than good ones, because
 even-*io, 4.* prosperò, *adv.*
 fortune

fortune regulates most things according to
 fortun-*a*, æ f. agit-*o*, 1. plerique, &c.

her caprice. I could mention in what places
 libid-*o*, *inis* f. memor-*o*, 1. loc-*us*, *i* m.

the Roman people, with a small force,
 parv-*us*, *a*, *um* man-*us*, *us* f.

routed very great forces of the enemy,
 fund-*o*, 3. copi-*a*, *arum* f. host-*is*, *is* m.

if that subject did not draw us too far from our
 r-*es*, *ei* f. trah-*o*, 3. longius, adv.

undertaking. Socrates said, "it does not become the
 incept-*um*, *i* n.

"Gods to be better pleased with great, than
 potiùs, adv. gaud-*eo*, 2.

"small sacrifices, because as wicked men
 exig-*us*, *a*, *um* sacrifici-*um*, *i* n. scelest-*us*, *i* m.

"are generally richer than good men, their sacri-
 plerumque, adv.

"sices would be more acceptable." O brother, most
 accepti-*or*, *us* adj.

dear to my soul, although life has
 car-*us*, *a*, *um* anim-*us*, *i* m.

untimely been taken from you, yet your lot
 immaturè, adv. erip-*io*, 3. cas-*us*, *us* m.

is to be more rejoiced at, than grieved for. Although
 læt-*or*, 1. dol-*eo*, 2.

Atherbal thought every thing preferable to the faith
 r-*eor*, 2. pot-*ior*, *ius* adj. fid-*es*, *ei* f.

of Jugurtha, yet because the power of forcing
 potest-*as*, *atis* f. cog-*o*, 3.

him, if he should resist, was in the hands of the
 advers-*or*, 1. penes, p.

Italians, he made a surrender. Although the
 Italic-*us*, *i* m. deditio, *nis* f.

great difficulty of making a bridge was
 summ-*us*, *a*, *um* pon-*s*, *tis* m.

evident

GENERAL OBSERVATIONS.

I. Put in the *present* tense of the infinitive mood, the verb, which, in English, is preceded by the conjunction *that* and either of the following tenses, the *present* or *preterimperfect* of the indicative mood; as—*credo Deum esse æternum*, I believe that God is eternal; *credebam, illum legere*, I thought that he was reading; *non credebat te ægrotare*, he did not think that you were ill.

II. Put in the *preterperfect* of the infinitive mood the verb, which, in English, is in the *preterperfect* or *preterpluperfect*; as—*credo illum legisse*, I think that he has read; *tibi dixi Phædrum fuisse servum*, I told you that Phædrus had been a slave; *non credo illum jam prandisse*, I do not think that he has dined yet.

III. The *future* of the indicative and *preterimperfect* of the potential are to be put in the future of the infinitive; as—*credo illum cras venturum esse*, I believe that he will come to-morrow; *non credo illum cras profecturum esse*, I do not believe that he will set out to-morrow; *non existimabam te tam citò venturum esse*, I did not think that you would come so soon.

IV. Sometimes *esse* is suppressed; as—*si putabam te brevi venturum, te expectarem*, if I thought that you would soon come, I would wait for you.

V. The future of the infinitive active agrees with the noun, which, in English, is its nominative, in number and gender; but the future of the infinitive passive does not vary; as—*rumor est Cæsaris conjugem*
venturam

venturam esse, it is said that Cæsar's wife will come; *speramus nos venturos esse*, we hope we shall come; *legationes rejectum iri puto*, I think that the deputations will be rejected; *speramus nos factum iri doctos*, we hope we shall become learned.

VI. The *preterperfect*, *preterpluperfect*, and *future* tenses of the potential mood are made in *Latin* by the *future past* of the infinitive; as—*puto Pompeium victurum fuisse, si.....*, I think that Pompey would have conquered, if..... &c.

VII. If the *Latin* verb have no futures, *fore ut*, or *futurum esse ut*, must be used, and the verb put in the potential mood; as—*spero fore ut* or *futurum esse ut filius studeat*, I hope that my son will study; *sperabam fore ut filius meus studeret*, I was in hopes that my son would study.

VIII. If the action be past, *futurum fuisse ut* must be used with the following verb in the potential as above; as—*credebam futurum fuisse ut te poeniteret*, I thought you would have repented; *puto futurum fuisse ut posses venire citius*, I think you might have come sooner.

IX. *Fore ut*, or *futurum esse ut*, are frequently used even with active verbs, having their future participles, but only to express a future past, when the thing mentioned by that future is not yet accomplished; then the following verb is put in the future past; as—*credis fore ut brevi illud negotium confecerit*, you think that he will soon have done that business; *spero fore ut meam acceperis epistolam, quum.....*, I hope you will have received my letter, when.....; *non credo*

fore ut tam citò illud negotium confecerit, I do not think that he will so soon have ended that business.

X. When the verbs *to believe*, *to hope*, *to promise*, *to threaten*, *to remember*, and a few more, are followed by another verb in the infinitive mood, the young learner must turn the phrase as if the conjunction *that* were expressed, and follow the above rules; as—*credis te esse beatum*, you think to be happy; *sperat se brevi profecturum esse*, he hopes to set out very soon, i. e. that he will set out &c; *memini me legere*, I remember to have read.

How to avoid an amphibology or equivocal meaning in the above sentences.

When, after the conjunction *that*, the English nominative to, and the regimen of, the verb, in the same sentence, are both to be, in Latin, in the accusative, so as not to distinguish the one from the other, as in the following answer of the oracle to Pyrrhus, "*Aio te, Æacida, Romanos vincere posse*," which conveys a strong ambiguity or double meaning, for it signifies that either Pyrrhus could conquer the Romans, or the Romans conquer Pyrrhus; to prevent which, let the active voice be turned by the passive, the regimen of the verb become its nominative, and the nominative made to be the regimen of the passive verb: as, suppose that the oracle meant that Pyrrhus could overcome the Romans, it should have been, *Aio, Æacida, Romanos a te vinci posse*, I say, O Pyrrhus, that the Romans may be overcome by thee: if
on

on the contrary, *Aio, Æacida, te a Romanis vinci posse*, I say, O Pyrrhus, that thou mayest be overcome by the Romans. *Scio sororem meam amari a fratre tuo*, I know that your brother loves my sister—turn, that my sister is loved by your brother; *putas a Petro superari Paulum*, you think that Peter excels Paul—turn, that Paul is excelled by Peter.

VERBS WHICH DIFFER FROM THE ABOVE RULES.

I. Verbs expressing any relation with the intellect or one of the five senses, sometimes take *quòd*, with the indicative and sometimes the *potential* instead of the infinitive; as—*hoc unum scio, quòd nihil scio*, this I only know, that I know nothing; *incolumis, lætor, quòd vivit in urbe*, I rejoice that he is well in town; *miror, quòd id ignores*, I wonder that you do not know that; *dico, quòd Petrus est modestus*, I say that Peter is modest.

These verbs are most commonly *dico, credo, video, audio, lætor, gaudeo, miror*, and the like.

II. Verbs having a reference to the *will* require the conjunction *ut* with the potential: also when the English sign of the infinitive mood *to* denotes the end of an action, or can be turned by *in order to*, or *that may* or *can*, that *to* may be made by *ut* or the relative pronoun *qui, quæ, quod*, agreeing with the antecedent, in gender and number; as—*volo, ut filius meus studeat*, I will have my son study; *rogo, ut ad me venias*, I beg of you to come and see me; *moneo, ut otium*

fugias, I warn you to avoid idleness; *non adest amicus, qui soletur me*, no friend is present to comfort me; *habui hæc, quæ dicerem de senectute*, I had these things to say concerning old age; *Cæsar misit equitatum, qui sustineret impetum hostium*, Cæsar sent the cavalry to withstand the onset of the enemies.

These verbs are *volo, cupio, impero, jubeo, rogo, oro, moneo, suadeo, mitto, permitto, curo, facio, efficio*, and the like.

III. If the above verbs be followed by a *negation*, *ne* must be used instead of *ut*, and the English negation suppressed in Latin; as—*oro ne id facias*, I beg of you not to do that; *cave ne hoc dixeris*, take care not to tell this, &c.

IV. Verbs of *fearing*, such as *timeo, metuo, vereor*, &c. follow the above rules, and take *ut* after the verbs which admit of the conjunction *that* with a *negation*, but they take *ne* after the verbs that admit of the conjunction *lest*; as—*vereor, ut placari possit*, I am afraid, that he cannot be appeased; *timet, ne se deferat*, she fears, lest you should forsake her.

V. Verbs of *forbidding, prohibiting, hindering*, and the like, take the conjunction *ne*, when they are not preceded by a negation, and *quin* or *quominus* when they are, with the following verb in the potential; as—*impedit ira animum, ne possit cernere verum*, anger prevents the mind from being able to discern the truth; *nemo prohibet, nec vetat quin veniat*, nobody hinders, nor forbids him from coming.

These verbs are *prohibeo, veto, interdico, impedio, obsto,*

obſto, and the like; but they ſometimes take the infinitive inſtead of the conjunction; as—*ridentem dicere verum, quid vetat?* what hinders from telling the truth in laughing?

VI. Verbs of *doubting* take the conjunction *quin*, when they are followed by *but*; and *an* or *num* when they are followed by *whether*, with the potential mood; as—*non dubito, quin hoc ſit verum*, I do not doubt, but it is true; *dubito, an hoc ſit verum*, I doubt whether it be true; *dubium eſt, num id futurum ſit*, it is doubtful whether that will happen.

PRAXIS ON THE ABOVE RULES.

Cato the elder ſaid, that the merit of a good
 major, *is* lau-*s, diſ f.*
 huſband was greater than that of a great ſenator,
 marit-*us, i m.* ſenator, *is m.*
 and that he greatly admired Socrates,
 maximè, *adv.* mir-*or, i.* Socrat-*es, is m,*
 becauſe he had always lived quietly with
 perpetuò, *adv.* viv-*o, 3.* placidè, *adv.*
 his moroſe wife. It is evident that
 moroſ-*us, a, um* uxor, *is f.* perſpicu-*us, a, um*
 we are moved by nature herſelf to love thoſe whom
 impell-*o, 3.*
 we have begotten. Scipio ſaid, that he never was more
 gign-*o, 3.*
 diſengaged, than when he was diſengaged. Ariſtides
 otioſ-*us, a, um*
 had not forgotten that Themiſtocles had
 oblivifc-*or, 3.* Themiſtocl-*es, is m.*
 oppoſed him in the government of the
 advers-*or, i.* adminiſtrand-*us, a, um*
 ſtate,

state, either privately or openly. He threatens
 respublic-*a*, æ f. min-*or*, 1.
 to put every thing to fire and sword.
 vast-*o*, 1. flamm-*a*, æ f. ferr-*um*, *i* n.
 I, by reading much, have learned that all kingdoms
 comper-*io*, 4.
 and nations have had a prosperous government
 prosper, *a*, *um* imperi-*um*, *i* n.
 so long as prudent counsels prevailed among
 usquè eò. ver-*us*, *a*, *um* consili-*um*, *i* n. val-*eo*, 2.
 them. What do you think that the master would say,
 put-*o*, 1.
 if he found all the servants asleep? I came
 inven-*io*, 4. dormi-*ens*, *entis*
 because I thought you had called me. What do you
 think the master would have done, if he had found all
 the scholars playing? Scipio said, that, if he would
 lud-*o*, 3. volo, irr.
 persevere in his good conduct, glory and a kingdom
 perman-*eo*, 2. ar-*s*, *tis* f.
 would, of their own accord, present themselves to him;
 ultrò, adv. ven-*io*, 4.
 but if he would proceed rashly, that he would
 perg-*o*, 3. properantiùs, adv.
 fall a sacrifice by his own money. The
 cad-*o*, 3. præc-*epts*, *ipitis* adj.
 Gauls said, that it was tedious to wait,
 Gall-*us*, *i* m. long-*us*, *a*, *um* expect-*o*, 1.
 whilst the Germans passed the river. Many
 trans-*eo*, irr. flum-*en*, *inis* n.
 think, that they shall seem liberal, if
 arbitr-*or*, 1. vid-*eor*, 2. benefic-*us*, *a*, *um*
 they enrich their friends by whatever way.
 locuplet-*o*, 1. quicunque, &c. ratio, *nis* f.
 If

If they will consider the shamefulneſs of the times,
 reput-o, 1. turpitud-o, *inis* f.

they will think that greater advantage will
 exiſtim-o, 1. commod-um, *i* n.

accrue to the ſtate from my life of leiſure than from
 ven-io, 4. oti-um, *i* n.

the buſy life of others. The Nervii declared
 negoti-um, *i* n. confirm-o, 1.

that they would neither ſend ambaffadors, nor
 mitt-o, 3. legat-us, *i* m.

accept any offers of peace. Swear to me by
 accip-io, 3. conditio, *nis* f. jur-o, 1.

the Lord God of heaven and earth that you will not

take a wife for my ſon from among the daughters
 accip-io, 3.

of the Chananeans. They ſaid that, if he feared
 Chananæ-us, *a, um*. tim-eo, 2.

the unevenneſs of the ground, ſtill an opportunity
 iniquit-as, *atis* f. loc-us, *i* m. facult-as, *atis* f.

of fighting in ſome ground would be given. Pom-
 pugn-o, 1. d-o, 1. Pom-

pey promiſes to go into his province;
 pei-us, *i* m. pollic-eor, 2. eo, irr. provinci-a, *a* f.

but does not determine, before what day he is to go.
 defin-io, 4.

I do not doubt, O Atticus, but that there will be
 dubit-o, 1.

many, who will judge this kind of
 plerique, &c. judic-o, 1. gen-us, *eris* n.

writing trifling. Cæſar ſaid that his inno-
 ſcriptur-a, *a* f. lev-is, *e* inno-

cence had been well known through all his life.
 centi-a, *a* f. perſpic-io, 3. vit-a, *a* f.

Titus uſed to ſay that he would rather periſh
 ſol-eo, 2. potiùs, adv. pereo, irr.

himſelf

himself than destroy others. I hope that the laws
 perd-o, 3. sper-o, 1.
 will not be neglected, because the magistrates are
 neglig-o, 3.
 backward in punishing. They said that all the
 remis-us, a, um pæn-a, æ f.
 Gauls would be obliged to do the same things which
 impell-o, 3. idem, &c.
 the Helvetii did. The Roman nobles inflamed
 nobil-is, is m. accend-o, 3.
 the mind of Jugurtha by promising, that, if Mi-
 anim-us, i m. pollicit-o, 1.
 cipfa should die, he alone would enjoy the
 occid-o, 3. pot-ior, 4.
 kingdom of Numidia. Is it not a shame that
 imperi-um, i n. flagiti-um, i n.
 you, who give counsels to others, are not able to
 possum, irr.
 help yourself. Your brother persuaded me to do
 auxili-or, 1. persuad-eo, 2.
 this. Cæsar warned the ambassadors that they might
 mon-eo, 2.
 not boast too much of that kindness.
 glori-or, 1. benefici-um, i n.
 Ambiorix often confessed that he owed much to
 confit-eor, 2. deb-eo, 2.
 Cæsar for his kindness to himself. When Admetus was
 informed by the gods that he would escape
 admon-eo, 2. effug-io, 3.
 impending death, if any one could be found who
 præ-sens, entis reper-io, 4.
 would die in his stead, he suffered his wife
 mor-ior, 3. vic-is f. pat-ior, 3.
 Alceftis to die a voluntary
 Alceft-is, is f. defung-or, 3. voluntari-us, a, um
 death

death for him. The son of the former
 obit-*us, ūs m.* superior, *is*
 Africanus, could not be so like his father, as he had
 simil-*is, e*
 been like his, by the weakness of his
 infirmit-*as, atis f.*
 constitution. Cæsar entertained great hopes that,
 valetud-*o, inis f.* concip-*io, 3.* sp-*es, ei f.*
 on account of his great kindneses towards
 tant-*us, a, um* benefici-*um, i n.*
 Ariovistus, he would desist from his obstinacy.
 desist-*o, 3.* pertinaci-*a, æ f.*
 Diviaticus said that in a few years, all the Sequani
 pauc-*i, æ, a*
 would be driven from their country, and all the
 pell-*o, 3.* fin-*is, is com.*
 Germans would pass the Rhine. He commands
 transeo, *irr.*
 the Ubii to bring away their cattle, and
 Ubi-*i, orum m.* deduc-*o, 3.* pec-*us, oris n.*
 to carry all their things from the fields into the
 confero, *irr.*
 towns. Skilful horsemen choose a
 oppid-*um, i n.* perit-*us, a, um* equ-*es, itis m.* elig-*o, 3.*
 restive horse to break, because they
 refractari-*us, a, um* dom-*o, i.*
 think that afterwards they shall be able to
 existim-*o, i.* postea, *adv.* possum, *irr.*
 manage others more easily. Jugurtha exhorts the
 ut-*or, 3.* facile, *adv.* hort-*or, i.*
 townsmen to defend their walls, and
 oppidan-*us, i m.* defend-*o, 3.* moeni-*a, um n.*
 promises to come to their assistance with his army in
 adsum, *irr.*
 proper time. Cæsar answered the ambassadors
 temp-*us, oris n.*

that he would take time to consider. He
 fum-o, 3. di-es, ei com. deliber-o, 1.
 threatens to discover the conspiracy, unless a
 min-or, 1. patefac-io, 3. conjuratio, nis f.
 large fum of money were given him.
 magn-us, &c. fumm-a, æ f. d-o, 1.
 Take care that I may know the day in which you
 cur-o, 1. sc-io, 4.
 are to go from Rome. Catiline hoped, if he should
 ex-eo, irr.
 be elected consul, to use Anthony according to his
 elig-o, 3. ut-or, 3.
 pleasure. Cæsar, having spent but
 volupt-as, atis f. consum-o, 3. omnino, adv.
 eighteen days beyond the Rhine, and thinking
 arbitrat-us, a, um
 that he had done enough both for his honour and the
 fac-io, 3. et, c.
 benefit of the commonwealth, withdrew himself
 utilit-as, atis f. recip-io, 3.
 into Gaul. Darius thought that he could very
 Galli-a, æ f. put-o, 1.
 easily keep the Greeks under his
 facilè, adv. retin-eo, 2. Græc-us, i m.
 power, if he gave up their towns to be
 potest-as, atis f. trad-o, 3. oppid-um, i n.
 guarded by his friends. All men cannot be Scipio,
 tu-eor, 2. Scipio, nis m.
 to remember battles and triumphs. They
 record-or, 1. pugn-a, æ f. triumph-us, i m.
 report that Anaxagoras, having heard the death
 fero, irr. Anaxagor-as, æ m. aud-io, 4.
 of his son, said only this, I knew that I had
 fol-us, a, um sci-o, 4.
 begotten a mortal. I think I shall be at Laodicea
 gign-o, 3. mortal-is, is Laodice-a, æ f.
 the

the first day of the month, where I will tarry
 mens-is, is m. commor-or, 1.
 a few days, while the money is receiving.
 perpauc-i, æ, a accip-io, 3.
 Scipio would not suffer his brother to praise him; he
 nolo, irr. laud-o, 1.
 said that the people honoured him enough by their
 honor-o, 1.
 good-will. My master ordered me to observe
 benevolenti-a, æ f. jub-eo, 2. observ-o, 1.
 Pamphilus, that I might know what he was doing
 Pamphil-us, i m. sc-io, 4. ag-o, 3.
 about the marriage. Timon said that he loved
 nupti-æ, arum f. dilig-o, 3.
 Alcibiades, because he foresaw that he would
 Alcibiad-es, is m. prævid-eo, 2.
 be the cause of great evils to the Athenian
 caus-a, æ f. mal-um, i n.
 people. I believe that chastity tarried on
 cred-o, 3. pudiciti-a, æ f. mor-or, 1.
 earth, Saturn being king. It is not to be doubted,
 Saturn-us, i m. dubit-o, 1.
 but that Clodius, if he had slain Milo,
 interfic-io, 3. Milo, nis m.
 would think about to reign. I know that my
 put-o, 1. regn-o, 1. sc-io, 4.
 redeemer lives, and that at the last
 redemptor, is m. novissim-us, a, um
 day, I shall rise again. I rejoice that your
 surg-o, 3. gaud-eo, irr.
 virtue, honesty, and diligence, are known
 innocent-i-a, æ f. cognosc-o, 3.
 in the most weighty affairs. I congratulate you, that
 maxim-us, a, um r-es, ei f. gratul-or, 1.
 you have bought a farm, and I believe that you
 em-o, 3. fund-us, i m. cred-o, 3.

will reap much profit by it. No one
cap-io, 3. lucr-um, i n. inde, adv. nem-o, inis m.
 can doubt but that it is contrary to law. You
le-x, gis f.

wonder that you have received no letters from me a
mir-or, 1. accip-io, 3.

long time; you say that my return will cause
diu, adv. rediv-us, us m. affero, irr.

you great joy. I am glad that you are
lætiti-a, æ f. gaud-co, 2.

mindful of our friendship. Cæsar could not give up
memor, is depon-o, 3.

the remembrance of the late injuries of the
memori-a, æ f. rec-ens, entis injuri-a, æ f.

Helvetii, that they had attempted a way through
tent-o, 1. it-er, ineris n.

the province by force, and that they had harrassed
provinci-a, æ f. v-is, is f. vex-o, 1.

the Ædui. Whence it may be
Ædu-i, orum m. ex, p. qui, quæ, &c.

understood, that no war is just, unless it has been
intellig-o, 3. just-us, a, um

before denounced and proclaimed. I beg of you that
indic-o, 3. nunti-o, 1. rog-o, 1.

you will vouchsafe to accept of the half of my
dign-or, 1. dimidi-um, i n.

goods. See that you consider in
bon-a, orum n. fac-io, 3. cogit-o, 1.

what danger you are, and I advise
quant-us, a, um pericul-um, i n. mon-co, 2.

you to seek assistance from all, even the lowest.
pet-o, 3. auxili-um, i n. infim-us, a, um

I very much wish that your son may be like
vehementer, adv. cupi-o, 4.

his grandfather and ancestors. Take care then that
av-us, i m. major-es, um cur-o, 1.

he be instructed in good arts. When Marcus Aure-
 imbu-o, 1. ar-s, tis f.

lius was bemoaning his dead tutor,
 fl-eo, 2. mortu-us, a, um educator, is m.

and the courtiers dissuaded him from
 aulic-us, i minist-er, ri m. revoc-o, 1.

such a declaration of his affection, permit
 tal-is, e declaratio, nis f. piet-as, atis f. permitt-o, 3.

him, said the emperor Antoninus Pius, to be a man;

for neither philosophy nor empire destroy the
 imperi-um, i n. toll-o, 3.

affections. Should I not complain of the ruin
 affect-us, ūs m. quer-or, 3. interit-us, ūs m.

of the commonwealth, lest I should seem
 vid-eor, 2.

ungrateful to you. Cicero commands the prætors
 ingratus, a, um imper-o, 1. prætor, is m.

to seize the attendants of the Allo-
 comprehend-o, 3. comitat-us, ūs m. Allo-

broges on the Mulvian bridge. It
 brog-es, um m. Mulvi-us, a, um pon-s, tis m.

was forbidden by the laws of Zaleucus, that
 interdic-o, 3. le-x, gis f. Zaleuc-us, i m.

no citizen should keep a lasting
 quis, &c. civ-is, is m. ger-o, 3. diuturn-us, a, um

anger and enmity against another citizen. We
 ir-a, æ f. inimiciti-a, æ f.

must diligently take care not to be exasperated at
 cav-eo, 2. exasper-o, 1.

trifles. The consul was prevented
 minim-us, a, um r-es, ei f. imped-io, 4.

by the tribunes from carrying with him the forces
 tribun-us, i m. port-o, 1. copi-a, æ f.

which he had raised. Hear ye, O excellent men,
 par-o, 1. optim-us, a, um

those

those things, which were often debated between
differ-o, 3.

Scipio and me, concerning friendship; although
Scipio, *nis* m.

he indeed often said, that nothing is more difficult,
quidem, adv.

than for friendship to continue to the end
perman-eo, 2. extrem-um, *i* n.

of life. The narrowness of the place prevented
angusti-æ, *arum* f.

the multitude of the enemy from being able
multitud-o, *inis* f. queo, irr.

to surround us. I fear lest the friendship of
circumven-io, 4. ver-eor, 2.

Jugurtha may withdraw some from the way of justice.
abduc-o, 3. vi-a, æ f.

The Ubii send ambassadors to Cæsar, to acquaint
Ubi-i, *orum* m. doc-eo, 2.

him that the auxiliary forces had not been sent from
auxili-um, *i* n.

their state to the Treviri. I had
civit-as, *atis* f. Trevir-i, *orum* m. hab-eo, 2.

nothing new to write to you. You, O Ger-
nov-us, *a, um* scrib-o, 3.

mans, ought not to doubt, but that the Romans, if they
shall overcome the Helvetii, will deprive you of your
super-o, 1. erip-io, 3.

liberty. Cæsar left Mark Anthony
relinqu-o, 3. Marc-us, *i* Antoni-us, *i* m.

with fifteen regiments among the Bellovaci, lest any
cohor-s, *tis* f.

opportunity should be given to the Belgæ, of forming
facult-as, *atis* f. d-o, 1. cap-io, 3.

again new designs. Metellus feared that
confili-um, *i* n. tim-eo, 2.

Jugurtha

Jugurtha would not come and give him an occasion of
copi-a, æ f.

fighting. Aristides was chosen to appoint, how
delig-o, 3. constitu-o, 3.

much money each state should contribute for the
d-o, 1.

building of fleets and for raising armies.

ædific-o, 1. class-is, is f. compar-o, 1. exercit-us, us m.

Moreover, why should he be an enemy to you, by whom,
verò, c.

when he might have been slain by the law of war,
interfic-io, 3.

he remembered that he was made king. Cicero
memini, irr. constitu-o, 3.

said, that he hoped the Gauls would obtain from
sper-o, 1. impetr-o, 1.

Cæsar, according to his justice, those things which they

shall have asked. Let us enquire then, whether it will
pet-o, 3. quær-o, 3.

be better, that the arms of wicked
arm-a, orum n. scelerat-us, a, um

people give place to the liberty of the Roman people,
ced-o, 3.

or that their liberty give place to your arms. Scouts

were sent, to examine, whether the enemy had laid
perspic-io, 3. stru-o, 3.

an ambuscade before the camp. The
infidi-æ, arum f. castr-a, orum n.

Carthaginian ambassadors came to Rome to return
Carthaginiens-is, e ag-o, 3.

thanks to the senate and the Roman people, for having
grati-a, æ f.

made peace with them. Cæsar found that
fac-io, 3. pa-x, cis f. reper-io, 4.

the

the Nervii were wild men, and of great
Nervi-i, *orum* fer-us, *a, um*
valour, that they blamed the other Belgæ,
virtu-s, *tis f.* incus-o, *i.* reliqu-us, *a, um*
for surrendering to the Roman people and for abandoning
ded-o, *3.* projec-io, *3.*
their native valour. We doubted whether
patri-us, *a, um*
fear, shame, and duty, prevailed most
timor, *is m.* pudor, *is m.* offici-um, *i n.* val-eo, *2.*
with them. They consulted whether he should
consul-o, *3.*
immediately be put to death by fire, or be
statim, *adv.* nec-o, *i.* ign-is, *is m.*
reserved for another opportunity.
referv-o, *i.* temp-us, *oris n.*

INTERJECTIONS.

An interjection expresses a sudden passion or emotion of the mind.

Little can be said on the interjections, except that *O! heu! hem!* and *proh!* govern either the nominative, accusative, or vocative; as—*O vir fortis, atque amicus!* O man, valiant and friendly! *heu me infelicem!* an unhappy creature that I am! *hem pater!* ah father! *proh hominum fidem!* O the faith of men! &c.

Hei and *væ*, govern the dative; as—*hei mihi!* ah me! *væ tibi!* wo to you!

SYNTAXIS.

NOMINUM CONSTRUCTIO.

I. Duo nomina substantiva, quæ rem eandem significant, in eodem casu ponuntur; ut—*urbs Roma; mensis Januarius.*

II. Duorum substantivorum, quæ res diversas significant, alterum ponitur in genitivo; ut—*lex Dei est regula vitæ.*

III. Quum posterius duorum substantivorum, aliquam denotat proprietatem vituperii vel laudis, in genitivo ponitur vel in ablativo; ut—*vir magni consilii; puer bonæ indolis vel bonâ indole.*

IV. *Opus & usus* quum *necesse* significant, regunt ablativum; ut—*ubi rerum testimonia adsunt, non opus est verbis.*

SUBSTANTIVUM & ADJECTIVUM.

I. Adjectivum concordat cum suo substantivo, genere, numero & casu; ut—*amicus certus in re incertâ cernitur.*

II. Adjectivum quod refertur ad duo aut plura substantiva singularis numeri, sæpius in plurali ponitur; ut—*Annibal & Philopæmen veneno absunt; si sunt.*

III. Adjectivum quod refertur ad duo aut plura substantiva diversi generis & rerum animatarum, in plurali ponitur, in genere dignioris; ut—*Antonius & Cleopatra ab Augusto victi fuerunt.*

IV. Adjectivum quod refertur ad duo aut plura substantiva diverſi generis & rerum inanimatarum, in plurali neutro ponitur, vel cum priore concordat; ut—*divitiæ, decus & gloria, in oculis ſita ſunt.*

ADJECTIVORUM CONSTRUCTIO.

I. Adjectiva verbalia & participia pro nominibus uſurpata genitivum adſciſcunt; ut—*avidus pecuniæ; amans virtutis.*

II. Adjectiva quæ notiſſimam aut ignorantiam, deſiderium aut metum, curam aut negligentiam, aut alios ejuſmodi affectus animi ſignificant regunt genitivum; ut—*conſcia mens recti, famæ mendacia ridet.*

III. Adjectiva copiæ, vel inopiæ admittunt genitivum vel ablativum; ut—*dives pecoris, inops nummis.*

IV. Adjectiva quæ ſignificant commodum vel incommodum, ſimilitudinem vel diſſimilitudinem, vicinitatem, affinitatem, & ſimilia dativum aſſumunt; ut—*nihil morti tam ſimile quam ſomnus.*

V. Nomina rerum meſuram, aut locorum ſpatium, ſive diſtantiæ ſignificantia, apponuntur nominibus adjectivis & verbis, in accuſativo vel in ablativo; ut—*Arabicuſ ſinuſ quindecim millibus paſſuum diſtat ab Ægyptio mari, Babylon patebat ſexdecim millia paſſuum.*

VI. Prædituſ, dignuſ, indignuſ, contentuſ, regunt ablativum; ut—*prædituſ virtute, dignuſ, indignuſ honore.*

VII. Pleraque adjectiva & verba admittunt ablativum cauſæ, inſtrumenti, modi, aut partis; ut—

homineſ

homines tùm formâ, tùm moribus similes; non facile est aquâ, commoda, mente pati.

VIII. Gradus comparativus regit ablativum nominis cum quo facit comparisonem; ut—*vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum.*

IX. Gradus superlativus regit genitivum; ut—*Solomon, mortalium sapientissimus.*

X. Omnia adjectiva partitiva, regunt genitivum; ut—*nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit.*

PRONOMINUM CONSTRUCTIO.

I. Relativum *qui, quæ, quod*, genere & numero consentit cum suo antecedente substantivo; quo ad casum verò a sequenti voce pendet; ut—*nullus est dolor, quem longinquitas temporis non minuat; legi librum, cujus es auctor.*

II. Sæpius adhibentur pronomina reciproca *sui* vel *suus*, quum referuntur ad nominativum phrasis; fin minus, adhibentur demonstrativa *is, ille, vel ipse*; ut—*homines a Deo discedunt, suis peccatis; Deus discedit ab hominibus propter eorum peccata.*

VERBORUM CONSTRUCTIO.

I. Omne verbum personale finiti modi, ante se habet nominativum, expressum aut subintellectum, ejusdem numeri & personæ; ut—*Si vales, bene est; ego valeo. Obsequium amicos, veritas odium parit.*

II. Verba secundæ personæ, præsertim imperativi, ante se regunt vocativum personæ quæ compellatur; ut—*mi frater, lætaris.*

III. Verbum infinitivi modi, regit ante se accusativum; ut—*ego illum periisse duco, cui periit pudor.*

IV. Verba *sum, fio, vocor, dicor, videor, nascor,* & similia post se regunt eundem casum quem habent ante; ut—*philosophia est cultura animi; cave (ne) te tristem esse sentiat.*

V. Verbum *sum*, possessionem aut officium significans, regit genitivum; ut—*est præceptorum docere; & discipulorum præbere se dociles.*

VI. *Satago, misereor, & miseresco,* admittunt genitivum; *miseror*, verò accusativum; ut—*is rerum suarum satagit; miserari fortunam alicujus.*

VII. Verba memoriæ, vel oblivionis, genitivum vel accusativum adsciscunt; ut—*ipse jubet mortis te meminisse Deus; recordor tua consilia; obliviscor injuriarum.*

VIII. Pleraque verba regunt dativum, ad quæstionem cui; ut—*quod tibi fieri non vis, alteri non feceris.*

IX. *Sum* pro *habeo* positum, & ejus composita, regunt dativum; ut—*est mihi liber; deesse officio.*

X. *Sum, habeo, do, verto, tribuo, duco,* & ejusmodi quædam alia, sæpe duplicem habent dativum, unum personæ, alterum rei; ut—*id non est tibi cordi; do tibi hoc pignori.*

XI. Verba activa, & quæcunque habent activam significationem, regunt accusativum rei, vel personæ, ad quam tendit ipsorum actio; ut—*virtus sibi gloriam parit.*

XII. Verbo *rogandi, docendi, monendi,* & quædam alia, duplicem accusativum admittunt, unum personæ, alterum

alterum rei; ut—*otium multa mala docet adolescentes; te hoc beneficium rogo.*

XIII. Verba quæ duplicem habent accusativum in activâ formâ, retinent accusativum rei etiam in passivâ; persona autem sit nominativus verbi; ut—*Cato rogatus est sententiam; pueri docentur grammaticam.*

XIV. Ad quæstionem *quàm diu?* vel *quàm pridem?* verba adsciscunt nomina temporis in accusativo sinè præpositione; ut—*annos sexaginta natus es; Romulus septem & triginta regnavit annos.*

XV. Ad quæstionem *quando?* verba assumunt nomina temporis in ablativo sinè præpositione; ut—*vigilate; nam nescitis quâ horâ dominus venturus sit.*

XVI. Verba *utor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, nitor, lætor*, & similia, ablativum deposcunt; ut—*vir bonus utitur mundo; beati ævo sempiterno fruuntur.*

XVII. Verba *copiæ & inopiæ*, vel *privationis* admittunt ablativum; ut—*abundat opibus; laudibus me cumulavit pater tuus.*

XVIII. Verba *accusandi damnandi, absolvendi*, & similia, præter accusativum personæ, regunt ablativum criminis aut poenæ, vel genitivum subintellecto ablativo; ut—*te hoc crimine non arguo; Sisyphus longi laboris damnatus est.*

XIX. Verba *æstimandi, emendi, vendendi*, & similia, regunt ablativum pretii, vel genitivum subintellecto ablativo; ut—*ego spem pretio non emo; non pluris vendo quam cæteri, fortasse etiam minoris.*

XX. Verba quæ curam aut perturbationem animi significant regunt ablativum, vel genitivum subintellecto

lecto ablativo; ut—*discrucior animo; ego animi pendere soleo.*

VERBA PASSIVA & ALIA.

I. Verba passiva, & quæcunque habent passivam significationem, regunt ablativum personæ a quâ res fit, cum præpositione *a* vel *ab*; ut—*mundus creatus est a Deo; Eva seducta fuit a Diabolo.*

II. Verba *expectandi, accipiendi, & quædam petendi* admittunt ablativum personæ a quâ expectatur &c. cum præpositione *a* vel *ab*; ut—*id a te expectat; hoc a te peto.*

III. Verba *liberandi, amovendi, distantia, aut diversitatis*, regunt ablativum rei, aut personæ, a quâ liberatur, &c. cum præpositione *a* vel *ab*; ut—*libera nos a malo; se a magistratu abdicavit.*

IV. Verba *prohibendi, & abstinendi* adsciscunt ablativum rei, vel cum præpositione *a* vel *ab*, vel sine præpositione; ut—*prohibere rempublicam a periculo; prohibere aliquem aditu.*

V. Verba *faciendi, componendi, & similia* regunt ablativum materiæ ex quâ res fit vel componitur, cum præpositione *e* vel *ex*; ut—*ex nihilo, nihil fit.*

NOMINA LOCORUM.

I. Verba quæ nullam loci mutationem significant, regunt ablativum nominum, locorum, cum præpositione *in*: exceptis nominibus urbium; ut—*habitat in urbe; natus est in Hiberniâ.*

II. Verba

II. Verba quæ nullam loci mutationem significant, regunt genitivum nominum urbium, si sint primæ aut secundæ declinationis & numeri singularis; vel ablativum sine præpositione, si sint tertiæ declinationis, aut pluralia tantum; ut—*Romæ omnia veneunt pecuniâ; magnificum Dianæ templum erat Ephesi.*

III. Verba quæ significant motum ad locum, regunt accusativum nominum locorum, cum præpositione *in*: exceptis nominibus urbium; ut—*copias duxit in Germaniam.*

IV. Verba quæ significant motum ad locum, regunt accusativum nominum urbium, sine præpositione; ut—*profectus est Lutetiam.*

V. Verba quæ significant motum per locum, regunt accusativum nominum locorum, cum præpositione *per*: exceptis nominibus urbium; ut—*Italiam petebat per Hispaniam & Gallias.*

VI. Verba quæ significant motum per locum, regunt ablativum nominum urbium, sine præpositione; ut—*iter Laodiceâ faciebam.*

VII. Verba quæ significant motum e loco regunt ablativum nominum locorum, cum præpositione *e* vel *ex*: exceptis nominibus urbium; ut—*profectus est ex urbe.*

VIII. Verba quæ significant motum e loco, regunt ablativum nominum urbium, sine præpositione; ut—*venit Carthagine, Athenis.*

IX. *Domus* & *rus* nominum urbium constructionem sequuntur; ut—*pater domi, sed mater ruri est; venio domo, tuque rure redis.*

VERBA COMPOSITA.

I. Verba ex præpositione composita, retinent casum præpositionis, eam subintelligendo, vel etiam repetendo; ut—*ingredi viam*, vel *in viam*; *abstinere se alieno*, vel *ab alieno*.

II. Multa verba composita ex præpositionibus *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *de*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *præ*, *pro*, *sub* & *super*, pro casu præpositionis sumunt dativum; ut—*pacem antepo-
nimus bello*; *virtutem præfert divitiis*.

VERBA INFINITA.

Verba quæ nullum significant motum, regunt sæpius infinitivum verbi sequentis; ut—*qui mentiri solet*, *pejorare consuevit*.

GERUNDIA.

I. Gerundia regunt casum suorum verborum; ut—*Annibal, ex bellis bella ferendo, vivebat*; *utendum est ætate*.

II. Gerundium in *di*, tanquam genitivus apponitur nominibus substantivis, aut adjectivis genitivum regentibus; ut—*stylus, est optimus dicendi magister*; *cupidus discendi*.

III. Gerundium in *do*, adhibetur tanquam dativus aut ablativus, cum vocibus casus illos regentibus; ut—*charta utilis scribendo*; *ex defendendo major gloria, quam ex accusando paratur*.

IV. Gerundium in *dum* adhibetur tanquam nominativus cum verbo *esse*, aut tanquam accusativus cum præpo-

præpositione; ut—*semper vigilandum est, pecuniam accipiam, ob solvendum.*

V. Gerundia verborum quæ regunt accusativum, eleganter mutantur in participium in *us*, quod cum suo substantivo concordat genere & numero, sed utroque gerundii casum servante; ut—*virga utilis est, corrigendis pueris; omnia sunt nobis timenda.*

SUPINA.

I. Verba quæ motum ad locum significant, regunt supinum in *um*, pro infinitivo; ut—*veni vos salutatum; ut cubitum discessimus.*

II. Verba quæ motum è loco significant; sicut et nomina quædam adjectiva, regunt supinum in *u*; ut—*venatu redeo; mirabile dictu.*

VERBA IMPERSONALIA.

I. Duo impersonalia *interest* & *refert* regunt genitivum personæ; exceptis his ablativis, *meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ*; ut—*interest omnium, rectè facere; rei publicæ refert, conservari literas; et tuâ & meâ maxime interest, te rectè valere.*

II. *Constat, vacat; libet, licet; accidit, contingit; convenit, expedit;* & alia ejusmodi, impersonaliter sumpta, regunt dativum personæ, et nominativum rei, vel infinitivum; ut—*peccare, nemini licet; non vacat mihi, nunc te audire.*

III. *Decet, dedecet, delectat, juvat, latet, fallit, fugit, & præterit*, impersonaliter sumpta, regunt accusativum personæ, & nominativum rei, vel infinitivum;

ut—*illud, quam sit difficile, non te fugit; oratorem irasci non decet, simulare non dedecet.*

IV. Quinque impersonalia *miseret, piget, poenitet, pudet, tædet*, regunt accusativum personæ, & genitivum rei vel infinitivum; ut—*hujus facti me piget; sapientem nullius rei poenitet; tædet me vivere.*

V. *Attinet, pertinet, spectat*, impersonaliter sumpta, pōscunt accusativum personæ cum præpositione *ad*, & nominativum rei vel infinitivum; ut—*pertinet ad illum; nihil attinet dicere.*

VI. Verba impersonalia passivæ vocis, vel sinè casu ponuntur, vel post se admittant casum verbi sui personalis, excepto accusativo; ut—*illi ætati favetur; mihi nec feritur, nec metitur.*

VII. *Debet, capit, solet, potest*, impersonaliter ponuntur, cum aliorum impersonalium infinitivo; ut—*debet adolescentiam delictorum pudere; eos poenitere coepit.*

PARTICIPIORUM CONSTRUCTIO.

I. Participia regunt casum suorum verborum; ut—*docens pueros, obsecutus parenti, &c.*

II. Quum participium, nomini vel pronomini adjunctum, a verbo non pendet, cum eo nomine vel pronomine ponitur in ablativo, qui dicitur *ablativus absolutus*; ut—*actore non probante, reus absolvitur; Cæsare venturo, Phosphorè redde diem.*

ADVERBIORUM CONSTRUCTIO.

I. Adverbia derivata, plerunque primitivorum suo-

FUM

rum constructionem sequuntur; ut—*obviam illi processimus; omnium optimè vixit.*

II. Adverbia quædam quantitatis, loci, & temporis; ut etiam *ergò* & *instar*, regunt genitivum; ut—*sat habet fautorum, qui rectè facit, tunc temporis, &c.*

III. Adverbia demonstrandi, *en*, & *ecce*, admittunt nominativum aut accusativum; ut—*en crimen, en causa; ecce miserum hominem.*

IV. Adverbia vocandi & respondendi, sumunt vocativum; ut—*heus Pamphile; hem domine?*

V. Adverbia quantitatis, in *o* desinentia, junguntur gradui comparativo; ut—*quantò diutius abest, tantò magis cupio.*

VI. Adverbium temporis *quum*, modo indicativo, modo subjunctivo jungitur; ut—*non aderam, quum id factum est; me invisit, quum ægrotarem.*

VII. Adverbia interrogandi, interrogativè posita, cum indicativo construuntur; sed extra interrogationem, subjunctivum adsciscunt; ut—*an est domi? quære, quomodo valeat.*

VIII. Adverbium prohibendi *ne*, imperativo & subjunctivo jungitur; ut—*ne jura; ne te collaudes.*

IX. Adverbia optandi, *utinam*, *O si*, tantum optativo junguntur; ut—*utinam Deus id faxit.*

CONJUNCTIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

I. Conjunctiones vocem voci, aut orationem orationi conjungunt, in eâdem constructione; ut—*pulvis & umbra sumus; nobis moriendum est, potius quàm quicquam faciendum contra Dei voluntatem.*

II. Conjunctiones *ut*, *quòd*, *quin*, *ne*, *cùm*, *modò*, *dum*, *dummodo*, regunt subjunctivum; ut—*tolluntur in altum, ut lapsu graviore ruant; nihil tam facile est, quin difficile fiat, si invitus feceris.*

III. *Si*, *sin*, *ni*, *nisi*, *quòd*, *quia*, cum indicativo & cum subjunctivo construuntur; ut—*mirum, ni domi est; nec quisquam est, qui dolorem, quia dolor sit, amet.*

IV. *Quamquam*, *etsi*, *tametsi*, sæpius indicativo; & *quamvis*, *etiamvis*, *licet*, ferè subjunctivo conveniunt; ut—*tametsi hoc verum est; dicam equidem, licet arma mihi mortemque minetur; etsi mihi nunquam dubium fuit.*

V. Verba quæ referuntur ad *intellectum* aut ad *sensus*, nonnunquam assumunt particulam *quod*, pro infinitivo; ut—*miror, quòd hoc ignores; incolumis, lætor, quòd vivit in urbe.*

VI. Verba quæ referuntur ad *voluntatem*, regunt subjunctivum, cum conjunctione *ut*; ut—*volo, ut ad me venias; cura, ut valeas.*

VII. Verba timendi, regunt subjunctivum cum conjunctione *ut*, vel *ne*; ut—*timet, ne se deferat; vereor ut placari possit.*

VIII. Verba *prohibendi*, *impediendi*, & similia regunt subjunctivum cum conjunctione *ne*, vel *quin*, vel *quominus*; ut—*potuisti prohibere, ne fieret; nihil impedit, quominus id facere possimus.*

IX. Verba *dubitandi*, regunt subjunctivum, cum conjunctione *quin*, vel *an*, vel *num*; ut—*non dubito, quin hoc sit verum; dubito, an hoc sit verum.*

PRÆPOSITIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

I. Triginta præpositiones, *ad, apud, adversùs, & cæteræ*, regunt accusativum; ut—*ad te ibam; prope muros.*

II. Duodecim præpositiones, *a, ab, abs, absque, clam, & cæteræ*, regunt ablativum; ut—*clam præceptore; a patre.*

III. Quatuor præpositiones, *in, sub, super, subter*, cum verbis motûs accusativum, & cum verbis quietis ablativum postulant; ut—*res venit in dubium; res est in dubio; mittere sub jugum; esse sub jugo.*

INTERJECTIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

I. Interjectiones, *O! proh! hem! heu!* nominativum, accusativum, & vocativum postulant; ut—*heu me miserum! proh dolor! O Dave! itane condemnor abs te?*

II. *Hei & vœ*, dativum adsciscunt; ut—*hei misero mihi! vœ capiti tuo!*

F I N I S.



ERRATA.

page	12	line	17,	pro	<i>serinium,</i>	lege	<i>serinium.</i>
	22		14,		<i>nubis,</i>		<i>nubes.</i>
	43		2,		<i>mustus,</i>		<i>onustus.</i>
	67		8,		<i>insensus,</i>		<i>infensus.</i>
	85		10,		<i>favit,</i>		<i>favet.</i>
	101		12,		<i>ereber,</i>		<i>creber.</i>
	117		16,		<i>sarsum,</i>		<i>sartum.</i>
	119		20,		<i>vixi, victum,</i>		<i>vinxi, vinctum.</i>
	142		25,		<i>leger,</i>		<i>legar.</i>
	168		28,		<i>commiscor,</i>		<i>comminiscor.</i>
	255		14,		<i>miscor,</i>		<i>minor.</i>
	256		28,		<i>ceram,</i>		<i>coram.</i>
	135		9,		<i>erint,</i>		<i>erunt, and in three</i>

or four more of the same tenses in the passive verbs.

In the course of the work, many more typographical errors may have escaped the author's eye: the masters are desired to correct them, and any hints that may tend to the perfection of the introduction, directed to one of the publishers, shall be thankfully received and attended to.

